

A SHAKESPEARE GRAMMAR

(PART 1)

by

John H. J. Westlake

Submitted for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in the University of Birmingham.

October 1970

UNIVERSITY OF
BIRMINGHAM

University of Birmingham Research Archive

e-theses repository

This unpublished thesis/dissertation is copyright of the author and/or third parties. The intellectual property rights of the author or third parties in respect of this work are as defined by The Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 or as modified by any successor legislation.

Any use made of information contained in this thesis/dissertation must be in accordance with that legislation and must be properly acknowledged. Further distribution or reproduction in any format is prohibited without the permission of the copyright holder.

Synopsis

This thesis is the first part of a comprehensive grammar of the language of Shakespeare. It deals with the noun, the adjective, the articles, numerals, the verb, and congruence between subject and predicate. The method employed is basically traditional and historical, and normally only Shakespeare is considered, but occasionally comparisons are made with earlier and with later usage. A division has not been made between accidence and syntax, though both are examined. All examples from Shakespeare are quoted from the Folio or Quarto texts. Usually more examples are given of a rare construction than of a common one, and sometimes all known instances are cited. A very few examples are given from Shakespeare's contemporaries where it is felt that these are helpful. The work takes as its basis Wilhelm Franz's Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa (Halle, 1939), which is in fact a fourth edition of his Shakespeare-Grammatik (1898-1900, 1909, 1924); but frequent references are made to other grammatical works that confirm, amplify, or correct the statements made there.

Table of Contents

Introduction - statement of principles

The Noun §§ 1-31

Forms of the Plural, Number, Collectives §§ 1-12

The Genitive §§ 13-19

Gender §§ 20-30

The Dative of the Person § 31

The Adjective §§ 32-54

Comparison §§ 32-43

Nominalization §§ 44-53

The Adjective and Adverb with a Predicative Verb § 54

Numerals §§ 55-62

The Definite Article §§ 63-76

The Indefinite Article §§ 77-85

The Verb §§ 86-217

Inflections §§ 86-90

Weak Forms §§ 91-94

Strong Forms §§ 95-100

Individual Forms of the Past Participle § 101

Alphabetical list of Strong Verbs § 102

Auxiliary, Copulative, and Modal Verbs §§ 103-153

be §§ 103-106

have §§ 107-109

do §§ 110-120

can § 121

may, might §§ 122-125

must §§ 126-128

ought § 129

dare § 130

wont § 131

shall, should §§ 132-142

will, would §§ 143-150

stand § 151

use § 152

Omission of verb of motion after certain Auxiliaries § 153

Wot § 154

Quoth § 155

Hight § 156

Methoughts § 157

Impersonal Verbs and Constructions § 158

Reflexive Verbs § 159

The sentence type "The book sells well" § 160

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs §§ 161-163

Constructions in the Passive § 164

Interrogative Forms § 165

Use of Tenses §§ 166-169

 The Present Tense referring to the Future § 166

 The Historic Present § 167

 The Continuous Tenses § 168

 The two Past Tenses § 169

The Subjunctive §§ 170-183

The Imperative § 184

The Infinitive §§ 185-194

The Participles §§ 195-199

The Gerund §§ 200-206

Congruence §§ 207-217

Select Bibliography

Introduction

Statement of principles

The need for a new comprehensive description of the grammar of Shakespeare is ~~self~~-evident. There are at present two works which make some claim to furnish such a description. E. A. Abbott's A Shakespearian Grammar is still reprinted from time to time, but it has not been revised in any way since the third edition was published in 1870. Nor is it ~~truly~~ comprehensive, since it contents itself with a treatment of some of those features of Shakespeare's language that are no longer current in normal usage. The author states in his preface that it was his intention to encourage the study of Shakespearian English with the aim of improving Latin prose composition among schoolboys. Hence he analyses Shakespeare's language in terms of Latin grammar and practically ignores the fact that English is a ^{another} ~~Germanic~~ language following rules that are often totally different. While, therefore, Abbott's work is sometimes still of value it does not meet the requirements of the modern Shakespearian^e scholar.

W. Franz's Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa (Halle, 1939) is a far more ambitious work. As its title implies, it does not confine itself to grammar, which is divided into word-formation, accidence, and syntax, but also deals with pronunciation, spelling, punctuation, and prosody. Franz was concerned, too, with Early New English in general and even extended his interest to modern usage, including American English. As a result of this, much of the work is irrelevant to the study of Shakespeare. Nor must it be imagined from the publication date that this book is as modern as it seems. It is really the fourth edition of the Shakespeare-Grammatik, the first edition of which appeared in 1898-1900. During the next forty years Franz made some minor alterations and added so many new sections that he felt constrained to give it its new title, but fundamentally Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa is merely an expansion of the ~~much~~ earlier work and retains a large proportion of the errors contained in the previous editions.

The section on pronunciation is based on the work of Victor and has since been superseded by H. Kökeritz's Shakespeare's Pronunciation (New Haven, 1953) and E. J. Dobson's English Pronunciation 1500-1700 (Oxford, 1956 (2nd ed. 1968)). The sections on spelling and punctuation were written before modern research had shown the proper value of the "copy-texts" and before such scholars as E. K. Chambers, W. W. Greg, and C. Hinman had demonstrated the vagaries of Elizabethan printing; hence they are now of very little value. The chief fault with Franz's treatment of prosody is its inadequacy: it confines itself to Shakespeare's blank-verse and does not discuss the poems.

Nevertheless, with all its weaknesses, Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa is still without a rival. A number of essays and dissertations have dealt with specific points of grammar in Shakespeare, but there has been no attempt to date to produce a new comprehensive grammar. When Shakespearean scholars require assistance on a grammatical issue it is still usually to Franz that they turn, although in cases where he has been shown to be wrong other authorities are consulted.

The argument that a new Shakespeare grammar should be in modern linguistic terms is one that is very attractive. The inadequacy and inaccuracy in many respects of "traditional" grammar is no longer in question. A description of Shakespeare's language in modern terms would be able to take into account all those factors of whose existence Franz was aware but which he could not adequately define. There can be little doubt that such a grammar must be produced if the full meaning of Shakespeare's text is to be made clear. There are, however, good reasons for deferring this task and adopting instead a more conservative approach, if only as an interim measure.

In the first place, although modern linguists have succeeded in providing more satisfactory descriptions of certain aspects of English syntax, there is as yet nothing that even approaches a comprehensive description of modern usage as a whole; nor does it seem likely that there will be one for some years yet.

It therefore seems reasonable to suggest that a similar description of Shakespeare's language may well take even longer. There is as yet very little in the way of linguistic treatises on anything but the modern language. This is perhaps because of the necessity of evaluating new grammars by the extent to which they are ~~x~~ consistent with acceptable spoken language. A linguistic approach ~~to~~ to Shakespeare will have to take into account the fact that the concept of acceptability is meaningless, and that what is under examination is a text whose precise authenticity is often doubtful at crucial points.

In the event the wisest course of action appears to be to translate Franz and correct and bring it up to date. Much of his work is, as has already been shown, unnecessary in this context. Accordingly comparisons with American usage have been excised, and most of the references to later developments in British English, except where these are especially illuminating. Franz was also concerned to show how Shakespeare's language developed from Old and Middle English. Since most English scholars will be familiar with Old and Middle English or can refer to grammars where necessary, only those references are retained which have some special interest or significance. For obvious reasons all comparisons to German have been excluded. A further abridgement that has been undertaken ~~in~~ is the exclusion of nearly all quotations from authors other than Shakespeare. The few exceptions which do occur are included because it is considered that they are helpful in showing what was the normal practice in Shakespeare's time.

The matter of nomenclature is never an easy one and is bound to be, at least to some extent, arbitrary. Modern practice has been followed in referring to "Old English" rather than "Anglo-Saxon"; but the choice between "New English" and "Modern English" is less easy to make. The former has been chosen for two reasons. It accords with the practice of other Germanic languages, for example German: Old High German, Middle High German, New High German. It also simplifies comparisons between the language of Shakespeare

and his contemporaries (Early New English) and the usage of today (modern ~~x~~ English). This seems more logical and less clumsy than referring to Early Modern English and Late Modern English. The grammatical terms used are those of traditional grammar. Despite the objections raised by the new linguists about their inadequacy the fact remains that they are generally understood, and since this treatise is intended to be of use to all students of Shakespeare and not merely professional grammarians this is a factor of some importance. Where traditional practice is divided a decision has had to be made without any compelling reason; hence "noun" is preferred to "substantive", "preterite" to "past simple", "perfect" to "present perfect", "pluperfect" to "past perfect", and "continuous tense" to ~~xx~~ "expanded tense".

Franz refers frequently to books and articles on grammar that were available to him. Where it is felt that these are still useful they have been retained. E. A. Abbott's A Shakespearian Grammar is cited because it is still the only work on the subject that is easily accessible to English-speaking scholars, and special mention should also be made of E. Mätzner's Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed. (Berlin, 1880-5), which is still helpful as a guide to the history of accidence, and H. Sweet's A New English Grammar (Oxford, 1892 and 1898), a work that in some respects has not been superseded. However, many of the works referred to by Franz were of only passing interest, so that they do not repay the effort involved in tracing them today. Such references have therefore been omitted. Franz made few alterations to his references after the early editions, and it has therefore been necessary to supplement them from more recent sources. Two works are of special importance in this connection. Karl Brunner's Die englische Sprache, 2nd ed. (Tübingen, 1960 and 1962) is derived to a ~~great~~ great extent from the work of other scholars, but it is most useful as a supplement to Mätzner, particularly in tracing the development of certain features of accidence. F. T. Visser's An historical syntax of the English language (Leiden, 1963-9) is unfortunately not yet complete.

Its value lies in its treatment of the development of any given verb structure from Old English to the present. Each usage is copiously illustrated by examples drawn from all periods of the language, and Visser often shows conclusively that Franz is mistaken in the date he gives for the first occurrence of a construction. Visser's review of Franz in English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 13-30 has also been most helpful.

The opportunity has been taken to revise Franz's division of grammar into accidence and syntax. There is always controversy as to where one ends and the other begins, and nowadays some grammarians do not accept accidence as part of grammar at all. Accordingly this first volume deals with Shakespeare's grammar under the headings of verb, noun, adjective, numerals, and the articles, and their accidence and syntax are treated together as a whole. A second part will be concerned with the adverb, pronoun, conjunction, preposition, and interjection; it will also have sections on word-formation - prefixes, suffixes, and compounds - and word-order, as well as some remarks on spelling and punctuation.

~~It~~ Possibly the most unsatisfactory feature of Franz is his treatment of quotations. There seems to have been very little revision of these between the first and fourth editions. Even when the Globe edition became the standard for line numbering Franz failed to use it. Quite often he gives the wrong act or scene, and occasionally even the wrong play. He very rarely differentiates between the Quartos and the First Folio, and the First and the later Folios. Frequently he is content to rely on the emendations of editors, and he hardly ever gives the original spelling and punctuation. Often he does not give enough quotations in illustration of a particular point, so that it has been necessary to supplement these. Where a construction is especially interesting and is rare even in Shakespeare all the examples have been given that can be discovered from A. Schmidt's Shakespeare-Lexicon, ~~IX~~ 3rd ed. (Berlin, ^{and London} 1901); in other cases discretion has been exercised and sufficient examples have been quoted to illustrate the

varying circumstances in which a construction is used.

The texts that have been used are normally the First Folio, the First Quartos of Much Ado About Nothing, Love's Labour's Lost, A Midsummer Night's Dream, The Merchant of Venice, Richard II, Henry IV, Parts 1 and 2, Richard III, Troilus and Cressida, Titus Andronicus, King Lear,^{Q1A2112} and Pericles; the Second Quartos of Romeo and Juliet and Hamlet; the 1593 edition of Venus and Adonis, the 1594 edition of The Rape of Lucrece, the 1609 edition of the Sonnets and A Lover's Complaint, and the 1612 edition of The Passionate Pilgrim. Very occasionally reference is made to another text when this seems to be of particular interest. The orthography of the text quoted is followed exactly with the following exceptions: the long "s" is printed as an ordinary "s"; the use of "u" and "v" has been brought into line with modern spelling; the use of italics in the original has been ignored; "æ" is printed as "ae"; no punctuation mark is given at the end of a quotation unless it is a question-mark or the quotation includes a complete speech. Where the Folio and Quarto texts can be combined this has been done: letters and punctuation marks printed in brackets occur in one text but not the other. Where it is not possible to combine the texts in this manner the Folio is quoted, unless this does not make good sense or there^{are} other good reasons for preferring the Quarto. In all cases where the difference between the readings might be held to be important both are given, and this practice has been followed throughout the section on "Congruence", where it might be argued that individual examples were the result of a printer's error.

It has been less easy to reach a decision on line numbering. There are strong arguments for adopting the system used by Charlton Hinman in The Norton Facsimile of the First Folio (New York, 1968), but the time does not yet seem opportune for setting a new fashion, and the problem would still remain of readings that are not found in the Folio. The traditional numbering of the Globe edition has therefore been retained,

and where this is inconsistent J. Bartlett's Concordance (1894) and A. Schmidt's Shakespeare-Lexicon have been followed. Where a quotation extends over more than one line and only one line number is given this refers to the line containing the item to be illustrated; where the latter itself extends to more than one line both numbers are given. Exceptionally the numbers of the first and last lines of a long quotation are both given. This system should enable the reader to check any reference with the minimum delay and effort.

The Noun

Forms of the Plural, Number, Collectives

- 1 It is obvious from the prosody and spelling that the vowel of the old inflexional ending "-es" of the plural and genitive is silent in Shakespeare, as in other authors of the second half of the 16th century, except where it is preceded by a sibilant (masses, wishes, hatches, privileges); aches is dissyllabic because in Elizabethan times it was pronounced [eɪtʃɪz]. There may, however, be a few exceptions to the general rule, depending on how Shakespeare's verse should be scanned. Cf. G. König, Der Vers in Shakespeares Dramen (Straßburg, 1888), pp. 15, 17; B. A. P. van Dam and C. Stoffel, William Shakespeare's Prosody and Text (Leiden, 1900), p. 7; W. Viëtor, Shakespeare's Pronunciation (Marburg, 1906), pp. 111-2; H. Kökeritz, Shakespeare's Pronunciation (New Haven, 1953), p. 265; E. J. Dobson, English Pronunciation 1500-1700, 2nd ed. (Oxford, 1968), § 312.

"-es" is simply a form of spelling in:

Luc., 793-794 (1594): "To crosse their armes & hang their
heads with mine,/ To maske their
browes and hide their infamie"

Luc., 821 (1594): "For Colatines deare love be kept unspotted"
Spellings such as teares and tears are found in close
proximity:

Luc., 682 and 686 (1594).

The form "-es" may be pronounced [ɪz] :

LLL, V, ii, 332 (F and Q₁): "To shew his teeth as white as
Whales bone"

LLL, V, ii, 309 (F): "Whip to our Tents, as Roes runnes ore
Land"

Err., IV, i, 98 (F): "You sent me for a ropes end as soone"

3H6, II, v, 38 (F): "So Minutes, Houres, Dayes, Monthes,
and Yeares" (Dayes is perhaps
pronounced [deɪɪz])

Tim., V, i, 202 (F): "Their feares of Hostile strokes, their
Aches losses"

Mac., I, ii, 61 (F): "Till he disbursed, at Saint Colmes ynch"

Tmp., IV, i, 110 (F): "Earths increase, foyzon plentie"

(Earths is perhaps here pronounced [ə:θiz])

MV, II, v, 43 (F): "Will be worth a Iewes eye"

TGV, I, ii, 137 (F): "I see you have a months minde to them"

(months is perhaps here pronounced [mʌnθiz])

MND, II, i, 7 (F): "swifter then ^e Moons sphere"

(Moons is perhaps here pronounced [mu:niz])

MND, IV, i, 100 (Q₁): "Trippe we after nights shade"

(nights is perhaps here pronounced [naɪtɪz])

(F): "Trip we after the nights shade"

LLL, IV, ii, 122 (F): "That sings heavens praise, with such
an earthly tongue"

(heavens is perhaps here pronounced [hevɪnz])

Words ending in an "-s" sound (written "se", "ss", "ce") sometimes dispense with the plural "-s": sense, mightiness, balance (cf. the similar phenomenon in the case of the genitive, § 149). This is a relic of Middle English usage.

Oth., IV, iii, 95 (F): "Let Husbands know,/ Their wives have
sense like them"

Son. CXII, 10 (1609): "my Adders sence,/ To cryttick and to
flatterer stopped are"

Mac., V, i, 29 (F): "I but their sense are shut"

1H4, I, i, 43 (F): "a thousand of his people butchered:/
Upon whose dead corpes there was such
misuse"

H5, V, ii, 28 (F): "Your Mightinesse on both parts best can
witness"

MV, IV, i, 255 (F): "Are there ballance heere to weigh the
flesh?"

3 Shakespeare also uses voice and acquaintance in a plural sense on account of their final "s" sounds. When verse means 'a line of verse; stanza' its plural in Shakespeare is verses; but when it means 'poetry' it is regarded as a collective or abstract idea and therefore has no plural form. Cf. O. Jespersen, Growth and Structure of the English Language, § 186; O. Jespersen, A Modern English Grammar, II, 121. ^(Leipzig, 1902) ^(Heidelberg, 1909) ^(Copenhagen, and London, 1909-1949)

Cor., III, i, 118-120 (F): Brutus: "Why shall the people give/
One that speakes thus,
their voyce?"

Coriolanus: "Ile give my Reasons,/
More worthier then
their Voyces"

(In the first instance the form voice is required by the
verse)

Son. LXIX, 3 (1609): "All touns (the voice of soules) give
thee that end"

Luc., 1595 (1594): "Both stood like old acquaintance in a
trance"

MV, II, ii, 181 (F and Q₁): "I doe feast to night/ My best
esteemd acquaintance"

Shr., I, i, 34 (F): "Balke Lodgicke with acquaintance that
you have"

TN, II, v, 177 (F): "I will wash off grosse acquaintancé"

1H4, I, i, 16 (F): "no more oppos'd/ Against Acquaintance,
Kindred, and Allies"

2H4, III, ii, 38 (F): "and to see how many of mine olde
Acquaintance are dead?"

H8, I, ii, 47 (F): "those which would not know them, and yet
must/ Perforce be their acquaintance"

Oth., II, i, 205 (F): "How do's my old Acquaintance of this
Isle?"

(Q₁): "How doe our old acquaintances of the Isle?"
(The singular verb shows that acquaintance must be
interpreted as a collective here if the Folio reading is accepted)

LLL, V, ii, 50 (F and Q₁): "Some thousand Verses"

Tro., III, ii, 189 (F): "As true as Troylus, shall crowne up
the Verse,/ And sanctifie the numbers"

Son. XVII, 1 (1609): "Who will beleewe my verse in time to come"

Son. LXXVI, 1 (1609): "Why is my verse so barren of new pride?"

Note 1. Beef has two plurals: beefs and beeves. Similarly grief has a plural grieves (greeves), though the more usual form is griefs. Teethes occurs once as a plural of tooth. The plural sheeps occurs once in a pun with ships. According to J. Wright, English Dialect Grammar,^(Oxford, 1905) p. 263, ships is still found in the dialects of Warwickshire, Shropshire, and Gloucestershire as a plural of ship 'sheep'.

2H4, III, ii, 353 (F): "now hath hee Land, and Beeves"

(Q₁): "now has he land and beefes"

MV, I, iii, 168 (F): "As flesh of Muttons, Beefes, or Goates"

1H4, IV, iii, 48 (F): "He bids you name your Griefes"

Tit., IV, i, 19 (F): "Extremitie of griefes"

(Q₁): "Extremitie of greeves"

JC, V, i, 41 (F): "You shew'd your teethes like Apes"

LLL, II, i, 219 (F): "Two hot Sheepes marie: And wherefore not Ships?"

Note 2. The form kine 'cows' occurs once in a context reminiscent of the Bible. The poetic form eyne 'eyes' appears eleven times in places where it is required by the rhyme and twice where it is not. Shoon appears twice as the plural of shoe, as well as the more normal shoes. It still survives in dialect, see F. K. Robinson, Whitby Glossary,⁽¹⁸⁷⁶⁾ English Dialect Society, p. 169. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache,^{2nd ed. (Köln, 1960-1962)} II, 19.

1H4, II, iv, 520 (F): "if to be fat, be to be hated, then
Pharaohs leane Kine are to be loved"

AYL, IV, iii, 50 (F): "If the scorne of your bright eine/
Have power to raise such love in mine"

MND, I, i, 242 (F): "For ere Demetrius lookt on Hermias
eyne" (rhyme: mine)

Luc., 1229 (1594): "Her circled eien inforst, by simpathie"

Per., III, Prol., 5 (Q₁): "The Catte with eyne of burning
cole"

2H6, IV, ii, 195 (F): "Spare none, but such as go in clouted
shooen" (Cade is speaking)

Ham., IV, v, 26 (F): "and his Sandal shoone"
(A popular rhyme)

§

4

Numerals are often followed by terms of measurement, value, weight, distance, or time in the singular (twelve foot, twenty pound). Shakespeare prefers to use year as a plural when a man of the common people is speaking, and similarly the use of shilling instead of shillings is confined to the speech of two uneducated characters. Old forms of the plural have survived in pound, year, foot, mile. In the same way that month survives as an old plural in the expression a twelvemonth so does night in sevennight (se'nnight), fortnight. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 21. Further examples are given under each word in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, 3rd ed., revised and enlarged by G. Sarrazin (Berlin and London, 1902).

WT, IV, iv, 347 (F): "twelve foote and a halfe"

Lr., IV, vi, 50 (F): "So many fathome downe precipitating"

Tmp., V, i, 55 (F): "I'll breake my staffe,/ Bury it
certaine fadomes in the earth"

Shr., Ind., i, 21 (F): "I would not loose the dogge for
twentie pound"

Wiv., III, iv, 33 (F): "three hundred pounds a yeere?"

WT, IV, iii, 34 (F): "every tod yeeldes pound and odde
shilling" (the clown is speaking)

Wiv., I, i, 160 (F): "that cost me two shilling and two
pence a peece" (Slender is speaking)

TN, II, iii, 20 (F): "I had rather then forty shillings I
had such a legge"

1H4, III, iii, 95 (F): "a Seale-Ring of my Grand-fathers,
worth fortie Marke"

Shr., V, ii, 35 (F): "A hundred marks"

Tro., I, ii, 127 (F and Q₁): "within three pound"

Wiv., III, ii, 33 (F): "twentie mile"

Cor., I, vi, 20 (F): "Three or foure miles about"

MV, II, v, 27 (F and Q₁): "on ashwensday was foure yeere"
(Launcelot is speaking)

AYL, V, ii, 66 (F): "since I was three yeare old"
(Rosalind is disguised as Ganymede)

AYL, III, ii, 334 (F): "a sennight"

Cf. also:

AWW, IV, v, 103 (F): "his left cheeke is a cheeke of two
pile and a halfe"

§ 5 Horse is used for cavalry, as is foot (formerly: footmen) in the sense of infantry, but it is also used several times as a plural to denote separate individuals (cf. §§ 189²a, 189³b). In this use it is now obsolete. Folk appears four times alongside the more common folks. Fowl occurs as a collective as well as fowls (cf. OED under fowl 2). Mackerel, like herring, can be a collective. Fish and fishes both denote the generic idea. Cannon can be used as a plural as well as cannons, and the same is true of ordnance, ordnance (cf. §§ 189²a, 189³b). Sail 'ship' has as plural forms both sails and sail. Hairs was formerly much more common as a collective than it is today; Shakespeare also uses hair, the form now generally accepted. Poll 'head' is used after numerals as a plural in the same way that head (of cattle) is used today. Pearl is used by Shakespeare as a collective (or as the name of a material). Further examples are given in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

AWW, III, iii, 1 (F): "The Generall of our horse thou art"

Ant., IV, x, 4 (F): "our Foote... Shall stay with us"

TGV, III, i, 265 (F): "a Teeme of horse"

Ant., III, vii, 7 (F): "if wee should serve with Horse and
Mares together"

(There are 12 instances of horse used as a plural)

Ham., V, i, 30 (F): "the more pittie that great folke should
have countenance in this world to
drowne or hang themselves"

Cym., III, vi, 9 (F): "poore Folkes"

R2, V, i, 41 (F and Q₁): "good old folkes"

Tit., V, iii, 68 (F): "a flight of Fowle"

Err., II, i, 23 (F): "fish and fowles" (rhyme: soules)

1H4, II, iv, 395 (F and Q₁): "as cheape as stinking
Mackrel(1)"

TN, I, v, 129 (F): "these pickle herring"

Ant., II, v, 12 (F): "Tawny fine fishes"

Tim., IV, iii, 426 (F): "Beasts, and Birds, and Fishes"

Jn., I, i, 26 (F): "my Cannon"

Mac., I, ii, 37 (F): "As Cannons over-charg'd"

Jn., II, i, 218 (F): "By the compulsion of their Ordinance"

H5, III, Prol., 26 (F): "the Ordenance on their Carriages"

Oth., I, iii, 37 (F): "thirtie Saile"

Jn., III, iv, 2 (F): "A whole Armado of convicted saile"

Ant., II, vi, 24 (F): "Thou can'st not feare us Pompey with
thy sailes"

Err., III, ii, 48 (F): "thy golden haires"

MV, III, ii, 121 (F): "here in her haires/ The Painter
plaies the Spider"

Wiv., I, i, 49 (F): "she has browne haire"

AWW, IV, iii, 191 (F): "fifteene thousand pole"

Tit., II, i, 19 (F): "shine in Pearle and Gold"

LLL, V, ii, 53 (F): "these Pearls"

(Q₁): "these Pearle"

Note. "nine Farrow" (Mac., IV, i, 65 (F)). In this instance farrow is to be understood as being used in the same way after a plural as snipe, duck, tandrail, trout, dace, whiting, etc., are used in modern sporting terminology.

§ 6 Victual 'provisions' is found alongside victuals 'food'. The former is now obsolete, the latter is confined almost entirely to popular use. The singular nuptial was already in decline in the first half of the 17th century, and the Second Folio sometimes replaces it by the rival form nuptials, which was later the only accepted form. The plural funerals (Fr. les funerailles, Lat. funeralia), which is found together with the more common form funeral, has long been obsolete; as a result of the general influence of words in "al" the singular form is now the only one accepted.

Ado, I, i, 50 (F): "You had musty victuall, and he hath holpe to ease it"

(Q₁): "You had musty vittaile, and he hath holpe to eate it"

Cym., III, vi, 41 (F): "it eates our victualles"

MND, I, i, 125 (F): "I must imploy you in some businesse/
Against our nuptiall"

Tmp., V, i, 308 (F): "Where I have hope to see the nuptiall"

Per., V, iii, 80 (Q₁): "wee'le celebrate their Nuptialls"

JC, III, ii, 89 (F): "Come I to speake in Caesars Funerall"

JC, V, iii, 105 (F): "His Funerals shall not be in our Campe"

Tit., I, i, 381 (F): "Laertes sonne,/ Did graciously plead for his Funerals"

§ 7 There are several double forms which result from the complex nature of the object denoted. Brain and brains, both denoting either intelligence or the physical organ, were used quite indiscriminately; only in the phrases to beat out - , to dash out - , to knock out a person's brains is the latter form compulsory (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under brain); brains is occasionally used as a singular. Gallows, alongside which the form gallowses occurs (now found only in dialect, cf. OED under bellows), was used as either a singular or a plural. The fact that the plurals doors and gates are often used when only a single object is involved is evidently connected with the fact that the object concerned often consists of two parts. Singular and plural are also used side by side in the adverbial phrases out of door, out of doors; out of gate, out of gates. The use of the plural form hilts in the singular sense (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under hilt) corresponds to O.E. usage. Breech occurs once, as well as the usual form breeches. On the other hand hose has only the one form for both singular and plural (cf. §§ 489a, 489b). The plural form buttocks occurs once alongside buttock with a singular meaning. The form stock, instead of the otherwise normal stocks 'an instrument of punishment', is used once in order to make a pun.

AWW, III, ii, 16 (F): "the brains of my Cupid's knock'd out"

MM, IV, iii, 58 (F): "they shall beat out my braines with
billets"

AYL, IV, iii, 33 (F): "womens gentle braine"

Tmp., V, i, 217 (F): "I prophesi'd, if a Gallowes were on
Land/ This fellow could not drowne"

1H4, I, ii, 66 (F): "shall there be Gallowes standing in
England when thou art King?"

Cym., V, iv, 214 (F): "there were desolation of Gaolers and
Galowses" (The gaoler is speaking)

MV, II, v, 53 (F and Q₁): "shut doores after you"

TN, I, iv, 16 (F): "Be not deni'de accesse, stand at her
doores"

LLL, III, i, 93 (F and Q₁): "Untill the Goose came out of
doore" (rhyme: foure)

Tmp., III, ii, 78 (F): "Ile turne my mercie out o'doores"

MM, IV, iv, 6 (F): "and why meet him at the gates"

LLL, II, i, 26 (F and Q₁): "Before we enter his forbidden
gates"

Cor., IV, i, 47 (F): "bring me but out at gate"

Lr., III, vii, 93 (F and Q₁): "Go(e) thrust him out at gates"

H5, II, Prol., 9 (F): "a Sword, from Hilts unto the Point"

1H4, II, iv, 229 (F): "Seven, by these Hilts, or I am a
Villaine else"

JC, V, iii, 43 (F): "Heere, take thou the Hilts"

R3, I, iv, 160 (F): "Take him on the Costard, with the ~~hilt~~
hiltes of thy Sword"

H8, I, iii, 31 (F): "Short blistred Breeches"

3H6, V, v, 24 (F): "That you might...ne're have stolne the
Breech from Lancaster"

TGV, II, vii, 55 (F): "A round hose (Madam) now's not worth
a pin"

1H4, II, iv, 239 (Q₁)♦Falstaff: "Their points being broken."
Poins: "Downe fell their hose."

Cor., II, i, 57 (F): "the Buttocke of the night"

Err., III, ii, 120 (F): "in her buttockes"

Lr., II, iv, 65 (F): "And thou hadst beene set i'th'Stockes
for that question♦"

TGV, III, i, 311-312 (F): "What neede a man care for a stock
with a wench,/ When she can knit
him a stocke?"

Note. To the above group should be added not only scales
(that scale) but perhaps also a shambles, but these occur in
Shakespeare only in this one form. The singular use of
sessions (this sessions) originally expressed the summation
of individual periods of time to make a single unit of time.

Rom., I, ii, 101 (F): "in that Christall scales, let there
be waied,/ Your Ladies love against
some other Maid"

3H6, I, i, 71 (F): "To make a Shambles of the Parliament
House"

Oth., IV, ii, 66 (F): "as Sommer Flyes are in the Shambles"

WT, III, ii, 1 (F): "This Sessions...pushes 'gainst our
heart"

WT, III, ii, 142 (F): "The Sessions shall proceed"

Son. XXX, 1 (1609): "When to the Sessions of sweet silent
thought"

§ 8 Riches is still used as a singular, corresponding to the French richesse. In Shakespeare, however, it is also found as a plural. Alms is used as a singular, but whether it also occurs as a plural, as it still does occasionally today, cannot be ascertained with certainty from the examples. The OED gives examples of alms used as a plural from about the middle of the 16th century. As well as the original singular form mean 'opportunity', which is now obsolete, there is the new formation means, which is used as both singular and plural. News can be used as either a singular or plural, and in the same way tidings can be used in the singular. The plural businesses, meaning 'affairs', is now obsolete. Pain (in the physical sense) forms a plural pains, which still occurs, though it is rare in ordinary speech; in the abstract sense of 'trouble' the form pains, which is always singular, occurs alongside pain; on the other hand pains 'efforts' is formed from pain 'a single effort'. Thanks, now in use only as a plural, is, apart from a thousand thanks, always used as a singular; thank, the old singular, survives in pick-thank. Odds, now plural, occasionally occurs as a singular in Shakespeare. Wit used as a singular has a wide variety of meanings in Shakespeare, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under wit.

Son. LXXXVII, 6 (1609): "And for that ritches where is my
deserving?"

Oth., II, i, 83 (F): "The Riches of the Ship is come on
shore"

Tim., IV, ii, 32 (F): "Since Riches point to Misery and
Contempt?"

TGV, IV, i, 13 (F): "My riches, are these poore habiliments"

Cor., III, ii, 120 (F): "That hath receiv'd an Almes"

Shr., IV, iii, 5 (F): "Beggars... Upon intreatie have a
present almes"

TGV, II, vii, 5 (F): "tell me some good meane/ How with my
honour I may undertake/ A iourney to
my loving Protheus"

- Err., I, ii, 18 (F): "having so good a meane"
- IV, II, i, 19 (F and Q₁): "who win(ne)s me by that meanes I
told you"
- 2H4, III, i, 29 (F and Q₁): "With al(l) appliances(,) and
meanes to boote"
- 2H4, I, i, 137 (F): "this newes"
(Q₁): "these newes"
- Jn., V, vii, 65 (F): "You breath these dead newes in as
dead an eare"
- 1H4, I, i, 58 (F and Q₁): "the newes was told"
- R2, III, iv, 80 (F): "this ill-tydings?"
- Jn., IV, ii, 115 (F): "The tydings comes"
- Jn., IV, ii, 132 (F): "these ill tydings"
- AWW, III, vii, 5 (F): "Nothing acquainted with these
businesses"
- Jn., IV, iii, 138 (F): "Let hell want paines enough to
torture me"
- Tit., IV, ii, 47 (F and Q₁): "our beloved mother in her
paines"
- Son. XXXVIII, 14 (1609): "The paine be mine, but thine shal
be the praise"
- H8, III, ii, 72 (F): "This same Cranmer's/ A worthy Fellow,
and hath tane much paine/ In the
Kings businesse"
- Shr., IV, iii, 43 (F): "And all my paines is sorted to no
prooffe"
- R3, I, iii, 117 (F): "'Tis time to speake,/ My paines are
quite forgot"
- Cor., V, i, 46 (F): "Yet your good will/ Must have that
thankes from Rome"
- Ant., II, vi, 48 (F): "well studied for a liberall thankes"
- H8, I, iv, 74 (F): "For which I pay 'em a thousand thankes"
- 1H4, III, ii, 25 (F): "Which oft the Eare of Greatnesse
needes must heare,/ By smiling
Pick-thankes"
- Luke, VI, 32 (1611): "For if yee love them which love you,
what thanke have ye?"

H5, IV, iii, 5 (F): "'tis a fearefull oddes"

LLL, I, ii, 191 (F and Q₁): "Devise Wit, write Pen"
(= imagination)

TGV, I, i, 47 (F): "by Love, the yong, and tender wit/ Is
turn'd to folly" (= sense)

MM, II, i, 282 (F): "few of any wit in such matters"
(= understanding)

3H6, IV, vii, 61 (F): King Edward: "... 'tis wisdom to
conceale our meaning."

Hastings: "Away with scrupulous Wit,
now Armes must rule."
(= wisdom)

§ 9 The plural wars, which as a general idea has the same meaning and use as the singular war, is peculiar, hence also the double forms in set phrases like to make war(s), to go to war(s), at war(s) (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under war). The plural seas is especially common; in some cases it can be replaced by another plural such as floods or waves, though this meaning does not always fit (cf. N.E. the seas kept breaking over the vessel). Letters often occurs when it does not follow from the context that more than one epistle is concerned; here there is a possible Latin influence (literae). The plural moneys is used by Shylock several times as a singular (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under money). This form is found in Wyclif's Bible, first version, 2 Macc., III, 6, Bacon's essay Of Usury (1625), and Lithgow's Rare Adventures, IV, 140 (1632), where it obviously has no Jewish association. According to the OED it acquired this association only from Shakespeare onwards.

2H4, I, ii, 85 (F): "Is there not wars?"

Cor., I, iii, 112 (F): "they nothing doubt prevailing, and
to make it breefe Warres"

MM, II, ii, 33 (F): "but that I am/ At warre, twixt will,
and will not"

2H4, III, i, 60 (F): "and in two yeeres after,/ Were they
at Warres"

AWW, II, iii, 295 (F): "too'th warrs my boy, too'th warres"

AWW, II, iii, 302 (F): "too'th warre"

R2, III, ii, 3 (F): "After your late tossing on the breaking
Seas?"

3H6, IV, viii, 3 (F): "Edward from Belgia...Hath pass'd in
safetie through the Narrow Seas"

R3, IV, iv, 463 (F and Q₁): "Richmond is on the Seas"

R3, IV, iv, 474 (F): "what makes he upon the Seas?"

(Q₁): "what doeth he upon the sea?"

AWW, IV, v, 91 (F): "I have letters that my sonne will be
heere to night"

MM, IV, iii, 97 (F): "Now wil I write Letters to Angelo"

MV, I, iii, 120 (F and Q₁): "moneyes is your su(i)te"

Early

10 ~~Older~~ New English shows a strong tendency to use abstract concepts in the plural: rages, revenges. Cf. T. L. O. Davies, Bible English (London, 1875), pp. 34-5 for examples from the Bible of 1611.

Cor., V, iii, 85 (F): "Desire not t'allay/ My Rages and
Revenge, with your colder reasons"

MV, II, vi, 41 (F): "must I hold a Candle to my shames?"

1H4, III, ii, 144 (F and Q₁): "on my head/ My shames
redoubled"

JC, I, ii, 42 (F): "Conceptions onely proper to my selfe,/ Which give some soyle (perhaps) to my Behaviours"

Jn., V, i, 51 (F): "So shall inferior eyes/ That borrow their behaviours from the great,/ Grow great by your example"

Note. F. T. Visser (English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 16) suggests that the same phenomenon is found with forms in "-ing" as in:

MM, I, iv, 54 (F): "His giving-out, were of an infinite distance/ From his true meant designe"

JC, III, i, 36 (F): "These couchings, and these lowly courtesies"

H8, IV, i, 87 (F): "She had all the Royall makings of a Queene"

§ 11 The plural sire is used in Shakespeare chiefly to address people of the lower classes or those who are beneath the rank of the speaker; the original meaning of this form of address has become so weakened that it is even occasionally applied to women, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under sir. The modern written language uses Sirs, together with an adjective, only in letter headings, but it is still very common in Scotland, cf. J. Jamieson, An Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language, new ed., ed. by J. Longmuir and D. Donaldson, Vol. IV (Paisley, 1882), 227.

1H4, II, ii, 62 (Q₁): Prince: "Sirs you foure shall front
them in the narrowe lane"

Wiv., I, iii, 34 (F): Falstaff: "Well sirs, I am almost out
at heeles."

Pistol: "Why then let Kibes ensue"

Shr., Ind., i, 66 (F): "This do, and do it kindly, gentle
sirs"

(The Lord is speaking to his servants)

Ant., IV, xv, 85 (F): "Ah Women, women! Looke/ Our Lampe is
if, spent, it's out. Good sirs, take
heart,/ Wee'l bury him"

LLL, IV, iii, 212 (F and Q₁): "Hence sirs, away."

(The King is addressing Jaquenetta and Costard)

§ 12 Elizabethan English shares with other languages the tendency to express a personal concept by a corresponding abstract if it is intended to represent the person as a supreme example of the latter. In the case of titles (your Excellency, your Grace) the usage has become traditional. In Shakespeare's time the abstract could be used to express not only a compliment or external distinction but also the humour or imagination of the speaker. Thus Prospero jovially calls Ariel, who has performed a commission efficiently and quickly, my diligence (Tmp., V, i, 241 (F)), and rewards him with his freedom. The exasperated Capulet calls the Nurse Good Prudence (Rom., III, v, 172 (F and Q₂)) when she takes Juliet's side, and tells her to keep silent. Occasionally abstract irony increases the sarcasm, as in the conversation between Doll Tearsheet and Falstaff, who calls her my poore Vertue (2H4, II, iv, 51 (F)). The use of the abstract was formerly quite common in offensive and insulting expressions:

1H4, III, ii, 99 (F): "thou, the shadow of Succession"

(= thou shadow of a-successor)

Oth., V, ii, 231 (F): "Filth, thou lyest" (Iago to Emilia)

Wiv., II, ii, 21 (F): "thou unconfinable basenesse"

(Falstaff to Pistol)

Tmp., V, i, 218 (F): "blasphemy" (= blasphemer)

Many more examples of Shakespeare's use of the abstract for the concrete are given in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, pp. 1421-3.

The Genitive

(Cf. here O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (1894), pp. 279-327)

- § 13 The "s" of the so-called Saxon genitive has ceased to be a true inflexion in New English, since it has no influence on the word-stem: wife's (cf. on the other hand the plural "-s": wife - wives); in addition it can stand at the end of a phrase (my sister-in-law's house), which thus acquires a genitive character as a whole. It is therefore now a free case-suffix. Its modern use developed gradually, and traces of the old manner of use still appear in Shakespeare in the word order and in the occasional omission of the inflexion, cf. O. Jespersen, Progress in Language, p. 309f. Old genitives like wives, lives are still found in Shakespeare, but were no longer accepted by the beginning of the 18th century. The modern form of the genitive of nouns ending in a voiceless consonant in which "-s" is added to the uninflected singular form first appears about 1650, which was also the time when the apostrophe first came into use with the genitive, cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 15.

Wiv., IV, ii, 171 (F): "his wives Lemman"

Jn., IV, iii, 106 (F): "his sweete lives losse"

AWW, V, iii, 91 (F): "At her lives rate"

In the genitives of words which end in an "s" sound (Pythagoras' time) or whose governing word starts with such a sound (forest side, for sport sake), the case indication is often omitted (cf. N.E. bedside). The M.E. genitive form horse has survived until the present day in the expression on horse back. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 15-6.

JG, III, ii, 178 (F): "Cassius Dagger"

Tit., II, i, 109 (F): "Bassianus love"

AYL, III, ii, 187 (F): "since Pythagoras time"

Luc., 322 (1594): "our mistresse ornaments"

AYL, III, ii, 144 (F): "at everie sentence end"

2H6, II, i, 204 (F): "in Iustice equall Scales"

Luc., 36 (1594): "Lucrece Sov'raightie"

Jn., II, i, 289 (F): "on's horsebacke"

2H6, IV, iii, 15 (F): "at my horse heeles"

3H6, IV, vi, 83 (F): "on the Forrest side"

1H4, II, i, 79 (F and Q₁): "for sport sake"

Cor., II, iii, 36 (F): "for Conscience sake"

Err., V, i, 33 (F): "for God sake"

JC, III, ii, 70 (F): "For Brutus sake"

Note. In this connection the history of the word sherry should be mentioned. The original form is Sherris (2H4, IV, iii, 111 (F)), which represents the English pronunciation of the Spanish town Xeres. The form sherry evidently arose from the pronunciation sherrisack of the compound Sherris-Sack (2H4, IV, iii, 104 (F)). In Elizabethan times sack was a common noun used to describe any dry Spanish wine. The use of sherry as a short form for sherris-sack is no more unusual than the use of port for port-wine. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 23.

No manner person occurs once in Shakespeare for no manner of person. This is a survival of an old genitive construction. The modern form is connected with the older, and now obsolete: no maner a person. When the older genitive was no longer recognized as such the indefinite article was interpreted as a weak form of of and so the phrase became no manner of person. Similarly, sort and kind occur as genitives before the indefinite article, and hence kinda, kinder are still found as dialect ~~forms~~ ~~forms~~ forms of kind a. Cf. OED under a prep.² 3.

R3, III, v, 108 (F): "no manner person"

(Q₁): "no maner of person"

§ 16 Other traces of old genitive relationships, in which however the case is clearly indicated in the later Folios by the insertion of the characteristic "s" sign, seem to exist in at street end = at the street's end and perhaps also in heart-sorrow (hearts-sorrow), later heart's sorrow, though these cannot be regarded as an exact parallel to for sport sake. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 16.

Wiv., IV, ii, 40 (F): "at street end"

Tmp., III, iii, 81 (F): "hearts-sorrow"

17 Proper names occur several times as gentives without case indications in front of common nouns: Rome gates = gates of Rome, Tiber banks = banks of Tiber. Naturally it is possible that here, and to some extent also in § 204¹⁶, these idioms may be explained as examples of noun compounds.

Cor., III, iii, 104 (F): "our Rome gates"

JC, I, i, 63 (F): "Draw them to Tyber bankes"

Ham., I, v, 33 (F): "on Lethe Wharfe"

Wiv., V, v, 14 (F): "a Windsor Stagge"

2H4, II, iv, 262 (F): "Tewksburie Mustard"

§ 18 The range of use of the Saxon genitive is much wider in Shakespeare than in modern prose, though it is still used quite freely in poetic language.

R3, I, iii, 264 (F and Q₁): "in the Cedars top"

JC, I, ii, 61 (F): "groaning underneath this Ages yoake"

Tit., II, i, 70 (Q₁): "This discords ground"

(F): "This discord ground"

MND, III, ii, 141 (F and Q₁): "high Taurus snow"

LLL, V, ii, 354 (F and Q₁): "your houses guest"

Ham., III, iv, 193 (F and Q₂): "on the houses top"

19 The use of the Saxon genitive to express an objective genitive is now very rare since the form gives no information about the nature of the genitival relationship, which must therefore be understood from the context. Shakespeare was much freer in this respect.

R3, I, iii, 204 (Q₁): "to waile thy childrens losse"

R3, I, iv, 229 (Q₁): "My brothers love" (= love for my brother)

1H4, I, iii, 149 (F and Q₁): "Whose wrongs in us God
pardon" (the wrongs that he
has suffered at our hands)

Ham., III, iii, 38 (F): "A Brothers murther"

AYL, I, i, 67 (F): "for your Fathers remembrance"

Note. There was formerly no objection to two immediately consecutive genitive forms in "s".

Ham., III, iv, 15 (F): "your Husbands Brothers wife"

R2, I, i, 117 (F and Q₁): "my fathers brothers sonne"

JC, III, i, 154 (F): "Caesars deaths houre"

3H6, I, i, 27 (F): "this is thine, and not King Henries
Heires"

§ 20 Personification is used in poetic speech to heighten illusion and to make descriptions more vivid, and Shakespeare makes plentiful use of it. He gives a personal gender to a considerable number of concrete and abstract ideas that in modern prose are regarded as neuters. A study of the gender of the words involved (see §§ 21-24) shows that this has no connection with the original gender in Old English. Indeed such a connection is quite impossible because as early as 1250 the inflexions of the noun and pronoun had, with a few exceptions, fallen out of use. Personification has various origins. It was a particularly obvious device for the academic dramatists of the 16th and 17th centuries, especially those who took as their model the rhetorical style of Seneca. The allegories of the moralities, which were mostly simply personifications of abstract ideas, vices, and virtues (cf. E. Ausbüttel, Das persönliche Geschlecht unpersönlicher Substantiva im Mittelenglischen, Studien zur englischen Philologie, XIX (Halle, 1904), p. 130), introduced a tendency to personal forms of presentation which was still operative in Elizabethan times. The heightening of emotion which was a feature of the Renaissance, the habit of depicting the phenomena and powers of nature in terms of the personal imagination of ancient writers, played an appreciable role in the art of personification among Elizabethan dramatists. The sun is masculine when it is represented as Phoebus or Apollo, and the moon is feminine because of its mythological association with Luna or Phoebe. Fortune, Fame, music are feminine in accordance with the ancient view of their natures. Admittedly the poetic conventions of Renaissance Italy are not so powerful or active in Shakespeare as, for example, in Spenser, but he too owes much to the movement which was such a notable characteristic of his time.

The formal influence of the foreign language in deciding gender is less marked in Shakespeare than amongst his

contemporaries. In the case of academic poets it is possible to discern a transference of the gender of the etymon to the corresponding English word form; for example peace, rose, victory are feminine in such writers. In Shakespeare only 35 out of 62 words of Romance origin have the gender of the etymon. Although the influence of the latter cannot always be excluded entirely, no special significance should be attached to it. Shakespeare's language is much too popular in origin and appeal to justify any such conclusions. Even the suffixes "-ness", "-ance", "-ence", "-y", which in other Elizabethans tend to be feminine in gender, do not show the same tendency in Shakespeare. Words in "-y", mostly abstracts, are personified by Shakespeare as both masculine (authority, jealousy, necessity) and feminine (calamity, courtesy). It is unlikely that Shakespeare was under the influence of Latin-Greek, French or Romance words in ascribing genders to the corresponding Germanic words, so that sun was regarded as masculine because of the grammatical gender of Latin sol, French soleil, Greek ἥλιος.

Associations of ideas and the analogical influence of other words with the same meaning or form must also be considered. Thus day and light may have taken their masculine gender from sun (cf. G. Stern, Über das persönliche Geschlecht unpersönlicher Substantiva bei Shakespeare, Diss. Leipzig (Dresden, 1881), p. 24). In the 16th century names of cities were generally feminine (Athens, Carthage, London, Rome, Troy). On the other hand foreign rivers are nearly always masculine: Danubius, Isara, Nilus. The gender of names of cities in particular may be determined by the gender of the corresponding Latin common noun urbs (civitas). In the 16th century the Latin forms of the names of foreign rivers were still commonly used, so that the influence here of fluvius is even more likely (cf. E. Ausbüttel, p. 11f.). The feminine gender of Thames and of Tiber in Julius Caesar has a quite different reason: it expresses the sympathy of the speaker.

Sometimes psychological factors are equally important in the determination of gender. The form of the subject and the idea it embodies are of great importance in determining the choice of gender, but its relationship to the individual is of more decisive significance. Something which makes an impression because of its size or strength, which arouses fear through a show of force or a threatening attitude, or which inspires terror because of its appearance and character, is usually regarded as masculine. Hence pine, oak, cedar, tide (in the sense of a 'raging, dangerous flood'), murder, and war are masculine. On the other hand something which arouses sympathy or is suggestive of the vocation or activities of the female assumes the feminine gender. Hence sea is masculine when it is represented as storm-tossed and dangerous, but feminine when seen as a calm and smooth sheet of water (cf. G. Stern, p. 22). An Englishman personifies his country with the feminine gender. The brain, as the mother of ideas, is thought of as being feminine (cf. G. Stern, p. 30). The use of the feminine for the names of animals is interesting. Falcon, swan, nightingale are all feminine, but so are adder, serpent, snake, spider. Perhaps the latter represent the negative characteristics of the female.

The importance of the role of psychology in personification is clear from the traditional ascription of the feminine gender to all types of ship and from the tendency to personify sporting objects and animals. The emotions are expressed without restraint in sport and this is therefore a most valuable area of study in considering the ascription of gender as an index of personal interest. The larger animals: horse m., dog m., hound m., hare f., cat f., have a traditional gender. The use of the neuter for sporting animals shows indifference and indicates the sporting interests of the speaker. When the personification is not traditional it is conditioned primarily in both gender and frequency by the character of the speaker. The tendency to personification is inversely proportional to education and proportional to the pleasure derived from vivid

description. It must always be remembered that questions of this nature can be studied satisfactorily only with reference to the living language.

Although it is generally clear what factors influenced Shakespeare's choice of gender or might have done so, this does not explain every instance since mood, temper, uncertain whims, and the individual mentality of the author play a prominent role in this field. Quite often Shakespeare uses two genders for one idea in the same context, and even in the same sentence, alternating masculine or feminine with the neuter. In such cases the personification of an object is often temporary or incomplete: "Yea, but marke how he beares his course,/ And runnes me up, with like advantage on the other side,/ Gelding the opposed Continent as much,/ As on the other side it takes from you" (referring to the river Trent) (1H4, III, i, 107-111 (F)); "Curtesie it selfe must convert to Disdaine, if you come in her presence" (Ado, I, i, 123-124 (F and Q₁)). (Other examples in G. Stern, pp. 8-9). What variations and differences of interpretation are possible here can be seen very clearly from a comparison of Shakespeare with his contemporary, Ben Jonson. They use quite different genders for 17 words and agree completely in only 40 cases out of 70. The difference derives from their contrasting characters. Shakespeare has a pronounced preference for masculine personification, whereas in the case of the academic Ben Jonson it is quite obvious that he was influenced by the gender of the etymon, which emerges clearly and unambiguously in the case of words of Latin origin.

The grammatical means of determining gender are very meagre. The only guide is the relationship of the distinctive personal pronoun forms with the noun concerned, and even then his cannot be taken into consideration, since its had not yet become normal (it first appeared at the end of the 16th century) and hence was often replaced by his. In many instances, therefore, the gender can be ascertained only from

the attributes used in connection with an idea (father, brother, sister, soldier, captain); but these are most subjective and are usually more ambiguous criteria than the means of identification provided by the linguistic form of the word. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 26-7.

Old English Vocabulary

O.E. masculines which occur as such:

bosom

day

death

drink

drop

fear

heaven

hope

lust

sleep

star

stream

time

self-will

winter

wish

Son. IX, 13-14 (1609): "No love toward others in that bosome
sits/ That on himselfe such murderous
~~xxxxxxxx~~ shame commits"

Son. XXVIII, 9 (1609): "I tell the Day to please him thou
art bright"

Son. CVII, 10-11 (1609): "death to me subscribes,/ Since
spight of him Ile live in this
poore rime"

Mac., II, iii, 44 (F): "I requited him for his Lye" (= drink)

Err., I, ii, 35-38 (F): "I to the world am like a drop of
water,/ That in the Ocean seekes
another drop,/ Who falling there
to finde his fellow forth, /
Unseene, inquisitive) confounds
himselfe"

Luc., 173-175 (1594): "But honest feare, bewicht with lustes
foule charme,/ Doth too too oft
betake him to retire,/ Beaten away
by brainesicke rude desire"

Jn., V, vii, 60 (F): "heaven he knowes how we shall answer
him"

R2, II, ii, 68-69 (F): "I will dispaire, and be at enmitie/
With couzening hope; he is a Flatterer"

Ven., 793-796 (1593): "Call it not love, for love to heaven
is fled,/ Since sweating lust on earth
usurpt his name,/ Under whose simple
semblance he hath fed,/ Upon fresh
beautie, blotting it with blame"

Cym., V, iv, 123-125 (F): "Sleepe, thou hast bin a Grandsire,
and begot/ A Father to me: and
thou hast created/ A Mother, and
two Brothers"

Ven., 861-862 (1593): "From whom ech lamp, and shining star
doth borrow,/ The beautilous influence
that makes him bright"

R2, V, iii, 62-63 (F and Q₁): "From whence this streame,
through muddy passages/ Hath
had his current, and defil(')d
himselife"

Err., IV, ii, 58 (F): "Time is a verie bankerout, and owes
more then he's worth to season"

Luc., 707 (1594): "Till like a Iade, self-will himselife
doth tire"

Jn., V, vii, 36-37 (F): "And none of you will bid the winter
come/ To thrust his ycie fingers in
my maw"

2H4, IV, v, 93 (F): "Thy wish was Father (Harry) to that
thought"

O.E. masculines which occur as feminines:

kingdom

moon

H5, II, ii, 175-177 (F): "we our Kingdomes safety must so
tender,/ Whose ruine you sought,
that to her Lawes/ We do deliver
you"

LLL, V, ii, 214 (F): "You tooke the Moone at full, but now
shee's changed?"

22 O.E. feminines which occur as such:

church
deed
earth
hardness
mind
night
nightmare
shore
world
youth

Jn., III, i, 141-142 (F): "Why thou against the Church, our
holy Mother,/ So wilfully dost
spurne"

WT, I, ii, 97-99 (F): "My last good deed, was to entreat his
stay./ What was my first? it ha's an
elder Sister,/ Or I mistake you: O,
would her Name were Grace"

AYL, I, ii, 212-213 (F): "where is this yong gallant, that
is so desirous to lie with his
mother earth?"

Cym., III, vi, 21-22 (F): "Plentie, and Peace breeds Cowards:
Hardnesse ever/ Of Hardnesse is
Mother"

Luc., 1656-1659 (1594): "Immaculate, and spotlesse is my mind,/
That was not forc'd, that never was
inclind/ To accessarie yeeldings,
but still pure/ Doth in her poyson'd
closet yet endure"

Luc., 117-119 (1594): "Till sable Night mother of dread and
feare,/ Uppon the world dim darknesse
doth displaie,/ And in her vaultie
prison, stowes the daie"

Lr., III, iv, 126-128 (F): "He met the Night-Mare, and her
nine-fold;/ Bid her a-light, and
her troth-plight"

Jn., II, i, 23-25 (F): "Together with that pale, that
white-fac'd shore,/ Whose foot spurnes
backe the Oceans roaring tides,/ And
coopes from other lands her Ilanders"

Son. IX, 4-5 (1609): "The world will waile thee like a
makelesse wife,/ The world wilbe thy
widdow"

Ham., III, iv, 82-85 (F): "Rebellious Hell,/ If thou canst
mutine in a Matrons bones,/ To
flaming youth, let Vertue be as
waxe,/ And melt in her owne fire"

O.E. feminines which occur as masculines:

heart

law

pine

sin

sorrow

sun

tide

wickedness

Son. XLVI, 5 (1609): "My heart doth plead that thou in him
doost lye"

1H4. I, ii, 69 (F): "old Father Anticke the Law?"

Cym., IV, ii, 173-176 (F): "and yet, as rough...as the rud'st
winde,/ That by the top doth take
the Mountaine Pine,/ And make him
stoope to th'Vale"

Luc., 629-630 (1594): "When patternd by thy fault fowle sin
may say,/ He learnd to sin, and thou
didst teach the way"

Luc., 913-914 (1594): "sinne nere gives a fee,/ He gratis comes"

Per., I, iv, 63-64 (Q₁): "One sorrowe never comes but brings
an heire,/ That may succcede as
his inheritor"

Err., II, ii, 30-31 (F): "When the sunne shines, let foolish
gnats make sport,/ But creepe in
crannies, when he hides his beames"

Luc., 1667-1670 (1594): "As through an Arch, the violent
roaring tide,/ Outruns the eye that
doth behold his hast:/ Yet in the
Edie boundeth in his pride,/ Backe
to the strait that forst him on so
fast"

H5, III, iii, 22-23 (F): "What Reyne can hold licentious
Wickednesse,/ When downe the Hill
he holds his fierce Carriere?"

23 O.E. neuters which occur as masculines:

eye

flesh

gold

life

light

murder

war

Son. XLVI, 5-8 (1609): "My heart doth plead that thou in him
doost lye,/...But the defendant doth
that plea deny,/ And sayes in him
their faire appearance lyes"

(the defendant is mine eye)

Son. CLI, 10-11 (1609): "proud of this pride,/ He is contented
thy poore drudge to be" (= flesh)

Tim., IV, iii, 382-384 (F): "O thou sweete King-killer, and
deare divorce/ Twixt naturall
Sunne and fire: thou bright
defiler/ ~~Of~~ Himens purest bed,
thou valiant Mars"

(addressed to the gold)

AYL, III, ii, 137-140 (F): "how briefe the Life of man/ runs
his erring pilgrimage,/ That the
stretching of a span,/ buckles
in his summe of age"

Son. VII, 1-10 (1609): "Loe in the Orient when the gracious
light/ Lifts up his burning head...
But when from high-most pich with
wery car,/ Like feeble age he reeleth
from the day"

Jn., IV, iii, 37 (F): "Murther, as hating what him selfe
hath done"

R3, I, i, 9-13 (F): "Grim-visag'd Warre, hath smooth'd his
wrinkled Front:/ And now, in stead of
mounting Barbed Steeds,/ To fright the
Soules of fearfull Adversaries,/ He

capers nimbly in a Ladies Chamber,/ To
the lascivious pleasing of a Lute"

O.E. neuters which occur as feminines:

brain

ivy

land

sail

ship

silver

welkin

year

R2, V, v, 6-8 (F): "My Braine, Ile prove the Female to my
Soule,/ My Soule, the Father: and these
two beget/ A generation of still breeding
Thoughts"

MND, IV, i, 46-47 ~~(F): "the~~
(F and Q₁): "the female Ivy so/ Enrings
the baky fingers of the Elme"

R2, II, i, 57-59 (F): "This Land of such deere soules, this
deere-deere Land,/ Deere for her
reputation through the world,/ Is
now Leas'd out"

MND, II, i, 128-129 (F): "When we have laught to see the
sailes conceive,/ And grow big
bellied with the wanton winde"

LLL, V, ii, 549 (F): "The ship is under saile, and ~~xxxx~~ here
she coms amain"

MV, II, vii, 22 (F): "What saies the Silver with her virgin
hue?"

Wiv., I, iii, 101 (F): "By Welkin, and her Star"

2H4, Ind., 13-14 (F): "Whil'st the bigge yeare, swolne with
some other griefes,/ Is thought wuth
childe, by the sterne Tyrant, Warre"

24 Sun is usually masculine, but in the following examples it is neuter:

H8, I, i, 54-57 (F): "I wonder,/ That such a Keech can with
his very bulke/ Take up the Rayes^{*}
o'th'beneficiall Sun,/ And keepe it
from the Earth"

Son. CXLVIII, 12 (1609): The sunne it selfe sees not, till
heaven cleeres"

Similarly moon is usually feminine, but in the following example it is neuter:

MND, III, i, 52-56 (F): Snout: "Doth the Moone shine that
night wee play our play?"...

Quince: "Yes, it doth shine that night."

Ship is feminine, but it is also found as a neuter:

TGV, III, i, 281 (F): "my Mastership? why, it is at Sea"

WT, III, iii, 93-100 (F): "Now the Shippe boaring the Moone
with her maine Mast, and anon
swallowed with yest and froth...
But to make an end of the Ship,
to see how the Sea flap-dragon'd it"

It also appears once as a masculine:

Per., V, Prol., 18-20 (Q₁): "Lysimachus our Tyrian Shippe
espies,/ His banners Sable,
trim'd with rich expence,/ And
to him in his^s Barge with former
hyes"

Vessel and bark are normally feminine, but they are also found as neuters, and bark also occurs as a masculine:

Tmp., I, ii, 6-7 (F): "A brave vessell/ (Who had no doubt
some noble creature in her)

Tit., I, i, 71-73 (F): "the Barke that hath discharg'd his
fraught,/ Returnes with precious
lading to the Bay,/ From whence at
first she wegih'd her Anchorage"

Ant., I, iv, 53-54 (F): "No Vessell can peepe forth: but 'tis
as soone/ Taken as seene"

Mac., I, iii, 24-25 (F): "Though his Barke cannot be lost,/ Yet it shall be Tempest-tost"

In the same way the name of a ship is feminine:

MV, I, i, 27-29 (F): "And see my wealthe Andrew docks in sand,/ Vailing her high top lower then her ribs/ To kisse her buriall"

Cf. G. Stern, Über das persönliche Geschlecht unpersönlicher Substantiva bei Shakespeare, ^{Diss. Leipzig} ~~Programm~~ (Dresden, 1881), pp. 31-2.

Note. The use of the masculine for bottle, stone, drink, and fly (for examples see § ²⁷212) is usually suggestive of the type of personification now found in popular speech.

Tmp., II, ii, 180-181 (F): "Here; beare my Bottle: Fellow Trinculo; we'll fill him by and by againe"

AYL, II, iv, 46-49 (F): "I remember when I was in love, I broke my sword upon a stone, and bid him take that for comming a night to Iane Smile"

Mac., II, iii, 43 (F): "I requited him for his Lye" (= drink)

Romance Vocabulary

25 French masculines which occur as such:

air

age

current

danger

desire

vice

Tim., IV, iii, 221-223 (F): "what think'st/ That the bleake
ayre, thy boysterous Chamberlaine/
Will put thy shirt on warme?"

Son. LXIII, 9-12 (1609): "For such a time do I now fortifie/
Against confounding Ages cruell
knife,/ That he shall never cut
from memory/ My sweet loves beauty,
though my lovers life"

TGV, II, vii, 25-28 (F): "The Current that with gentle Murmure
glides/ (Thou know'st) being stop'd,
impatiently doth rage:/ But when his
faire course is not hindered,/ He
makes sweet musicke with th'enameld
stones"

JC, II, ii, 44-45 (F): "Danger knowes full well/ That Caesar
is more dangerous then he"

Luc., 703-704 (1594): "Drunken Desire must vomite his
receipt/ Ere he can see his owne
abomination"

H5, V, ii, 314-316 (F): "I cannot so coniure up the Spirit
of Love in her, that hee will
appeare in his ~~xxxx~~ true likenesse"

Ham., III, iv, 153-155 (F): "For in the fatnesse of this
pursie times,/ Vertue it selfe,
of Vice must pardon begge,/ Yea
courb, and woe, for leave to
do him good"

Other masculines:

affection
authority
ceremony
commodity
custom
fashion
ignorance
imagination
jealousy
knavery
lechery
letter
luxury
minute
necessity
pregnancy
prosperity
reason
repentance
study
traffic
tyranny

Luc., 271 (1594): "Affection is my Captaine and he leadeth"

Lr., I, iv, 29-32 (F): Kent: "you have that in your
countenance, which I would
faine call Master."

Lear: "What's that?"

Kent: "Authority."

H5, IV, i, 257-258 (F): "what art thou, thou Idoll Ceremonie?/
What kind of God art thou?"

Jn., II, i, 573 (F): "That smooth-fac'd Gentleman, tickling
commoditie"

Ham., III, iv, 161-164 (Q₂): "That monster custome...is angell
yet in this/ That to the use of
actions faire and good,/ He
likewise gives a frock or Livery"

Ado., III, iii, 139-142 (F): "Seest thou not (I say) what a
deformed thiefe this fashion
is, how giddily a turnes about
all the Hot-blounds, betweene
foureteene & five & thirtie"

R2, I, iii, 168-169 (F and Q₁): "dull(,) unfeeling(,) barren
ignorance(,)/ Is made my
Gaoler to attend on me"

Ham., V, i, 224-226 (F): "Why may not Imagination trace the
Noble dust of Alexander, till he
find it stopping a bung-hole"

Ven., 649-650 (1593): "For where love raignes, disturbing
iealousie,/ Doth call him selfe
affections centinell"

Ado., II, iii, 124-125 (F and Q₁): "knavery cannot sure hide
himself(e) in such reverence"

Mac., II, iii, 34-36 (F): "much Drinke may be said to be an
Equivocator with Lecherie: it
makes him, and it marres him"

Wiv., II, i, 73-74 (F): "heere's the twyn-brother of thy
Letter"

Tro., V, ii, 55-56 (F and Q₁): "How the divell Luxury with
his fat rumpe and potato
finger, tickles (these)
together"

2H4, I, i, 7-8 (F): "Ev'ry minute now/ Should be the Father
of some Stratagem"

R2, V, i, 20-22 (F): "I am sworne Brother (Sweet)/ To grim
Necessitie; and hee and I/ Will keepe
a League till Death"

2H4, I, ii, 192-194 (F): "Pregnancie is made a Tapster, and
hath his quicke wit wasted in
giving Recknings"

Cor., I, v, 24 (F): "Prosperity be thy Page"

Son. CXLVII, 5 (1609): "My reason the Phisition to my love"

Ado., II, i, 81-83 (F): "then comes repentance, and with his
bad legs falls into the cinque-pace"

faster and faster, till he sinkes
into his grave"

LLL, IV, ii, 113 (F and Q₁): "Studie his byas leaves, and
makes his booke thine eyes"

Tim., I, i, 247 (F): "Traffickes thy God"

2H4, IV, v, 86-88 (F): "Tyranny, which never quafft but
blood,/ Would (by beholding him)
have wash'd his Knife/ With gentle
eye-drops"

Of uncertain etymology: bud

Rom., I, i, 157-158 (F and Q₂): "the bud bit with an envious
worme,/ Ere he can spread
his sweete leaves to the
ayre"

26 French (-Latin) feminines which occur as such:

affliction

art

bark

beauty

calamity

chastity

city

corner

country

courtesy

echo

envy

fame

fortune

frailty

justice

melancholy

misfortune

music

nature

occasion

patience

peace

plenty

policy

riches

virginity

virtue

Rom., III, iii, 1-3 (Q₂): "Romeo come forth, come forth thou
fearefull man,/ Affliction is
enamourd of thy parts:/ And thou
art wedded to calamitie."

Per., II, iii, 15-17 (Q₁): "In framing an Artist, art hath
thus decreed,/ To make some good,
but others to exceed,/ And you

are her labourd scholler"

WT, IV, iv, 92-95 (F): "you see (sweet Maid) we marry/ A
gentler Sien, to the wildest Stocke,/ And make conceyve a barke of baser
kinde/ By bud of Nobler race"

Son. CXXXII, 13 (1609): "Then will I sweare beauty her selfe
is blacke"

Rom., III, iii, 3 (F and Q₂): "thou art wedded to calamitie"
(refers to Romeo)

Luc., 692 (1594): "Pure chastitie is rifled of her store"

Tro., IV, v, 211-212 (F): "I wonder now, how yonder City stands,/ When we have heere her Base and
pillar by us."

Jn., II, i, 29-30 (F): "Even till that utmost corner of the
West/ Salute thee for her King"

Cor., II, iii, 94-98 (F): First Citizen: "You have deserved
Nobly of your Countrey,
and you have not
deserved Nobly."

Coriolanus: "Your AEnigma!"

First Citizen: "You have bin a
scourge to her
enemies, ~~xxx~~ you ~~xxx~~
have bin a Rod to
her Friends"

Ado, I, i, 123-124 (F and Q₁): "Curtesie it selfe must convert
to Disdaine, if you come in
her presence"

Rom., II, ii, 162-163 (F and Q₂): "Else would I teare the Cave
where Eccho lies,/ And make
her ayrie tongue more
hoarse"

~~2H6~~ 2H6, III, ii, 314-315 (F): "With full as many signes of
deadly hate,/ As leane-fac'd
envy in her loathsome cave"

Tro., III, iii, 210 (F): "When fame shall in her Iland sound
her trumpe"

(Q₁): "When fame shall in our Ilands
sound her trumpe"

1H4, I, i, 83 (F): "Who is sweet Fortunes Minion, and her
Pride"

Ham., I, ii, 146 (F): "Frailty, thy name is woman"

Tit., IV, iii, 39 (F): "for iustice she is so imploy'd"

Shr., Ind., ii, 135 (F): "melancholly is the Nurse of frenzie"

MV, II, iv, 36-38 (F and Q₁): "And never dare misfortune
crosse her foote,/ Unlesse
she doe it under this excuse,/
That she is issue to a
~~frithxxxxxx~~ faithlesse Iew(e)"

Rom., IV, v, 145-146 (F): "Then Musicke with her silver sound,
with speedy helpe doth lend
redresse"

MV, I, i, 51 (F and Q₁): "Nature hath fram(!)d strange
fellowes in her time"

Ant., II, vi, 139-140 (F): "Hee married but his occasion heere"

Err., II, i, 32 (F): "Patience unmov'd, no marvel though
she pause"

2H4, IV, iv, 87 (F): "But Peace puts forth her Olive every
where"

Per., I, iv, 52-54 (Q₁): "O let those Cities that of planties
cup,/ And her prosperities so
largely taste,/ With their
superfluous riots heare these teares"

1H4, I, iii, 108-109 (F): "Never did base and rotten Policy/
Colour her working with such
deadly wounds"

Per., I, iv, 23 (Q₁): "For riches strew'de her selfe even in
her streetes"

AWW, I, i, 169-170 (F): "Virginitie like an olde Courtier,
weares her cap out of fashion"

Ham., III, ii, 26-27 (F): "to shew Vertue her owne Feature"

French masculines which occur as feminines:

autumn

choice

pardon

report

vessel

Son. XCVII, 6 (1609): "The teeming Autumne big with ritch
increase"

Tro., I, iii, 348-349 (F): "choise...Makes Merit her election"

MM, II, i, 298 (F): "Pardon is still the nurse of second woe"

MV, III, i, 7-8 (F and Q₁): "if my gossip(s) report be an
honest woman of her word"

MV, I, i, 32-33 (F): "Which touching but my gentle Vessels side/
Would scatter all her spices on the streame"

27 Double genders:

body

commonwealth

hand

honour

love

morning

saying

sea

soul

Son. CLI, 7-8 (1609): "My soule doth tell my body that he
may,/ Triumph in love"

Tit., II, iv, 16-18 (F): "Speake gentle Neece, what sterne
ungentle hands/ Hath lopt, and
hew'd, and made thy body bare/ Of
her two branches"

1H4, II, i, 87-91 (F): "for they pray continually unto their
Saint the Commonwealth; or rather,
not to pray to her, but prey on her:
for they ride up & downe on her, and
make hir their Boots"

2H4, IV, i, 94-96 (Q₁): "My brother Generall, the common
wealth/ To brother borne an houshold
cruelty./ I make my quarrell in
particular."

R2, III, iii, 79-81 (F): "no Hand of Blood and Bone/ Can
gripe the sacred Handle of our
Scepter,/ Unlesse he doe prophane,
steale, or usurpe"

MND, III, ii, 143-144 (F and Q₁): "thy hand. O let me kisse/
This Princesse of pure
white, this seale of blisse"

Rom., III, ii, 93-94 (F): "where Honour may be Crown'd/ Sole
Monarch of the universall earth"

1H4, I, iii, 205-207 (F): "plucke up drowned Honor by the
Lockes:/ So he that doth redeeme

her thence, might weare/ Without
Co-rivall, all her Dignities"

TGV, I, i, 39 (F): "Love is your master, for he masters you"

Err., III, ii, 52 (F): "Let Love, being light, be drowned
if she sinke"

3H6, II, i, 21 (F): "See how the Morning opes her golden Gates"

Son. XXXIII, 1-7 (1609): "Full many a glorious morning have

I seene,/ Flatter the mountaine
tops with soveraine eie...Anon
permit the basest cloud's to ride,/ .
With ougly rack on his celestiall
face,/ And from the for'-crne world
his visage hide"

LLL, IV, i, 121-127 (F): Rosaline: "Shall I come upon thee

with an old saying, that
was a man when King Pippin
of France was a little
boy, as touching the hit it."

Boyet: "So I may answere thee with
one as old that was a woman
when Queene Guinover of
Brittaine was a little wench,
as touching the hit it."

Tit., III, i, 223-224 (F): "If the windes rage, doth not the
Sea wax mad,/ Threatning the
welkin with his big-swolne face?"

Tro., I, iii, 34-36 (F): "The Sea being smooth,/ How many
shallow bauble Boates dare saile/
Upon her patient brest"

Jn., III, iii, 20-21 (F): "within this wall of flesh/ There
is a soule counts thee her Creditor"

R2, V, v, 6-7 (F): "My Braine, Ile prove the Female to my
Soule,/ My Soule, the Father"

~~Cf. C. A. Ljunggren, The poetical gender of the substantives
in the works of Ben Jonson (Lund, 1892), p. 50.~~

Gender of animals

28 Masculine:

horse (also neuter)

courser

dog (also neuter)

greyhound

lion

wolf

(hear)

calf

baboon

serpent

snail

lamb

fly

, humble-bee

~~xxxx~~ cuckoo

porpus

whale

Tim., II, i, 7-9 (F): "If I would sell my Horse, and buy
twenty moe/ Better then he; why give
my Horse to Timon./ Aske nothing,
give it him"

1H4, II, ii, 73-74 (F and Q₁): "thy horse stand(e)s behinde
the hedg(e), when thou
need(')st him"

Cor., I, iv, 5 (F): Lartius: "So, the good Horse is mine."
Marcius: "Ile buy him of you."

MM, I, ii, 165-166 (F): "that it may know/ He can command;
lets it strait feele the spur"
(= horse)

Per., II, i, 164-165 (Q₁): "a Courser, whose delight steps,/
Shell make the gazer ioy to see
him tread"

Lr., IV, vii, 36-37 (F): "Mine Enemies dogge, though he had
bit me"

Tim., II, i, 5-6 (F): "steale but a beggers Dogge,/ And give
it Timon"

Wiv., I, i, 307-308 (F): "I have seene Sackerson loose, twenty
times, and have taken him by the
Chaine" (refers to a bear)

Tit., IV, i, 100 (F and Q₁): "when he sleepes(,) will she(e)
do(e) what she list"
(refers to a lion)

MV, II, i, 30 (F): "Yea, mocke the Lion when he rores for
pray"

Luc., 878 (1594): "Thou sets the wolfe where he the lambe
may get"

Wiv., I, i, 91-92 (F): "How do's your fallow Greyhound; Sir,
I heard say he was out-run on Cotsall"

Ado, III, iii, 76 (F and Q₁): "a calfe when he bleates"

Per., IV, vi, 189 (Q₁): "a Baboone could he speak"

Tro., V, i, 96-98 (F): "I will no more trust him when hee
leeres, then I will a Serpent when
he hisses"

AYL, IV, i, 54-55 (F): "I, of a Snaile: for though he comes
slowly, hee carries his house on
his head"

Cor., II, i, 9-10 (F): Sicinius: "The Lambe."
Menenius: "I, to devour him"

Tit., III, ii, 65 (F): "thou hast kil'd him" (= fly)

Tro., V, x, 42-43 (F and Q₁): "Full merrily the humble Bee
doth ~~xxx~~ sing,/ Till he hath
lost his hony(,) and his sting"

LLL, V, ii, 908-910 (F and Q₁): "The Cuckow then...thus
sing(e)s he(e),/ Cuckow"

Per., II, i, 26 (Q₁): "the Porpas how he bounst"

Per., II, i, 34 (Q₁): "a Whale; a playes and tumbles"

Femimine:

falcon

eagle

phoenix

swan

nightingale

cony

bee

adder

serpent (also masculine)

snake

spider

fish

WT, IV, iv, 15-16 (F): "When my good Falcon, made her flight
a-crosse/ Thy Fathers ground"

Shr., IV, i, 194 (F): "til she stoope, she must not be full
gorg'd" (= falcon)

Ven., 55-56 (1593): "Even as an emptie Eagle...Tires with
her beake on feathers, flesh, and bone"

Son. XIX, 4 (1609): "burne the long liv'd Phaenix in her blood"

Tit., IV, ii, 101-103 (F): "All the water in the Ocean,/ Can
never turne the Swans blacke
legs to white,/ Although she
lave them hourelly in the flood"

1H6, V, iii, 56 (F): "So doth the Swan her downie Signets
save"

PP, 381 (1612): "She (poore Bird) as all forlorne"
(= nightingale)

AYL, III, ii, 356-357 (F): "As the Conie that you see dwell
where shee is kindled"

2H4, IV, iv, 79 (F): "when the Bee doth leave her Combe"

Tit., II, iii, 35-36 (F): "Even as an Adder when she doth
unrowle/ To do some fatall
execution?"

3H6, II, ii, 15-16 (F): "Who scapes the lurking Serpents
mortall sting?/ Not he that sets
his foot upon her backe"

Mac., III, ii, 13-15 (F): "We have scorch'd the Snake, not
kill'd it:/ Shee'le close, and be
her selfe, whilst our poore Mallice/
Remaines in danger of her former
Tooth"

MND, II, i, 255 (F and Q₁): "there the snake throwes her
enammel(')d skinne"

Jn., IV, iii, 127-128 (F): "the smallest thred/ That ever
Spider twisted from her wombe"

Ado, III, i, 26-27 (F and Q₁): "The pleasant(')st angling is
to see the fish/ Cut with
her golden ores the silver
streame"

29 The sex of an animal can be expressed by combining the word with another that indicates this:

she-bear
bitch-wolf
dog-fox
filly-foal
cock-pigeon
bull-calf
boar-pig
male-child
man-child
maid-child

MV, II, i 29 (F and Q₁): "Pluck(e) the yo(u)ng sucking Cubs
from the she Bear(e)"

Tim., IV, iii, 273 (F): "shee-Begger"

Similarly she-angel, she-foxes, she-lamb, she-Mercury, she-knight errant, she-wolf, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under she, p. 1045.

Tro., II, i, 11 (F): "Thou Bitch-Wolfes-Sonne"

Tro., V, iv, 12-13 (F and Q₁): "that same dog(ge)-foxe Uliesses"

MND, II, i, 46 (F and Q₁): "a filly fo(a)le"

AYL, IV, i, 150-152 (F): "I will bee more iealous of thee,
then a Barbary cocke-pidgeon over
his hen"

1H4, II, iv, 288 (F): "Bull-Calfe"

2H4, II, iv, 250-251 (F): "thou whorson little tydie
Bartholmew Bore-pigge"

H8, II, iv, 189 (F): "a male-child"

Cor., I, iii, 19 (F): "a Man-child"

Per., V, iii, 6 (Q₁): "a Mayd child calld Marina"

Proper names

30 The use of the feminine for the names of countries, counties, and towns commonly reveals a strong emotion (patriotism, admiration, sympathy), which may, however, be quite transitory (see also § 203).

R2, II, i, 57-66 (F): "this deere-deere Land,/ Deere for her reputation through the world...That England, that was wont to conquer others,/ Hath made a shamefull conquest of it selfe"

(the change of gender here is characteristic)

Jn., V, vii, 112-114 (F): "This England never did, nor never shall/ Lye at the proud foote of a Conqueror,/ But when it first did helpe to wound it selfe"

Cym., V, v, 14-15 (F): "you (the Liver, Heart, and Braine of Britaine)/ By whom (I grant) she lives"

2H6, IV, x, 78-79 (F): "Tell Kent from me, she hath lost her best man"

1H6, III, iii, 49-51 (F): "see the pining Maladie of France:/ Behold the Wounds...Which thou thy selfe hast given her wofull Brest"

H5, V, ii, 182-184 (F): "I love France so well, that I will not part with a Village of it"

Cor., V, iii, 207-209 (F): "All the Swords/ In Italy, and her Confederate Armes/ Could not have made this peace"

H5, V, Prol., 24 (F): "How London doth powre out her Citizens"

JC, I, ii, 154-157 (F): "When could they say (till now) that talk'd of Rome, / That her wide Walkes incompast but one man?/ Now is it Rome indeed, and Roome enough/ When there is in it but one onely man" (a characteristic change of gender)

Tro., IV, v, 211-212 (F): "I wonder now, how yonder City stands,/ When we have heere her Base and pillar by us." (= Troy)

Tro., V, x, 21 (F and Q₁): "Scarre Troy out of it selfe"

H5, III, iii, 8-9 (F): "I will not leave the halfe-atchieved
Harflew,/ Till in her ashes she lye
buried"

1H6, III, ii, 124 (F): "Roan hangs her head for griefe"

Names of rivers are, when personified, masculine in gender
(see § 20²⁰3); only Tiber occurs once as a feminine.

1H4, III, i, 102-108 (F): Hotspur: "And here the smug and Silver
Trent shall runne,/ In a new
Channell, faire and evenly:/
It shall not winde with such
a deepe indent"...

Mortimer: "Yea, but marke how he
beares his course"

JC, I, i, 50 (F): "Tyber trembled underneath her bankes"

Other proper names: Mountains, Months, Planets and Constell-
ations.

H5, III, v, 50-52 (F): "Rush on his Hoast, as doth the melted
Snow/ Upon the Valleyes, whose low
Vassall Seat,/ The Alpes doth spit,
and void his rhewme upon"

Son. XCVIII, 2-4 (1609): "When proud pide Aprill (drest in
all his trim)/ Hath put a spirit
of youth in every thing:/ That heavie
Saturne laught and leapt with him"

AWW, I, i, 210-211 (F): Helena: "you must needes be borne
under Mars."

Parolles: "When he was predominant."

MND, III, ii, 61 (F and Q₁): "yonder Venus(,) in her
glimmering spheare"

Tro., II, iii, 206-207 (F): "adde more Coles to Cancer, when
he burnes/ With entertaining
great Hiperion"

31

Formerly the verbs give, pay, offer, show, promise, tell often took to (unto) with the dative of the person if they were followed by a direct object, even when no special emphasis was intended. This also sometimes happened when the direct object preceded the verb.

Tim., V, i, 8 (F): "'Tis saide, he gave unto his Steward/
A mighty summe"

H8, II, iv, 198 (F): "that you gave to me/ Many a groaning
throw"

2H6, IV, vii, 130 (F): "she shall pay to me her Maydenhead"

AWW, V, iii, 37 (F): "My high repented blames/ Deare
Soveraigne pardon me"

To used for emphasis:

Cor., IV, v, 72 (F): "My name is Caius Martius, who hath
done/ To thee particularly, and to
all the Volces/ Great hurt and
Mischiefe"

The Adjective

Comparison

32 Shakespeare's freedom in the comparison of adjectives resembles that of modern popular speech, cf. W. Franz, "Die Dialektsprache bei Charles Dickens," Englische Studien, XII (1889), 230. Following Germanic rules adjectives of two distinct syllables are compared "-er", "-est" even when the second syllable is unstressed (perfecter, properer, perfectest, dismal'st - examples under a)). This is also true of adjectives of three or more distinct syllables (unhopefullest - examples under b)) and of participles used adjectivally (curster, cursed'st, damnedest, lyingest - examples under c)), cf. E. A. Abbott, A Shakespearian Grammar, 3rd ed. (1870), § 7. But it must be remembered that the choice of the form of comparison used often depends solely on the rhythm of the verse.

a)

Cor., II, i, 91 (F): "a perfecter gyber"

AWW, III, v, 82 (F): "if he were honestest"

AYL, IV, i, 162 (F): "the wiser, the waywarder"

AYL, III, v, 51 (F): "a properer man"

Ado, V, iv, 62 (F and Q₁): "Nothing certainer"

Ven., 353 (1593): "His tendrer cheekes"

Cym., IV, ii, 331 (F): "horrider"

Mac., I, v, 2 (F): "the perfect'st report"

AWW, III, v, 77 (F): "In honestest defence"

Tit., II, iii, 204 (F and Q₁): "the dismal(')st object"

PP, 383 (1612): "the dolefulst Ditty"

AWW, I, iii, 231 (F): "heedfull'st reservation"

R3, III, iv, 106 (F): "the fearefull'st time"

TN, V, i, 117 (F): "the faithfull'st offerings"

Tit., I, i, 317 (F): "the Gallant'st Dames of Rome"

MM, IV, ii, 76 (F): "The best, and wholsomst spirits of the
night"

MM, V, i, 53 (F): "the wickedst caitiffe"

Mac., III, iv, 126 (F): "The secret'st man of Blood"

b)

MV, II, i, 37 (F and Q₁): "one unworthier"

1H4, I, iii, 57 (F): "the Sovereign'st thing"

Cor., IV, vi, 73 (F): "violent'st"

Tim., V, i, 184 (F): "The reverends 'Throat"

1H4, I, ii, 90 (F): "the most comparative rascaldest sweet
yong Prince"

MV, III, ii, 254 (F and Q₁): "the unpleasant'st words"

Rom., I, v, 95 (F and Q₂): "my unworthiest hand"

(according to G. König, Der Vers in Shakespeares Dramen,
Quellen und Forschungen (Straßburg, 1888), p. 45, synizesis
occurs in 93% of such cases, and there are only nine cases
where all syllables are pronounced distinctly, six of them
at the end of a line)

Ado, II, i, 392 (F and Q₁): "the unhopefullest husband"

c)

Shr., III, ii, 156 (F): "Curster then she"

Shr., II, i, 315 (F): "How tame...A meacocke wretch can
make the curstest shrew"

Cym., III, iv, 10 (F): "my stayder Senses"

MV, II, i, 46 (F and Q₁): "cursed'st among men"

Shr., Ind., ii, 26 (F): "the lyingst knave"

H8, II, iv, 215 (F): "The daringst Counsaile"

Note 1. When two heterogeneous attributes of the same object
are compared the form in "-er" is no longer used, though it
occurs in Shakespeare. Cf. Abbott, § 6.

MM, IV, iii, 185 (F): "your company is fairer then honest"

Cf. on the other hand:

Oth., I, iii, 291 (F): "Your Son-in-law is farre more Faire
then Blacke"

Note 2. There was formerly no objection to the use of the
superlative when comparing only two objects, persons, or
qualities (cf. Abbott, § 10), and though the comparative is
now preferred the superlative is still found even amongst
educated people.

Shr., I, i, 50 (F): "not to bestow my yongest daughter,
Before I have a husband for the elder"
IV, II, i, 7 (F and Q₁): "To prove whose blood is reddest,
his or mine"

Cf. on the other hand:

AYL, I, ii, 284 (F): "Neither his daughter, if we iudge by
manners,/ But yet indeede the taller
is his daughter"

Note 3. The superlative in "-est" can be used to express a
very high rank.

H5, III, i, 17 (F): "On, on you Noblish English (= noblest)
Ham., I, i, 114 (Q₂): "A little ere the mightiest Iulius
fell"

33 Despite his marked preference for the Germanic forms of comparison Shakespeare often uses more, most in the comparison of monosyllables (more proud, most sweet). But these examples usually occur in rhythmical speech where the metre requires the Romance form. Leaving aside double-comparisons (see § 217³⁴a) and the need for parallel forms in certain cases (more giddy, see the examples under b)), Shakespeare's employment of Romance forms, for example those in the prose sections of As You Like It and Twelfth Night, often corresponds with modern usage.

a) In verse:

AYL, I, ii, 244 (F): "I am more proud to be Sir Rolands sonne"

AYL, II, i, 2-4 (F): "Hath not old custome made this life
more sweete/ Then that of painted
pompe? Are not these woods/ More free
from perill then the envious Court?"

AYL, II, iv, 77 (F): "I...wish...My fortunes were more able
to releve her"

TN, I, iv, 28 (F): "She will attend it better in thy youth,/
Then in a Nuntio's of more grave aspect"

TN, II, iv, 84 (F): "Tell her my love, more noble then the
world/ Prizes not the quantitie of
dirtie lands"

TN, III, iii, 5 (F): "my desire/ (More sharpe then filed
steele) did spurre me forth"

TN, V, i, 60 (F): "With the most noble bottome of our Fleete"

In prose:

AYL, III, iii, 15 (F): "it strikes a man more dead then a
great reckoning"

TN, I, v, 208 (F): "It is the more like to be feigned"

There are no other examples of the Romance forms of comparison of monosyllables in the prose sections of As You Like It and Twelfth Night.

b) Words of two or more syllables:

AYL, I, ii, 188 (F): "a more equall enterprise"

AYL, I, ii, 215 (F): "a more modest working"

AYL, III, iii, 8 (F): "the most capricious Poet"

AYL, III, iii, 20 (F): "the truest poetrie is the most
faining"

AYL, III, iii, 61 (F): "so is the forehead of a married man,
more honourable then the bare brow
of a Batcheller"

AYL, IV, i, 150-154 (F): "I will bee more iealous of thee,
then a Barbary cocke-pidgeon over
his hen, more clamorous then a
Parrat against raine, more new-
fangled then an ape, more giddy in
my desires, then a monkey"

AYL, IV, i, 196-198 (F): "I will thinke you the most
patheticall breake-promise, and the
most hollow lover, and the most
unworthy of her you call Rosalinde"

TN, IV, ii, 36 (F): "the most modest termes"

34 Double comparison (more better) is common in Shakespeare in both verse and prose. The phenomenon is found as early as 1340 (cf. F. T. Visser, rev. of W. Franz, Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa (Halle, 1939), English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 16). It was not accepted in the 18th century and Rowe and Pope tried to abolish it. In modern vulgar speech it is so common that it can no longer be used for its original purpose of emphasis. Cf. Englische Studien, XII (1889), 230f.; L. Pound, The Comparison of Adjectives in English in the XV and XVI Century, Anglistische Forschungen, 7 (Heidelberg, 1901), pp. 50-1; Abbott, § 11.

MND, III, i, 21 (F and Q₁): "for the more better assurance"

Tmp., I, ii, 19 (F): "nor that I am more better/ Then
Prospero"

Cor., III, i, 120 (F): "Ile give my Reasons,/ More worthier
then their Voyces"

AYL, III, ii, 62 (F): "a more sounder instance, come"

MM, II, ii, 17 (F): "Dispose of her/ To some more fitter
place"

Tmp., I, ii, 439 (F): "The Duke of Millaine/ And his more
braver daughter"

AYL, III, iii, 59-64 (F): "No, as a wall'd Towne is more
worthier then a village, so is
the forehead of a married man,
more honourable then the bare
brow of a Batcheller: and by how
much defence is better then nōl,
skill, by so much is a horne more
precious then to want"

TGV, IV, ii, 141 (F): "it hath bin the longest night/ That
ere I watch'd, and the most heaviest"

JC, III, ii, 187 (F): "This was the most unkindest cut of all"

Lr., II, iii, 7 (F and Q₁): "To take the basest(,) and most
poorest shape"

Lr., I, i, 219 (Q₁): "most best, most deerest"

(F): "The best, the deerest"

Note 1. As well as less Shakespeare uses the rarer form lesser, now used only as an attributive adjective. Another double comparison is found in worser, which occurs in the written language even later than Shakespeare and is still current in dialect. Cf. Englische Studien, XII (1889), 231; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 64.

Ado., I, i, 58 (F and Q₁): "he is no lesse then a stuft man"

MV, III, v, 45 (F and Q₁): "if she be lesse then an honest
woman"

Tmp., II, ii, 108 (F): "the lesser legges"

Err., I, i, 109 (F): "seeming as burdened/ With lesser waight,
but not with lesser woe"

MND, II, i, 208 (F and Q₁): "What worser place can I beg(ge,)
in your love"

Tmp., IV, i, 27 (F): "Our worser Genius"

Son. CXLIV, 4 (1609): "The worser spirit"

Luc., 249 (1594): "the worser sence"

Oth., I, i, 95 (F): "The worsser welcome"
(Q₁): "The worse welcome"

Shr., I, ii, 91 (F): "were my state farre worser then it is"

Note 2. Even expressions which are already superlative in meaning can take the ending "-(e)st".

AYL, II, i, 42 (F): "on th'extremest verge of the swift brooke"

MV, II, viii, 43 (F): "your chiefest thoughts"

Tit., V, ii, 125 (F and Q₁): "Some of the chiefest Princes
of the Gothes"

35 The comparative ending is sometimes used in Shakespeare to weaken the adjectival concept, in the same way as it is today. Thus the effect of the comparative in the higher classes is not to intensify the adjective high but rather to indicate a contrast with the lower classes. The basis of comparison can usually be determined from the context. The origin of this use of the comparative lies in the comparatives that are only used attributively, where a contrast is implied, and which today have no positive form (rather, upper, inner, outer). They have therefore ceased to be true comparatives. They sometimes combine with a noun to form one idea. Thus nether regions is used for hell, lower classes for populace, and inner life for soul or mind. The use of non-English comparatives like superior, inferior as attributive adjectives (superior man, inferior quality) is another factor in this development. This mode of expression is now often used out of politeness and an aversion to the direct use of the positive (old, weak, low). Hence there is a degree of increased uncertainty in the use of the comparative, and sometimes the force of the adjective is weakened considerably. This can be clearly seen in the contrast between the weaker sex and the fair sex, for example. The reasons why the comparative is used in the first instance are very similar to those why it is not in the second.

Ham., V, ii, 60 (F): "'Tis dangerous, when the baser nature
comes/ Betweene the passe, and fell
incensed points/ Of mighty opposites"

Ham., II, i, 116 (F and Q₂): "it is common for the yo(u)nger
sort/ To lack(e) discretion"

H5, II, iv, 136 (F): "the promise of his greener dayes"

LLL, I, i, 276 (F and Q₁): "the weaker vessell"

Cor., IV, vi, 69 (F): "the weaker sort"

2H6, I, i, 30 (F): "Makes me the bolder to salute my King,/
With ruder termes"

Lr., IV, vi, 81 (F): "The safer sense will ne're accomodate/
His Master thus"

Lr., IV, vi, 222 (F): "Let not my worser Spirit tempt me againe"

Lr., I, i, 37 (F): "Meane time we shal expresse our darker
purpose"

Son. CXXIII, 2 (1609): "Thy pyramyds buylt up with newer
might/ To me are nothing novell"

36 Near is still found in Shakespeare as an old comparative, though nearer is much more common, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 761. E. A. Abbott (§ 478) suggests that there was a natural burr in the pronunciation of the "r" in near so that it would sound similar to nearer. E. J. Dobson (§ 370) finds little evidence on this point, and H. Kökeritz (p. 315) argues that Elizabethan stage practice was probably not uniform in this respect. It would be unwise, therefore, to attach any great significance to a possible similarity in pronunciation. The positive nigh, now found only in dialect except in the phrase well nigh, was still in use in Shakespeare as an adverb and preposition. It has been replaced in the written language by near, which took on the functions of a positive under the influence of here, there, far (H. Sweet, A New English Grammar (Oxford, 1890-1898), § 1048), after the new comparative and superlative forms nearer, nearest had been created. The parallel existence of next and nearest led to a differentiation in meaning, with the result that the latter assumed an essentially spatial sense, whereas next was used to express nearness in time or succession in a sequence. In Shakespeare the next can also mean 'the nearest in space'. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 64.

Tit., V, iii, 24 (F and Q₁): "Please you therefore(,) draw
nie"

Mac., IV, ii, 72 (F): "Which is too nie your person"

R2, V, i, 88 (F): "Better farre off, then neere, be ne're
the neere"

(= 'being not nearer for being at a small distance')

R2, III, ii, 64 (F): "Nor neere, nor farther off"

Mac., II, iii, 146 (F): "The neere in blood, the neerer
bloody"

WT, III, iii, 129 (F): "home, home, the next way"

Note. The original O.E. adverb near has survived in connection with verbs expressing a progressive movement (come, approach). Here the ideas of positive and comparative are closely

connected and the interpretation must depend on the particular context.

Mac., III, iii, 7 (F): "neere approaches/ The subject of our Watch"

37. In Shakespeare the differentiation in meaning between latter and later, and latest and last is not so rigid as it is today. Latter (O.E. laetra), last (O.E. latost) are the regular comparative and superlative of O.E. laet. Latter and last probably acquired their modern meanings because of the contrast between former and latter and then through the frequent combination of first and last (from first to last). Their previous functions were taken over by later and latest, which were new forms associated with late (O.E. adverb late). Cf. OED and The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology under these forms. As well as this the transition from the meaning 'the latest, most recent' to 'the last altogether' is an obvious one. Since there is a similarity with least it is also possible that the contraction from O.E. latost, Early M.E. latest to N.E. last (lattst in Ormm) may have been influenced by first and least. In Shakespeare latest always means last (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 629).

Oth., I, iii, 28 (F): "We must not thinke the Turke is so
unskillfull, / To leave that latest,
which concernes him first"

Tit., I, i, 149 (F and Q): "let Andronicus / Make this his
latest farewell to their soules"

Cor., V, iii, 11 (F): "Their latest refuge / Was to send him"

Jn., III, i, 230 (F): "The latest breath...Was deepe-sworne
faith"

Tro., I, iii, 33 ~~(F)~~ (F and Q₁): "Nestor shall apply / Thy latest
words"

Mac., II, i, 3 (F): "I take't, 'tis later"

Jn., III, i, 288 (F): "Therefore thy later vowe, against
thy first, / Is in thy selfe rebellion
to thy selfe"

(= 'done subsequently' - A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon,
p. 629)

AYL, II, iii, 70 (F): "To the last gaspe"

1H6, II, v, 38 (F): "Direct mine Armes, I may embrace his
Neck, / And in his Bosome spend my

latter gaspe" (= last)

3H6, IV, vi, 143 (F): "And in devotion spend my latter dayes"
(= last)

MV, I, i, 151 (F): "Or to finde both,/ Or bring your latter
hazard backe againe"

38 Shakespeare occasionally uses far as an old comparative in a manner similar to ~~xxx~~ near. The form does not have the usual characteristic appearance of a comparative and hence it easily developed into a positive under the influence of here, there. A new comparative appeared, further, to which was added the superlative furthest. There thus developed in New English the series far, further, furthest, and when the vowel of the positive was transferred to the comparative and superlative two new formations arose, farther and farthest, which are now used chiefly with reference to distance (cf. H. Sweet, ~~NESr~~, § 1047). All four forms are found in Shakespeare and are used interchangeably (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, pp. 400, 462, 463). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 64-5.

WT, IV, iv, 441 (F): "Not hold thee of our blood, no not
our Kin,/ Farre then Deucalion off"

Ant., II, i, 31 (F): "Since he went from Egypt, 'tis/ A
space for farther Travaile"

Rom., II, ii, 83 (F): "the farthest sea"

Son. CLI, 8 (1609): "flesh staies no farther reason"

MV, II, ii, 122 (F): "let it be so hasted that supper be
readie at the farthest by five of the
clocke"

H8, II, iv, 232 (F): "we adiourne this Court till further
day"

Tmp., II, i, 323 (F): "let's make further search/ For my
poore sonne"

Ado, II, i, 275 (F and Q₁): "I will fetch you a tooth-picker
now from the furthest inch of
Asia"

§ 31

More, most are found in Shakespeare with the meaning '(the) greater, greatest', which corresponds to the original meaning of much: 'great'. The positive mickle, still current in Scots and Northern dialects (E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed. ^(Berlin, 1880-1885), I, 295), which corresponds to the Southern form much, occurs six times in Shakespeare. Mo(e) is found in Shakespeare only as a numerical concept in connection with plurals; it is sometimes replaced in the later Folios by more, which later superseded it completely in the written language except in poetic writing. Cf. Abbott, § 17; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 63-4.

PP, 219 (1612): "more mickle was the paine"

Err., III, i, 45 (F): "The one nere got me credit, the other
mickle blame"

H5, II, i, 70 (F): "An oath of mickle might, and fury shall
abate"

1H6, IV, vi, 45 (F): "To morrow I shall dye with mickle Age"

2H6, V, i, 174 (F): "in dutie bend thy knee to me,/ That
bowes unto the grave with mickle age"

Rom., II, iii, 15 (F and Q₂): "mickle is the powerfull grace"

Son. CXXXIX, 8 (1609): "What needst thou wound with cunning
when thy might/ Is more then my
ore-prest defence can bide?"

Err., II, i, 10 (F): "Why should their libertie then ours
be more?"

2H4, I, i, 209 (F): "And more, and lesse, do flocke to
follow him" (= high and low)

R3, IV, iv, 377 (Q₁): "Gods wrong is most of all"

2H6, I, iii, 149 (F): "Though in this place most Master
weare no Breeches" (i.e. the King)

Tit., V, iii, 17 (Q₁): "What hath the firmament mo sunnes
than one?"

(F): "What, hath the Firemament more Suns
then one?"

Mac., V, iii, 35 (F): "Send out moe Horses"

WT, I, ii, 8 (F): "many thousands moe"

41 The modern differentiation between the parallel forms elder, eldest and older, oldest, though foreshadowed in Shakespeare, was not yet rigidly defined; the forms with the modified vowel are still occasionally found where modern usage requires the unmodified forms. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 62-3.

JC, IV, iii, 56 (F): "I saide, an Elder Souldier, not a
Better"

MV, IV, i, 251 (F): "How much more elder art thou then thy
lookes?"

R3, III, ii, 62 (Q₁): "Ere a fortnight make me elder,/ Ile
send some packing, that yet thinke
not on it"

(F): "ere a fort-night make me older,/ Ile
send some packing, that yet thinke
not on't"

Cym., III, vi, 45 (F): "Behold Divinenesse/ No clder then a
Boy"

Err., I, i, 125 (F): "My yongest boy, and yet my eldest care"
Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

42 The forms elderliefest (even then archaic), littlest (no longer accepted in literary English), and ratherest each occur once in Shakespeare. The last is a jocular formation used by Holofernes and is intended to have a comic effect.

2H6, I, i, 28 (F): "mine Alder liefest Sovereigne" .

Ham., III, ii, 181 (Q₂): "Where love is great, the littlest doubts are feare"

LLL, IV, ii, 19 (F and Q₁): "untrained, or rather unlettered,
or ratherest unconfirmed
fashion"

43

More, less with a negative were formerly often followed by but instead of than, which is normal in modern speech. The old meaning of but is except. Cf. Abbott, § 127.

MM, V, i, 236-237 (F): "These poore informall women, are no more/ But instruments of some more mightier member"

MM, IV, ii, 149-150 (F): "A man that apprehends death no more dreadfully, but as a drunken sleepe"

MND, I, ii, 83 (F and Q₁): "they would have no more discretion(,) but to hang us"

TN, I, iv, 13 (F): "Thou knowst no lesse, but all"

~~The Adjective~~
Nominalization
(Cf. Abbott, § 5)

44 The extent to which the nominalization of adjectives was permitted in Shakespeare's time was considerably greater than it is today. With the silencing of the final "e" sound in the 15th century the last of the old adjectival inflexions finally disappeared, except for one or two odd survivals (see note). From then on the good could be either singular or plural in meaning. It was therefore necessary to differentiate between the two. Separate forms had existed for a long time before Shakespeare (the good man, the good one), but they were not used consistently and were not fully developed in their functions. The use of the adjective accompanied only by the article as a singular to describe a person (the good, the feeble) had become rare, though it appears very frequently as a vocative without the article, cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 74. In the plural, however, it is often used to describe a whole species of people (the good, the wise), though some of these plural forms have since become obsolete (the common, the noble, the subject). The corresponding singular is formed by the addition of man, woman; thus the plural the good corresponds to the singular the (a) good man, the (a) good woman. Karl Brunner (Die englische Sprache, II, 74) points out that a plural form using men was also extant and had been in use since M.E. The comparative forms of the adjective, and Present and Past participles can also be used as nouns without the addition of a particular word or an inflexional sign. The personal adjective without an article is still used as a noun in certain set phrases: young and old, rich and poor, high and low. Cf. ~~E. Gerber, Die Substantivierung des Adjektivs im 15. und 16. Jahrhundert (Diss. Göttingen, 1895)~~; O. Jespersen, A Modern English Grammar (Heidelberg, 1909-1931), II, 245 ff.; A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1415.

a) Substantival personal adjectives in the singular:

H8, IV, ii, 60 (F): "Unwilling to out-live the good that
did it"

Tim., I, i, 107 (F): "'Tis not enough to helpe the Feeble
up,/ But to support him after"

JC, III, ii, 131 (F): "I rather choose/ To wrong the dead"

TN, III, ii, 68 (F): "his opposit the youth beares in his
visage no great presage of cruelty"

Lr., I, ii, 21 (F): "Edmond the base/ Shall to'th'Legitimate"

Ado, II, ii, 26 (F and Q₁): "a contaminated stale"

Tro., III, iii, 76 (F and Q₁): "what the delin'd is,/ He
shall as soone reade in the
eyes of others(,)/ As feele
in his owne fall"

Tit., V, iii, 109 (Q₁): "I am the turned forth"
(F): "I am turned forth"

Tro., I, iii, 23-25 (F): "the Bold and Coward,/ The Wise
and Foole, the Artist and un-read,/ The hard and soft, seeme all
affin'd, and kin"

Lr., III, iii, 26 (F): "The yonger rises, when the old doth
fall"

(Q₁): "then yonger rises when the old doe
fall"

JC, I, ii, 209 (F): "Whiles they behold a greater then
themselves"

Tro., V, ii, 33 (F and Q₁): Diomedes: "Ile be your foole no
more."

Troilus: "Thy better must."

TN, II, iv, 31 (F): "Let still the woman take/ An elder
then her selfe"

R3, IV, iv, 150 (F): "Let not the Heavens heare these Tell-
tale women/ Raile on the Lords
Annointed"

In the vocative:

Tit., I, i, 431 (F and Q₁): "at my sute (sweet(e)) pardon
what is past"

Ant., IV, xv, 47 (F): "Gentle heare me"

2H6, III, ii, 70 (F): "Aye me unhappie"

Tit., V, iii, 48 (F): "What hast done, unnaturall and
unkinde?"

(Q₁): "What hast thou done, unnaturall and
unkinde."

Rom., IV, ii, 16 (F and Q₂): "How now my headstrong"

Tro., I, iii, 69 (F): "let it please both/ (Thou Great, and
Wise) to heare Ulysses speake"

R3, I, ii, 81 (F and Q₁): "Fairer then tongue can name thee"

JC, III, i, 199 (F): "Shaking the bloody fingers of thy
Foes?/ Most Noble, in the presence of
thy Coarse"

b) Substantival personal adjectives in the plural:

H8, V, v, 28 (F): "all the Vertues that attend the good"

3H6, II, ii, 32 (F): "Offering their owne lives in their
yongs defence?"

2H4, IV, iii, 60 (F): "beleeeve not the Word of the Noble"

H5, III, v, 55 (F): "This becomes the Great"

Cor., I, i, 155 (F): "Touching the Weale a'th Common"

Cor., III, i, 29 (F): "Hath he not pass'd the Noble, and
the Common?"

(The form commons is more usual, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-
Lexicon, p. 223)

2H4, II, ii, 155 (F): "the spirits of the wise, sit in the
clouds, and mocke us"

LLL, II, i, 241 (F and Q₁): "looking on fairest of faire"

AYL, IV, i, 199 (F): "the grosse band of the unfaithfull"

TN, I, iii, 34 (F): "'tis thought among the prudent"

Wiv., II, i, 117-118 (F): "He wooes both high and low, both
rich & poor, both yong and old"

MM, III, ii, 145 (F): "the greater file of the subiect held
the Duke to be wise"

Mac., IV, iii, 83 (F): "the Good and Loyall"

Luc., 902 (1594): "The poore, lame, blind, hault, creepe,
cry out for thee"

3H6, IV, i, 71 (F): "meaner then my selfe have had like
fortune"

Rom., I, iii, 69 (F): "yonger then you...Are made already
Mothers"

1H4, IV, ii, 73 (F): "they'le fill a Pit, as well as better"

1H4, IV, iii, 68 (F): "The more and lesse came in with Cap
and Knee"

Mac., V, iv, 12 (F): "Both more and lesse have given him
the Revolt"

H8, V, i, 33 (F): "two/ The most remark'd i'th'Kingdome"

Mac., II, ii, 53 (F): "the sleeping, and the dead,/ Are but
as Pictures"

LLL, V, ii, 366 (F and Q₁): "My Ladie...In curtesie gives
undeserving praise"

Note. There is a survival of an inflected adjectival form in enow, which occurs ten times alongside the more usual enough. Similarly alder in alderliefest, which was archaic even in Shakespeare's time and is found only once, is derived from the O.E. genitive plural alra from O.E. all.

MV, III, v, 24 (F and Q₁): "we were Christians enow before"

2H6, I, i, 28 (F): "mine Alder liefest Sovereigne"

Many adjectives of Romance origin take the plural ending "s" and so become true nouns. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 78. A considerable number of those describing persons have become obsolete since Shakespeare's time (opposites, vulgars, patents, resolutes, discontents, severals, gentles). Some comparatives and participles also form the plural with "s" when they are used as nouns, but this applies only to comparatives like superiors, inferiors, and bettors, and to Past participles like resolutes and revolts, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 197. Since there are two ways of nominalizing an adjective to have a plural meaning (the good - the opposites) double forms arise (see the examples in § 358⁴⁴ under b)), which sometimes have specialized and different meanings: the fair, the fairs; the innocent, the innocents (the innocents can also have a special reference to the children martyred by King Herod); the vulgar, the vulgars; the noble, the nobles (the latter is the usual form) 'the peerage' - the noble 'those of noble birth'; the common, the commons (the latter form is more common) 'the common people'; the forms nobles and commons were later used to express the contrast between 'peerage' and 'non-peerage'; besides subjects there is an older plural subject. Cf. Abbott, § 433.

Personal adjectives with the plural in "s":

Lr., V, iii, 42 (F and Q₁): "the opposites of this dayes
strife"

WT, II, i, 94 (F): "as bad as those/ That Vulgars give
bold'st Titles" (= the common people)

H5, IV, vii, 80 (F): "So do our vulgar drench their peasant
limbes/ In blood of Princes"

JC, III, ii, 135 (F): "Let but the Commons heare this
Testament" (= the common people)

Tro., II, ii, 209 (F and Q₁): "The dull and factious nobles
of the Greekes"

Ant., II, v, 77 (F): "Some Innocents scape not the thunderbolt"
(= innocent persons)

1H6, V, iv, 44 (F): "Stain'd with the guiltlesse blood of
Innocents"

Jn., II, i, 358 (F): "backe to the stained field/ You equal
Potents, fierie kindled spirits"

Ham., I, i, 98 (F): "a List of Landlesse Resolutes"
(Q₂): "a list of lawelesse resolutes"
(= desperadoes)

1H4, V, i, 76 (F): "fickle Changelings, and poore Discontents"
(= malcontents)

WT, I, ii, 226 (F): "Not noted, is't,/ But of the finer
Natures? by some Severalls/ Of Head-
peece extraordinarie?" (= individuals)

LLL, IV, ii, 172 (F and Q₁): "the gentles are at their game"
(= gentlefolks)

Cym., IV, iv, 6 (F): "barbarous and unnaturall Revolts"
(= deserters: a nominalized participle)

LLL, V, ii, 37 (F): "twenty thousand fairs"

LC, 148 (1609): "as some my equals did"

Shr., II, i, 7 (F): "I know my dutie to my elders"

TN, I, iii, 125 (F): "under the degree of my betters"

Cym., II, i, 32 (F): "offence to my inferiors"

Luc., 42 (1594): "That golden hap which their superiors
want"

46 The nominalization of adjectives by the addition of man, men, where in verse the adjective carries the stress, and which in the older editions is either hyphenated or shown as one word, is of special interest. Gentleman, nobleman, madman are examples of this phenomenon to be found in the modern language.

a) In verse:

1H6, II, iv, 24 (F): "it will glimmer through a blind-mans
eye"

Cym., V, iii, 12 (F): "deadmen, hurt behinde"

Cym., II, iii, 77 (F): "both Theefe, and True-man"

Cor., I, i, 182 (F): "A sickmans Appetite"

Cor., I, i, 212 (F): "Corne for the Richmen onely"

Lr., III, ii, 13 (F): "heere's a night pitties neither
Wisemen, nor Fooles"

(Q₁): "Heers a night pities nether wise
man nor foole"

b) In prose:

AYL, V, i, 35 (F): "the wiseman knowes himselfe to be a
Foole"

JC, III, ii, 26 (F): "to live all Free-men?"

47 The nominal use of the adjectives news, evils, wrongs, ills, sweets, delicates (extant since M.E.) is already common in Shakespeare. Sours occurs only once: "The sweets we wish for, turne to lothed sours" (rhyme: ours) (Luc., 867 (1594)). Similarly significants is found only once: "In dumbe significant proclayme your thoughts" (1H6, II, iv, 26 (F)) (= signs). The form simples appears once: "it is a melancholy of mine owne, compounded of many simples" (AYL, IV, i, 17 (F)).

Jn., V, vii, 65 (F): "Which holds but till thy newes be uttered"

AWW, I, i, 113 (F): "these sixt evils sit so fit in him"

MM, V, i, 26 (F): "Relate your wrongs"

Ant., I, ii, 133 (F): "Ten thousand harmes, more then the illes I know"

Ham., V, i, 266 (F and Q₂): "Sweets(,) to the sweet"

3H6, II, v, 51 (F): "farre beyond a Princes Delicates"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

Note. Letters-patents 'writings by which some rights are granted' (literae patentēs) is a technical term in legal language and was in common use in Shakespeare's time (cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 19): "Ti'de it by Letters Patents" (H8, III, ii, 250 (F)).

In the modern spoken language the use of neuter adjectives as nouns, whether they indicate pure abstracts or ideas verging on the concrete, is confined to a small number of words whose employment in this manner is sanctioned by custom; some are found only in set phrases: the long and the short of it, in the dead of night, handsome is that handsome does, to touch to the quick. Adjectives used as nouns occur more frequently in high style than in colloquial English (the divine, the sublime, the ornamental). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 77. Elizabethan English is very free in its use of comparatives and superlatives as nouns (examples under b)). Cf. G. Krüger, Syntax der englischen Sprache, 2nd ed. (Dresden and Leipzig, 1914-1917), § 395 ff.

a)

Tit., I, i, 208 (F): "interrupter of the good/ That Noble minded Titus meanes to thee"

TGV, II, vi, 13 (F): "t'exchange the bad for better"

H5, II, i, 129 (F): "thou hast spoke the right"

MM, II, iv, 170 (F): "Say what you can; my false, ore-weighs your true"

Ado, II, iii, 106 (F and Q₁): "it is past the infinite of thought"

Luc., 530 (1594): "The poysonous simple sometime is compacted/ In a pure compound"

Cor., IV, i, 32 (F): "your Sonne/ Will or exceed the Common, or be caught/ With cautelous baits and practice"

2H6, I, iv, 19 (F): "the silent of the Night"

2H6, I, i, 208 (F): "lets make hast away,/ And looke unto the maine"

AYL, III, v, 42 (F): "I see no more in you then in the ordinary/ Of Natures sale-worke?"

JC, V, i, 19 (F): "Why do you crosse me in this exigent."
(= exigence)

TN, III, iv, 100 (F): "let me enioy my private" (= privacy)

Tro., III, i, 46 (F and Q₁): "Faire be to you my Lord"

H8, V, v, 33 (F): "Good growes with her"

LLL, I, i, 86 (F and Q₁): "Small have continuall plodders
ever wonne"

LC, 95 (1609): "on that termlesse skin/ Whose bare out-brag'd
the web it seem'd to were"

Ven., 589 (1593): "whereat a suddain pale...Usurpes her
cheeke"

(cf. N.E. the dark, the white, the yellow)

JC, II, i, 12 (F): "I know no personall cause, to spurne at
him,/ But for the generall"

(= the public body)

Tmp., I, i, 25 (F): "the peace of the present"

(= the present time, cf. N.E. for the present)

b)

H8, IV, i, 46 (F): "Our King has all the Indies in his
Armes,/ And more, and richer"

R3, III, v, 50 (F): "I never look'd for better at his hands"

2H6; III, ii, 322 (F): "Poyson be their drinke./ Gall, worse
then Gall, the daintiest that they
taste"

MV, III, ii, 165 (F): "Happiest of all, is that her gentle
spirit/ Commits it selfe to yours to
be directed"

Tmp., II, ii, 77 (F): "He's in his fit now; and doe's not
talke after the wisest"

(= in the wisest fashion)

WT, III, ii, 217 (F): "I have deserv'd/ All tongues to talke
their bittrest"

Note. The use of thing to form nouns from neuter concepts is
not uncommon in Shakespeare. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische
Sprache, II, 77.

3H6, IV, iii, 62 (F): "that's the first thing that we have
to do"

1H4, III, iii, 205 (F): "Rob me the Exchequer the first
thing thou do'st"

TGV, IV, iv, 11 (F): "'tis a foule thing, when a Cur cannot
keepe himselfe in all companies"

AYL, III, v, 115 (F): "the best thing in him/ Is his
complexion"

49 The use of one to form nouns increased spectacularly at the turn of the 16th and 17th centuries. Whereas in Titus Andronicus there is only one example, it occurs in Henry VIII 21 times; either the adjective is used absolutely or one refers back to a noun mentioned previously. The adjective and the indefinite article without one occurs, chiefly in the following period, when the noun immediately precedes the adjective and is connected to it by and: "an honest Gentleman,/ And a courteous, and a kind, and a handsome" (Rom., II, v, 56-58 (F)), and this usage is still found in the modern literary language, though it is now rather archaic. After it became impossible in the 15th century to differentiate between singular and plural because the inflexions had disappeared, one was found to be very useful for forming nouns from personal adjectives because it was applicable to both sexes, an advantage not possessed by man, woman, which were the usual words in M.E.; it was also easy to form the plural ones. Such nominalizations originally described living creatures. This construction first appears after about 1200 in the case of superlatives and with other adjectives in the 14th century (cf. E. Einenkel, "Das englische Indefinitum," Anglia, XXVI (1903), 497. It later became fully established in the literary language. Apart from this one is used to refer back to a noun previously mentioned. Its use in this manner became much wider in the second half of the 16th century and it could then refer to concrete objects and abstracts. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, '75-6, 77; O. Jespersen, A Modern English Grammar, II, 245ff.

a)

Tit., II, iii, 142 (F): "When did the Tigers young-ones
teach the dam?"

(Q₁): "When did the Tigers young ones
teach the dam"

H8, I, i, 11-12 (F): "What foure Thron'd ones could have
weigh'd/ Such a compounded one?"

H8, I, iii, 7 (F): "they are shrewd ones"

H8, I, iv, 14 (F): "They are a sweet society of faire ones"

H8, I, iv, 94 (F): "she is a dainty one"

H8, V, iii, 180 (F): "I long/ To have this young one made a
Christian"

H8, V, v, 77 (F): "This Little-One shall make it Holy-day"

MM, II, iii, 19 (F): "Repent you (faire one) of the sin you
carry?"

Cym., IV, ii, 360 (F): "Young one,/ Informe us of thy
Fortunes"

Ham., III, i, 196 (F): "Madnesse in great Ones, must not
unwatch'd go"

2H6, III, i, 215 (F): "the way her harmelesse young one went"

Cym., I, i, 143 (F): "O thou vilde one!"

2H6, II, i, 186 (F): "what mischiefes work the wicked ones?"

Lr., II, iv, 75 (Q₁): "but the great one that goes up the
hill, let him draw thee after"

WT, IV, iv, 63 (F): "You are retyred,/ As if you were a
feasted one: and not/ The Hostesse of
the meeting"

b)

H8, I, ii, 82 (F): "By sicke Interpreters (once weake ones)"

H8, I, iii, 11 (F): "They have all new legs,/ And lame one."

H8, I, iii, 52 (F): "This night he makes a Supper, and a
great one"

H8, I, iii, 63 (F): "few now give so great ones" (= examples)

H8, II, i, 44-45 (F): "That tricke of State/ Was a deepe
envious one"

H8, II, i, 118-119 (F): "I had my Tryall,/ And...a Noble one"

H8, II, ii, 92-93 (F): "All the Clerkes,/ (I meane the
learned ones"

H8, III, i, 126 (F): "a Wife a true one?"

H8, III, ii, 102 (F): "An Heretique, an Arch-one"

H8, III, ii, 299-300 (F): "Those Articles...they are foule
ones"

H8, III, ii, 437-438 (F): "a way...A sure, and safe one"

H8, IV, i, 54-55 (F): "These are Starres indeed,/ And
sometimes falling ones"

H8, IV, ii, 51 (F): "He was a Scholler, and a ripe, and
good one"

H8, V, iv, 8 (F): "a dozen Crab-tree staves, and strong ones"

Tmp., II, i, 45 (F): "Lungs, and rotten ones"

MV, I, i, 78-79 (F and Q₁): "A stage, where every man must
play a part,/ And mine a sad
one"

WT, IV, iv, 291-293 (F): Autolycus: "This is a merry ballad,
but a very pretty one."

Mopsa: "Let's have some merry ones."

AWW, V, iii, 324 (F): "Let thy curtsies alone, they are
scurvy ones"

Ado, III, iii, 121 (F and Q₁): "when rich villains have
need(e) of poor(e) ones,
poore ones may make what
price they will"

Lr., II, i, 8 (F and Q₁): "you have heard of the newes
abroad, I meane the whisper(')d
ones"

§ 50 Adjectives, comparatives, and Past participles (equivalent to a relative clause with the verb be) can be linked with one to form a noun.

Cor., I, i, 54 (F): "He's one honest enough"

1H6, I, ii, 26 (F): "He fighteth as one weary of his life"

MV, II, i, 37 (F and Q₁): "that which one unworthier may
attaine"

Jn., III, i, 278 (F): "the scorched veines of one new
burn'd"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

§ 51 The juxtaposition of one and a superlative or other idea in apposition in Shakespeare reveals traces of a construction that is no longer found in the modern language: one the wisest prince. It was quite common in M.E. , but as early as Chaucer there was already a tendency to replace it by the partitive genitive, though this brought about a shift in the original meaning. Cf. Abbott, § 18.

H8, II, iv, 48-50 (F): "My Father, King of Spaine, was
reckon'd one/ The wisest Prince,
that there had reign'd, by many/
A yeare before"

H8, II, iv, 153 (F): "thankes to God for such/ A Royall
Lady, spake one, the least word that
might/ Be to the preiudice of her
present State"

Cym., I, vi, 165-166 (F): "And he is one/ The truest
manner'd"

Cym., I, vi, 64-66 (F): "There is a Frenchman his Companion,
one/ An eminent Monsieur, that it
seemes much loves/ A Gallian-Girle
at home"

Tim., V, ii, 6 (F): "I met a Currier, one mine ancient
Friend"

52- The following quotations show examples of adjectives used substantivally with particular meanings.

AYL, V, i, 53-55 (F): "which in the boorish, is companie,
of this female: which in the common,
is woman"

(the boorish = 'the language of the rustics'; the common
= 'the language of the vulgar')

Ant., II, ii, 229-231 (F): "goes to the Feast;/ And for his
ordinary, paies his heart,/ For
what his eyes eate onely"

(ordinary = 'repast'; OED - 'a public meal regularly
provided at a fixed price in an eating-house or tavern')

53 In connection with the use of an adjective as a noun, attention should also be drawn to the opposite phenomenon, in which a noun assumes the function of an attributive adjective. Shakespeare uses enemy, venom, neighbour, coward, choice, and music in this way. Cf. Abbott, § 22; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, I, 79-80.

Cor., IV, iv, 24 (F): "This Enemie Towne"

3H6, II, ii, 138 (F): "venome Toades"

Tim., IV, iii, 94 (F): "Neighbour states"

Ven., 1024 (F593): "Thy coward heart"

Lr., II, iv, 43 (F and Q₁): "coward cries"

Ham., III, ii, 274 (F): "in choyce Italian"

(Q₂): "in very choice Italian"

Ham., III, i, 164 (F): "his Musicke Vowes"

(Q₂): "his musickt vowes"

The Adjective and Adverb with a Predicative Verb

54 When used predicatively the adverb is very closely connected with the adjective. The adjectival form prevails chiefly in cases where it does not determine the verbal idea but is itself a predicate; in Shakespeare's time the adverbial form was more common. As a rule, when an adjective is used, the verb either expresses the particular nature of the situation (lie uneasy (heavy), shine bright, look red, smell sweet) or describes the action leading up to the position (or limit) predicated by the adjective in question (feed fat, tie tight, bow low, rise high, run dry). In using the adjectival form the speaker shows that he wants this to be regarded as the real predicate. Since, however, a double interpretation is often possible, and in earlier times the adverb was quite commonly adjectival in form, there was a much greater tendency in Shakespeare's time to use the adverbial form. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 60, 69.

a)

2H4, III, i, 31 (F): "Uneasie lyes the Head, that weares a Crowne"

1H4, IV, iii, 80 (F): "some strait Decrees,/ That lay too heavie on the Common-wealth"

(Q₁): "some streight decrees,/ That lie too heavie on the Common-wealth"

1H4, I, iii, 54 (F and Q₁): "he made me mad(,)/ To see him shine so briske, and smell so sweet"

H5, II, ii, 12 (F): "Now sits the winde faire, and we will aboard"

2H4, V, ii, 45 (F): "This new, and gorgeous Garment, Maiesty,/ Sits not so easie on me, as you thinke"

1H4, II, i, 96 (F and Q₁): "we(e) walke invisible"

Cor., IV, vi, 8-9 (F): "Our Tradesmen singing in their shops, and going/ About their Functions friendly"

R2, III, ii, 114 (F): "Boyess with Womens Voyces,/ Strive to
speake bigge"

WT, IV, iii, 113 (F): "If you had but look'd bigge, and
spit at him"

Wiv., I, i, 49 (F): "she...speakes small like a woman"

b)

1H4, III, ii, 180 (F and Q₁): "Advantage feedes him fat"

1H4, IV, iii, 26 (F): "So are the Horses of the Enemie/ In
generall iourney bated, and brought
low"

Numerals

55 Twain, long archaic in modern written English and obsolete in the spoken language, is still found in Shakespeare alongside two, but not before nouns (A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under twain); both twain also occurs twice. Twain means 'pair, couple' when used substantivally. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 89.

Lr., IV, vi, 211 (F): "the generall curse/ Which twaine
have brought her to"

(Q₁): "the generall curse which twaine
hath brought her to"

MV, III, ii, 330 (F and Q₁): "twixt us twaine"

Son. XLII, 11 (1609): "I loose both twaine"

LLL, V, ii, 459 (F and Q₁): "I remit both twaine"

Tmp., IV, i, 104 (F): "goe with me/ To blesse this twaine"

Ant., I, i, 38 (F): "when such a mutuall paire,/ And such a
twaine can doo't"

56

The formation of nouns from numerals with the plural "-s" is still possible today (by twos and threes), though not always exactly in the manner of Shakespeare. Cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, ~~3rd ed.~~, I, 305.

WT, IV, iv, 344 (F): "let's see these foure-threes of
Heardsmen"

Ham., III, ii, 168 (F): "thirtie dozen Moones with borrowed
sheene,/ About the World have
times twelve thirties beene"

57 In Shakespeare thousand is usually found with the indefinite article, but it occurs six times without it; on the other hand hundred never occurs without the article. The form twelve month appears once without the article, the original form (a twelvemonth) being comparable to a hundred, a thousand. A number of numerals, both definite and indefinite, which originally were also nouns, have a double construction in Early New English: they are sometimes connected with the thing numbered by of and at other times are in apposition: a dozen (of) men, a many (of) horsemen, a certain (of) years (days) (cf. OED under certain B, II, 5), a score (of) ewes. This quite probably contributed to the eventual acceptance of a hundred, a thousand as the correct forms. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 94.

MM, IV, i, 63 (F): "thousand esscapes of wit"

H8, Prol., 29 (F): "the generall throng, and sweat/ Of
thousand Friends"

H8, IV, ii, 89 (F): "whose bright faces/ Cast thousand
beames upon me"

Cor., II, ii, 83 (F): "That's thousand to one good one"

Tit., III, i, 196 (F and Q₁): "From thousand dangers"

Per., I, ii, 97 (Q₁): "with thousand doubts"

1H4, I, i, 28 (Q₁): "this our purpose now is twelve month
old"

(F): "this our purpose is a twelvemonth old"

58 Shakespeare very often links units and tens with and (two and twenty), though the normal practice in the modern spoken language is to juxtapose them in descending order (twenty two). The latter is also found in Shakespeare. The form Sixty and nine (Tro., Prol., 5 (F)) is a rare exception in Shakespeare, though it is well known from the Bible of 1611.

Tro., I, ii, 171 (F): "heere's but two and fifty haire on
your chinne"

1H4, II, iv, 206-207 (F and Q₁): "two or three and fiftie"

2H4, I, ii, 50 (F): "two and twenty yards of Satten"

Ado, III, iii, 141-142 (F): "betweene foureteene & five &
thirtie"

2H4, II, iv, 413 (F): "these twentie nine yeeres"

59 Counting in twenties (score) occurs frequently in M.E.
(E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, ~~3rd ed.~~, I, 304) and it is
still quite common in Shakespeare. It survives in modern
conversational speech. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache,
II, 93.

3H6, III, iii, 93 (F): "threescore and two yeares"

MV, III, i, 114 (F): "fourescore ducats"

1H4, II, ii, 28 (F): "threescore & ten miles"

2H4, IV, iii, 40 (F): "nine score and odde Postes"

2H4, III, ii, 52 (F): "at Twelve-score"

1H4, II, iv, 5 (F): "3. or fourescore Hogsheads"

2H4, III, ii, 56 (F): "and Q₁): "a score of good Ewes"

Tmp., V, i, 174 (F): "a score of Kingdomes"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

Note 1. In the following examples twenty and forty are used to
express an indefinite but relatively large number.

Ven., 575 (1593): "beautie under twentie locks kept fast"

Ven., 833-834 (1593): "Ay me, she cries, and twentie times,
wo, wo,/ And twentie ecchoes, twentie
times crie so"

TN, II, iii, 20 (F): "I had rather then forty shillings I
had such a legge"

Many more examples of both are given in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

Note 2. In H8, I, iv, 30 (F): "He would Kisse you Twenty with
a breath", twenty has the function of a multiplicative. This
may also be the case in Wiv., II, i, 203 (F): "Good-even, and
twenty (good. Master Page)" and TN, II, iii, 52 (F): "come
kisse me sweet and twentie"

60 Shakespeare uses dozen (originally a noun, Fr. douzaine) both with and without of.

2H4, V, iv, 16-17 (F): "a dozen of Cushions"

1H4, II, iv, 115-116 (F): "some sixe or seaven dozen of Scots"

2H4, III, ii, 102 (F): "halfe a dozen of sufficient men?"

(Q₁): "halfe a dozen sufficient men?"

2H4, II, iv, 387 (F): "a dozen Captaines"

Ham., III, ii, 167 (F): "thirtie dozen Moones"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

61 Certain is used by Shakespeare as an adjective in the sense of 'some'; when it occurs as a noun it is followed by of (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 183). The same is true of the synonymous some certain.

Tmp., V, i, 55 (F): "Bury it certaine fadomes in the earth"

MM, I, ii, 136 (F): "I would send for certaine of my
Creditors"

R3, I, iv, 124 (F): "Some certaine dregges of conscience
are yet within mee"

JC, I, iii, 122 (F): "I have mov'd already/ Some certaine
of the Noblest minded Romans"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon.

(2) Fift and sixt (O.E. fifta, sixta) are used exclusively by Shakespeare instead of the later forms fifth (found as early as the 14th century) and sixth, which were assimilated to the other ordinals with final "th" sound like fourth, seventh, ninth. He also uses eight instead of eighth; the former was still current as an ordinal in M.E. Twelve as found in Twelve Night (the spelling in the First Folio) and in twelve day arose from the suppression of the final "t" in twelft (O.E. twelfta) in order to lighten the consonant group (cf. "the thousand part" (AYL, IV, i, 46 (F)). Tithe, which is now used only as a noun, occurs once as an adjective meaning tenth. Cf. O. Jespersen, Growth and Structure of the English Language, p. 198; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 95-6.

Tro., II, i, 134 (F): "the fift houre"

(Q₁): "the first houre"

Lr., I, i, 178 (F): "on the sixt"

(Q₁): "on the fift"

JC, II, i, 213 (F): "the eight houre"

TN, II, iii, 91 (F): "the twelfe day of December"

Tro., II, ii, 19 (F): "Every tythe soule"

(Cf. "the tithe woman" (AWW, I, iii, 89 (F)), which is obviously a pun)

Note 1. Prime occurs several times in a temporal sense; in modern ~~times~~ speech it survives only in set phrases (to sell at prime cost). The plural dismes is found once.

Tmp., I, ii, 72 (F): "Prospero, the prime Duke"

Tmp., I, ii, 425 (F): "my prime request"

R3, IV, iii, 19 (F): "from the ~~prime~~ prime Creation"

Tro., II, ii, 19 (F and Q₁): "'mongst many thousand dismes"

Note 2. A trace also remains of the M.E. ending "-tith", which in N.E. has been replaced by "-tieth": twentieth (cf. H. Sweet, NEGr., § 1172). It was pronounced in this way until the 18th century. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 96; E. J. Dobson, English Pronunciation 1500-1700, 2nd ed. (Oxford, 1968), § 309n.

Ham., III, iv, 97 (Q₂): "A slave that is not twentieth part

the kyth/ Of your precedent Lord"
(F): "A Slave, that is not twentieth part
the tythe/ Of your precedent Lord"

The Definite Article

- 63 The definite article has in recent times taken on a strongly individual character and is therefore not generally used in front of generic ideas. In Shakespeare's time these conditions were not nearly so rigid. There is great freedom in the use of the article in verse in particular, since here it is constrained by the metre, and poetic language naturally inclines towards archaic expressions. Hence only the most marked deviations from modern usage are listed here.

64 Formerly it was not unusual to find the article before the titles: Lord, Lady, Prince, Count, followed by the name. The restriction of the title Lady to the upper-classes from the wife of a Baronet upwards is a recent development; formerly it was used of any woman of rank and was therefore less a title in the narrow sense than an epithet of respect. The use of the article before Lady today signifies the noble birth of a woman, who is thus marked as the daughter of an Earl, Marquis or Duke. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 139.

R2, II, ii, 53 (F): "The L. Northumberland"

(Q₁): "The lord Northumberland"

Cor., I, iii, 29 (F): "Madam, the Lady Valeria is come to
visit you"

Ado, II, i, 243 (F): "The Lady Beatrice hath a quarrell to
you"

Jn., II, i, 423 (F): "the Lady Blanch"

Jn., II, i, 431 (F): "Lady Blanch"

Ado, II, iii, 89 (F): "the Lady Heroes chamber window"

WT, IV, ii, 29 (F): "when saw'st thou the Prince Florizell"

TN, I, v, 109 (F): "From the Count Orsino, is it?"

65 The use of the article before the names of persons emphasizes that they belong to a famous (princely, noble) family. Cf. Abbott, § 92.

1H4, V, i, 116 (F): "The Douglas and the Hotspurre both
together,/ Are confident against the
world in Armes"

1H4, V, iv, 26 (F): "I am the Douglas, fatall to all those/
That weare those colours on them"

JC, II, i, 54 (F): "My Ancestors did from the streetes of
Rome/ The Tarquin drive, when he was
call'd a King"

1H6, III, iii, 31 (F): "There goes the Talbot, with his
Colours spred"

1H6, III, iii, 37 (F): "Who craves a Parley with the
Burgonie?"

66 The use of the article before a proper name in the first of the examples above (the Douglas) is merely a special case of a general function which was formerly commoner than it is today; it serves to show a person or thing as standing above others, as characteristically different from them, so that the concept is marked as unique, not to be confused with others, or is shown as being generally recognized as standing in a class of its own. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 138. Today the strongly stressed article is used before a concept that is preferred or sought for some purpose above all others (he is the man [I have been looking out for, I want]); this use seems to have been known also to Shakespeare. The context of the speech or situation must determine the significance of this use of the emphatic article in each individual case.

Temp., V, i, 150 (F): "Oh heavens, that they were living
both in Nalpes/ The King and
Queene there"

AYL, III, iii, 3 (F): "am I the man yet? Doth my simple
feature content you?"

Ant., IV, vi, 30 (F): "I am alone the Villaine of the earth"

TN, V, i, 127 (F): "Live you the Marble-brested Tirant still"

MV, II, ii, 119 (F): "here comes the man"

LLL, IV, ii, 127 (F): "Oviddius Naso was the man"

2H4, V, iii, 123 (F): "Harry the Fift's the man"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, under
man, p. ~~632~~ 688.

67 The original instrumental ~~use~~ case of the article in front of predicative comparatives of adjectives and adverbs (the sooner the better) is found in Shakespeare on occasions when its true nature may be somewhat obscured because the measure of comparison is not directly specified but must be construed from the context or is regarded as obviously corresponding to the usual norm. This is especially true when the reason for the excess or deficiency is not given (he was the worse for drink). In such sentences it is easy to regard the article as superfluous and to consider the meaning of the comparative as purely qualitative rather than quantitative. Cf. Abbott, § 94 and Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 140.

2H4, II, iv, 113-114 (F): "I am the worse when one sayes,
swagger: Feele Masters, how I
shake"

Ven., 207 (1593): "What were thy lips the worse for one
poore kis?"

TGV, III, ii, 19 (F): "Protheus, the good conceit I hold
of thee...Makes me the better to
confer with thee"

~~2H4, II, iv,~~

68

The modern language no longer uses the article before the vocative, but formerly it was not uncommon: the gods 'O ye gods!'

Ant., V, ii, 171 (F): "The Gods! it smites me/ Beneath the
fall fall I have"

Tit., II, iii, 40 (F): "Harke Tamora, the Empresse of my
Soule"

WT, III, ii, 143 (F): "My Lord the King: the King?"

Tmp., III, iii, 51 (F): "brother: my Lord, the Duke,
Stand too, and doe as we"

Ado., V, iv, 99-100 (F and Q₁): "How dost thou Benedicke the
married man?"

JC, V, iii, 99 (F): "Are yet two Romans living such as
these?/ The last of all the Romans,
far thee well"

69 The frequent use of the article in connection with death, not unknown even today, is peculiar; it is easily explained in cases where a particular kind of death is being described; thus to die the death has the meaning 'to die a violent death', but this does not account for the cases hurt, wounded to the death.

Ant., IV, xiv, 26 (F): "she hath betraid me,/ And shall dye
the death"

MND, I, i, 65 (F): "Either to dye the death, or to abiure/
For ever the society of men"

Err., I, i, 147 (F): "though thou art adiudged to the death"

Oth., II, iii, 164 (F): "I bleed still, I am hurt to th'death"
(Q₁): "I bleed still, I am hurt, to the death"

2H4, I, i, 14 (F and Q₁): "The King is almost wounded to
the death"

Cf. also Jn., I, i, 154 (F): "Ile follow you unto the death"

70

The use of the article before parts of the body is still common in Shakespeare in cases where modern usage requires the possessive pronoun. It also occasionally appears in other instances where the possessive pronoun is now used.

Ado., II, i, 377 (F and Q₁): "Come, you shake the head at
so long a breathing"

Tro., IV, v, 15 (F): "'Tis he, I ken the manner of his
gate,/ He rises on the toe"

Tro., III, i, 152 (F) and Q₁): "He hangs the lippe at
something"

Err., II, ii, 206 (F): "no longer will I be a foole,/ To
put the finger in the eie and weepe"

R3, IV, ii, 27 (F): "The King is angry, see he gnawes his
Lippe"

(Q₁): "The king is angrie, see, he bites
the lip"

Ant., III, vi, 5 (F): "I'th'Market-place on a Tribunall
silver'd/ Cleopatra and himselfe
in Chaires of Gold/ Were publikely
enthron'd: at the feet, sat/
Caesarion"

§ 71

The names of rivers could dispense with the article in Shakespeare's time, as they still can today in poetry. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 139.

Cor., III, i, 262 (F): "I would they were in Tyber"

Cym., III, iv, 37 (F): "whose tongue/ Out-venomes all the
Wormes of Nyle"

H5, I, ii, 45 (F): "Betweene the Flouds of Sala and of Elve"

H5, IV, i, 120 (F): "hee could wish himselfe in Thames up
to the Neck"

Wiv., III, v, 6 (F): "to be throwne in the Thames?"

1H4, III, i, 136 (F): "Come, you shall have Trent turn'd"

72

Heaven in its religious sense usually has no article, but sometimes it does. Paradise 'home of the blessed' has no article, but in the special sense of 'the garden of Eden' it does. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 139. Mount followed by a proper name appears both with and without the article.

TGV, IV, ii, 42 (F): "The heaven such grace did lend her"

Rom., III, iii, 119 (F): "Why rayl'st thou on thy birth?
the heaven and earth?"

MV, II, ii, 68 (F and Q₁): "gone to heaven"

Err., IV, iii, 16 (F): "Not that Adam that kept the
Paradise: but that Adam that keepes
the prison"

Ant., II, ii, 164 (F): Ant. "Where lies he?" Caes. "About
the Mount-Mesena"

Wiv., II, i, 82 (F): "I had rather be a Giancesse, and lye
under Mount Pelion"

73 In Shakespeare mathematics appears both with and without the article.

Shr., I, i, 37 (F): "And practise...The Mathematickes and the Metaphysickes"

Shr., II, i, 56 (F): "Cunning in Musicke, and the Mathematickes"

Shr., II, i, 83 (F): "as cunning/ In Greeke, Latine, and other Languages,/ As the other in Musicke and Mathematickes"

74 The omission of the article in circumstances where prose requires it has always been a peculiarity of poetic speech and may be dictated by the needs of metre and rhythm. It has remained a feature of the language until the present day, although it is less common than it used to be. Shakespeare shows a predilection for suppressing the definite article in similes, where the sense of the sentence sometimes suggests that the indefinite article could be supplied instead; it is omitted more often with superlatives, as well as in proverbial utterances where the maximum brevity and compactness are sought; it is very commonly suppressed before a noun on which a genitive depends.

AYL, II, vii, 52 (F): "The why is plaine, as way to Parish Church"

2H6, III, ii, 96 (F): "With teares as salt as Sea"

MND, I, i, 184 (F): "your tongues sweet ayre/ More tuneable then Larke to shepherds eare"

R2, V, i, 90 (F): "So longest Way shall have the longest Moanes"

Luc., 1006 (1594): "For greatest scandall waits on greatest state"

1H6, I, iv, 65 (F): "Where is best place to make our Batt'ry next?"

Tro., IV, iv, 116 (F): "If ere thou stand at mery of my Sword"

Jn., III, i, 79 (F): "Turning with splendor of his precious eye/ The meager cloddy earth to glittering gold"

Ado, II, i, 179 (F and Q₁): "Thus answer(e) I in name of Benedicke"

Ven., 302 (1593): "Anon he starts, at sturring of a feather"

2H4, IV, ii, 15 (F): "what Mischiefes might hee set abroad,/ In shadow of such Greatnesse?"

Tmp., I, ii, 275 (F): "By helpe of her more potent Ministers"

Cym., III, v, 61 (F): "wing'd with fervour of her love"

Cor., II, i, 202 (F): "welcome:/ A Curse begin at very root
on's heart,/ That is not glad to
see thee"

Note. Most followed by a genitive and having the meaning
the majority' occurs both with and without the article.

1H4, IV, ii, 46 (F): "I had the most of them out of Prison"

TN, III, iii, 35 (F): "which...Most of our City did"

WT, IV, iv, 414 (F): "He has his health, and ampler strength
indeede/ Then most have of his age"

75 In Shakespeare at least, at last are used in exactly the same way as at the least, at the last and have the same meaning. In some instances the choice of the one form or the other is determined solely by the rhythm of the verse. But, as in present-day speech, the forms with the article are used mainly for reasons of emphasis. In the last 'at last', in the best 'at best', and i' the haste 'in haste' are now obsolete; in the general was often used formerly instead of in general. At the first differs from at first in so far as the former means 'from the beginning, from the first', while the latter, when it means 'first', presupposes a contrast with a later point in time, though it can also signify at the first. On (upon) the sudden with the definite article has now been replaced by of a sudden.

The article is omitted by Shakespeare in a number of adverbial expressions and phrases where modern linguistic instinct would expect it (or a possessive pronoun).

The following are found in verse:

at gate(s)
at height
at mouth
at heart
at end
to point
to purpose
(to go) to wars

The following are found in prose:

at door
at palace
at town's end
at street end
at nostrils
at legs

At the had already been contracted to atte in M.E.; it is therefore quite possible that at in the expressions mentioned above corresponds to the latter form. It is also possible

that casual pronunciation led later to the absorption of the article by the preceding at.

Wiv., IV, vi, 7 (F): "I will heare you (Master Fenton) and
I will (at the least) keepe your
counsell"

Shr., V, i, 130 (F): "And happilier I have arrived at the
last/ Unto the wished haven of my
blisse"

Cor., V, vi, 42 (F): "and in the last,/ When he had carried
Rome"

Ham., I, v, 27 (F and Q₂): "Murther most foule, as in the
best it is"

Lr., II⁹, i, 26 (F): "Hee's comming hither, now i'th'night,
i'th'haste,/ And Regan with him"

Shr., III, ii, 216 (F): "'Tis like you'll prove a iolly
surly groome,/ That take it on
you at the first so roundly"

Cym., I, iv, 112 (F): "we are familiar at first"

Lr., III, vii, 17 (F): "Hot Questrists after him, met him
at gate"

Lr., III, vii, 93 (F): "Go thrust him out at gates, and
let him smell/ His way to Dover"

Ham., I, iv, 21 (Q₂): "and indeede it takes/ From our
atchievements, though perform'd at
height"

Tro., V, v, 36 (F and Q₁): "Ajax hath lost a friend,/ And
foames at mouth"

AYL, I, ii, 254 (F): "My Fathers rough and envious
disposition/ Sticks me at heart"

Cor., IV, vii, 4 (F): "Your Soldiers use him as the Grace
'fore meate,/ Their talke at Table,
and their Thankes at end"

Tmp., I, ii, 194 (F): "Hast thou, Spirit,/ Performd to
point, the Tempest that I bad thee"

Cor., III, i, 149 (F): "Nothing is done to purpose"

2H4, II, iv, 381 (F and Q₁): "Who knock(e)s so lowd at doore?"

H8, V, iii, 140 (F): "wait like a lowsie Foot-boy/ At
Chamber dore?"

WT, IV, iv, ~~370~~ 730 (F): "Pray heartily he be at Pallace"

TH4, IV, ii, 9-10 (F): "Bid my Lieutenant Peto meete me at
the Townes end"

(Q₁): "bid my Liuetenant Peto meet me at
townes end"

Tmp., II, ii, 65 (F): "while Stephano breathes at 'nostrils"

Lr., II, iv, 10 (F): "when a man overlustie at legs, then
he weares wodden nether-stocks"

Tmp., I, i, 19-20 (F): "to Cabine; silence: trouble us not"

76 The form t'other (tother, 'tother), which is found alongside th'other for (the) other and still survives in popular speech, requires some explanation. In M.E. that, now used exclusively as a demonstrative or relative, was also a neutral article. That and other were closely connected, especially when contrasted with that one. (whence is derived the dialect form the tone), and when that became obsolete as an article a division took place, in which the first part was construed as an article and the final "t" sound was attracted to "øther"; in this way the tother (the t'other) was derived from the original that other.

Ham., II, i, 56 (F and Q₁): "I saw him yesterday, or tother day"

(Q₂): "I saw him yesterday, or th'other day"

2H4, II, iv, 92 (F): "the other day" (Q₁): "tother day"

Cor., I, i, 246 (F): "Ile leane upon one Crutch, and fight with tother"

Tro., V, iv, 10 (F): ~~"ø"~~ "O'th'tother side"

(Q₁): "Ath'tother side"

The Indefinite Article.

77 The indefinite article an, a is derived from the unstressed numeral O.E. án. The shortened form a appears before consonants as early as 1150 and after much fluctuation became the only accepted form before initial consonant sounds. On the other hand an, found before aspirated "h" as late as the 18th century and found in Shakespeare before aspirated "h" and [ju:], became the generally accepted form before vowels and is now recognized as correct before an aspirated "h" only when the accent does not fall on the first syllable (an historian). The differentiation in the use of the two forms that is found today first developed in the 16th and 17th centuries (see Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 84). The phrase such an one, still found occasionally, occurs twice in Shakespeare; the "e" of the definite article is sometimes elided before one: th'one; and there is a play on the words one and on. All these suggest that Shakespeare pronounced one without the initial "w" sound (as found today in alone and only). There is no evidence for the "w" sound in educated speech before about 1700. See OED under a and ane; H. Sweet, NEGr., § 1135; H. Kökeritz, Shakespeare's Pronunciation, pp. 232, 329; E.J. Dobson, English Pronunciation 1500-1700, § 429.

The close connection which formerly existed between the numeral and the indefinite article is proved by a number of expressions in which the article conceals the old numeral: in (at) a word, at a blow, at a clap, at a time, at a sitting, birds of a feather. Cf. Abbott, §§ 80, 81.

H8, V, i, 171 (F): "An hundred Markes?"

LLL, V, ii, 881 (F and Q₁): "an Hospitall"

TGV, II, v, 57 (F): "an Hebrew"

Tmp., I, ii, 30 (F): "an hayre"

2H6, III, i, 342 (F): "an Hoast of men"

Jn., III, ii, 10 (F): "an happy end"

TN, I, ii, 56 (F): "an Eunuch"

MND, III, ii, 210 (F): "a union" (Q₁): "an union"

2H6, I, iii, 188 (F): "an Usurper"

Ant., I, ii, 118 (F): "such an one"

Mac., IV, iii, 66 (F): "such an one"

But Shakespeare usually has such a one.

Luc., 172 (1594): "Th'one sweetely flatters, Th'other
feareth harme"

MM, IV, ii, 64 (F): "Th'one has my pitie"

TGV, II, i, 1-2 (F): Speed: "Sir, your Glove."

Valentine: "Not mine: my Gloves are on."

Speed: "Why then this may be yours:
for this is but one."

MV, I, i, 35 (F and Q₁): "in a word"

Cor., I, iii, 122 (F): "No At a word Madam"

3H6, V, i, 50 (F): "I had rather chop this Hand off at a
blow"

Lr., I, iv, 316 (F): "What fiftie of my Followers at a clap?"

Tmp., III, iii, 102 (F): "But one feend at a time,/ Ile
fight their Legions ore"

MV, III, i, 116-7 (F and Q₁): "fourescore ducats at a
sitting"

Rom., II, iv, 220 (F): "Doth not Rosemarie and Romeo begin
both with a letter?"

Ado, III, v, 40 (F and Q₁): "and two men ride of a horse,
one must ride behind(e)"

Rom., I, iii, 19 (F): "Susan & she...were of an age"

R3, IV, iii, 12 (F and Q₁): "Their lips were foure red
Roses on a stalke"

Ham., V, ii, 276 (F): "These Foyles have all a length"

Wiv., IV, iv, 4 (F): "And did he send you both these
Letters at an instant?"

Cor., III, ~~ii~~ i, 215-6 (F): "Heare me one word, beseech you
Tribunes, heare me but a word"

TN, II, i, 21 (F): "He left behinde him, my selfe, and a
sister, both borne in an houre"

78 The tendency of modern colloquial English to regard pluralia tantum as singulars and to use the indefinite article (an assizes, a gallows, etc., see E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 195f.; cf. also a printing works), is also found in early N.E. A galhouse 'a gallows' is found in Caxton (Blanchardyn and Eglantine, xlvi, 187). Shakespeare uses a gallows, a shambles. A plural expressed by means of a numeral can also be treated as a single idea by the use of the indefinite article or of one: an eleven children, one seven years. Apart from instances like a twelvemonth, a fortnight, a sevensnight, this usage was very rare in Shakespeare's time, but it is found in O.E. and M.E. The use of the indefinite article before many, still found in Shakespeare, indicates the source of this word, the O.E. noun menigo, which was followed by the genitive. Shakespeare's constructions with many suggest a possible connection with O.E., since he still uses it substantivally: a many of your horsemen; of is here an analytical substitute for the old genitive. From the partitive relationship there was a transference, as in other similar cases (see the Numeral), to the appositive (cf. a dozen soldiers), and, because of its connection with the adjective many, the noun lost its original character completely so that the form a many (of) men developed into many men. Cf. Abbott, § 87.

Tmp., V, i, 217 (F): "I prophesi'd, if a Gallowes were on
Land/ This fellow could not drowne"

3H6, I, i, 71 (F): "Farre be the thought of this from
Henries heart,/ To make a Shambles of
the Parliament House"

cf. Per., I, ii, 39 (Q₁): "flatterie is the bellowes blowes up
sinne"

MV, II, ii, 171 (F): "a leuen widdowes and nine maides is
a simple comming in for one man"

Cor., IV, i, 55 (F): "If I could shake off but one seven
yeares/ From these old armes and
legges"

Wiv., III, iii, 77 (F): "like a-manie of these lisping-
hauthorne buds"

H5, IV, vii, 88 (F): "a many of your horsemen peere,/ And
gallop ore the field"

MV, III, v, 73 (F): "I doe know/ A many fooles"

Jn., IV, ii, 199 (F): "Told of a many thousand warlike
French"

Cf.

AWW, IV, v, 55-56 (F): "the manie will be too chill and
tender"

Cor., III, i, 66 (F): "the mutable ranke-sented Meynie"

79 The modern rule which precludes the use of the indefinite article in connection with never and ever if the noun in question is used generically was also valid in Shakespeare, but there are exceptions (see examples). On the other hand if never (ne'er) is used in the sense of not, as was formerly very often the case, or if ever is used generally rather than temporally, then these adverbs can naturally be followed by the indefinite article. The expression not a one is also found; this is easily explained once it is understood that one formerly often meant person, man. Cf. Abbott, § 84; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 86.

H5, I, ii, 126 (F): "never King of England/ Had Nobles
richer, and more loyall Subiects"

TN, IV, ii, 32 (F): "never was man thus wronged"

Tmp., III, ii, 29 (F): "was there ever man a Coward, that
hath drunk so much Sacke as I to day"

Wiv., I, iv, 136 (F): "never a woman in Windsor knowes
more of Ans minde then I doe"

Ado, II, i, 336 (F): "hath your Grace ne're a brother like
you?"

Shr., I, ii, 80 (F): "an old trot with ne're a tooth in
her head"

2H4, II, iv, 295 (F): "I love thee better, then I love ere
a scurvie young Boy of them all"

Mac., III, iv, 131 (F): "There's not a one of them but in
his house/ I keepe a Servant Feed"

80 What is now followed by the indefinite article if it is desired to stress the following noun either in degree or quality, so that it is quite different from the interrogative what (what a noise! what a child! what child?). This seems to be determined by rhythmical considerations, but it is a differentiation that is not found in Shakespeare, where what occurs without the article in exclamations, even in front of a concrete idea. Cf. Abbott, § 86.

TGV, I, ii, 53 (F): "What 'foole is she"

TN, II, v, 123 (F): "What dish a poyson has she drest him?"

Tmp., I, ii, 151 (F): "Alack, what trouble/ Was I then to
you?"

R3, I, iv, 22 (F): "What dreadfull noise of water in mine
eares"

With the article:

Ven., 343 (1593): "O what a sight it was"

21 The omission of the indefinite article after as, so in combination with an adjective (as good deed, so profound abysm) and after many (many time) is very rare in Shakespeare.

1H4, II, i, 32-33 (Q₁): "and twere not as good deede as
drinke to break the pate on thee,
I am a very villaine"

(F): "And t'were not as good a deed as
drinke to break the pate of thee,
I am a very Villaine"

Cor., III, ii, 128 (F): "I mocke at death/ With as bigge
heart as thou"

Son. CXII, 9 (1609): "In so profound Abisme I throw all
care/ Of others voyces"

Tmp., III, i, 44 (F): "With so full soule"

2H6, II, i, 93 (F): "many time and oft my selfe have heard
a Voyce,/ To call him so"

In Shakespeare the indefinite article follows an attributive adjective on only two occasions.

AYL, I, i, 2⁵ (F): "As I remember Adam, it was upon this fashion bequeathed me by will, but poore a thousand Crownes"

Ant., V, ii, 235 (F): "What poore an Instrument/ May do a Noble deede"

73 In English the indefinite article can be used to describe an emotional condition in concrete terms; thus a purely generic idea is expressed in terms of a specific reality (to get into a rage, to have an appetite). This provides a more vivid description of the emotion in its individual manifestation. This idiom was not yet fully developed in Shakespeare, so that he was able to say: if he fall in rage.

Cor., II, iii, 266 (F): "If, as his nature is, he fall in
rage/ With their refusall"

Cor., III, iii, 25 (F): "Go about it,/ Put him to Choller
straite"

Note. In the expression it is a pity the indefinite article seems to be the result of the influence of it is a shame; in Shakespeare the common form is 'tis pity (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 865).

TGV, IV, iv, 88 (F): "'Tis pittty Love, should be so
contrary" (further examples in A.
Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 865)

TGV, I, ii, 51 (F): "It were a shame to call her backe
again"

§ 84 The indefinite article is occasionally omitted before predicative nouns which are used generically and are therefore equivalent to an adjectival predicate. It is also occasionally omitted before a noun followed by a determinative object, but this is rare in Shakespeare and may be partly due to metrical requirements. Notions of quantity (great number, great store, store) followed by a partitive genitive formerly dispensed with the indefinite article quite often (as plenty, abundance still do) evidently because they were equivalent to quantitative adjectives. Cf. Abbott, § 84.

R2, I, iii, 201 (F): "If ever I were Traitor,/ My name be
blotted from the booke of Life"

Tmp., I, ii, 427 (F): "If you be Mayd, or no?"

1H4, II, ii, 25 (F): "to turne True-man, and to leave
these Rogues"

1H4, III, iii, 200 (F): "I must still be good Angell to
thee"

TN, II, iii, 54 (F): "A mellifluous voyce, as I am true
knight"

Cym., III, iii, 94 (F): "and puts himselfe in posture/
That acts my words"

MND, IV, i, 55 (F and Q₁): "With coronet of fresh and
fragrant flowers"

TN, III, iii, 29 (F): "Belike you slew great number of his
people"

Shr., III, ii, 188 (F): "And have prepar'd great store of
wedding cheere"

JC, IV, i, 30 (F): "for that/ I do appoint him store of
Provender"

§ 85 In former times the indefinite article was frequently used in connection with the names of generals of famous lineage (a Clifford!) so as to form a war-cry expressing the excitement and lust of battle (cf. the Douglas, the Talbot).

2H6, IV, viii, 55 (F): "A Clifford, a Clifford,/ Wee'l
follow the King, and Clifford"

1H6, I, i, 128 (F): "His Souldiers spying his undaunted
Spirit,/ A Talbot, a Talbot, cry'd
out amaine"

The Verb

Inflections

86 In the 2nd P. Sing. Pres. the "t" is sometimes omitted from the syncopated form when the verb has the terminal sound "t" or when the following word has the initial sound "th" (thou affects = thou affect'st; mean(e)s thou? = mean'st thou?), or when the combination of words in a sentence produces groups of consonants that would be inadmissible in a single word: thou mistakes me, thou makes me call ("t" is suppressed as in modern Christmas, chestnut); it is rarely omitted apart from this. Sometimes questions of syntax are involved (see the section on Congruence), but usually the reason for the omission is simply the need to facilitate pronunciation. The same is true of the syncopated form of the 2nd P. Sing. Pret. (lik'st = lik'dst; look'st = look'dst; unrip'st = unrip'dst). The forms with "d" are difficult to pronounce and cannot have been common in normal speech.

The use of forms like are, will, shall, should, made with the 2nd P. Sing. usually has a different explanation. The singular and plural forms are connected here. In some cases phonetic considerations may also be involved (would thou? for wouldst thou?; shall thou? for shalt thou?).

- Son. XIX, 5 (1609): "thou fleet'st" (rhyme: sweets)
- MM, II, ii, 116 (F): "Thou...Splits"
- Ant., I, iii, 71 (F): "thou affects"
- R2, IV, i, 270 (F): "thou torments"
- Ham., I, iv, 53 (F): "thou...Revisits thus the glimoses of
the Moone"
- Ham., I, v, 84 (F): "howsoever thou pursuest this act"
(Q₂): "howsoever thou pursues this act"
- Tro., V, i, 30 (F): "what mean'st thou to curse thus?"
(Q₁): "what meanes thou to curse thus?"
- 2H6, V, i, 130 (F): "thou mistakes me much"
- Oth., V, ii, 64 (F): "makes me call" (Q₁): "makest me call"
- Ant., I, iii, 103 (F): "thou reciding heere, goes yet with mee"
- Oth., III, iii, 109 (F): "thou lik'st not that"
- Ant., III, iii, 21 (F): "thou look'st of Maiestie"
- R3, I, iv, 212 (F): "Unrip'st" (Q₁): "Unripst"
- Tit., II, iii, 144 (F): "thou suck'st" (Q₁): "thou suck'st"
- Wiv., IV, v, 58 (F): "Thou are clearkly"
(Q₁): "Thou art clarkly"
- LLL, IV, iii, 38 (F): "thou wilt keepe"
- Ant., V, ii, 208 (F): "Thou, an Egyptian Puppet shall be
shewne/ In Rome"
- Jn., IV, ii, 229 (F): "thou, to be endeared to a King,/
Made it no conscience to destroy a
Prince"
- Wiv., II, ii, 31 (F): "what would thou more of man?"
(Q₁): "what woulst thou more of man?"

§ 27

In Shakespeare the "th" form of the 3rd P. Sing. Pres. of principal verbs occurs only very rarely in prose, but it is more common in verse. There are no instances in the prose sections of Ado (Q₁), but it occurs twice in the verse (melteth: II, i, 187; purchaseth: III, i, 70). On the other hand Wiv. has two examples in the prose part (enlargeth: II, ii, 231; saith: I, i, 109). In the first act of Ham. there are two examples in the verse (singeth: I, i, 160; passeth: I, ii, 85). The use of this form is often required by the metre. The "s" forms are syncopated (even when written "es") unless the verb stem ends in "s", "sh", "x", "z", "ch" or [dʒ] (cf. E. J. Dobson, English Pronunciation 1500-1700 (Oxford, 1957), § 313). On the other hand the "e" is sounded in the ending "eth" (cf. ^{E.J.} Dobson, § 314) and it is always fully stressed in verse (G. König, Der Vers in Shakespeares Dramen, p. 5). In verse, therefore, it is preferred to the "s" form in cases where, if the latter were used, the line would be a syllable short. The use of the "th" form is only occasionally a matter of style, therefore, and it seems reasonable to assume that, apart from hath and doth, this form was no longer current in normal speech in Shakespeare's time. It is not unusual to find the "th" form in the First Folio, where the older Quartos have the "s" form; the reverse phenomenon is also found.

Ado, I, iii, 8: brings (Q₁), bringeth (F₁)

Ado, II, i, 146: pleases (Q₁), pleaseth (F₁)

Ham., I, ii, 85: passes (Q₂), passeth (F₁)

LLL, I, ii, 43: fitteth (Q₁), fits (F₁)

Tro., II, ii, 9: toucheth (Q₁), touches (F₁)

- 88 Both forms of the 3rd P. Sing. Pres. ("-s" and "-th") are found in the writers of Shakespeare's time. The "-s" form seems to have become generally accepted in prose in the last decade of the 16th century. It is often used in verse much earlier, since the use of the two forms was convenient for reasons of rhyme and metre. However, the rise in popularity of the "-s" forms did not lead immediately to the extinction of the older "-th" forms. Both are found side by side in prose until about 1640, after which the forms in "-th" show a marked decline. Cf. R. C. Bambas, "Verb Forms in -s and -th in Early Modern English Prose," Journal of English and Germanic Philology, XLVI (1947), 183-187.

§ 89 The form of the Pres. Plur. Ind. in "-(e)n", which was current in M.E., chiefly in the Midland dialects, occurs only rarely in Shakespeare.

Per., II, Ch., 35 (Q₁): "All perishen of men of pelfe"

Per., II, Ch., 28 (Q₁): "Where when men been there's seldom
ease"

MND, II, i, 56 (F): "And then the whole Quire hold their hips,
and loffe,/ And waxen in their mirth"

In each case it may be argued that the form is a conscious archaism.

In Per., II, Ch., 20 (Q₁) there is also an archaic Infinitive in "-en": "To killen bad".

§ 90 Apart from verbs with terminal "t" and "d" sounds, the "e" of the Preterite ending "-ed" is not usually sounded. In Shakespeare's verse plays the "-ed" receives its full value in only 59 cases (4%). The syncopated form also predominates in the case of the Past Participle, though here it cannot be regarded as a general rule (in quite the same way, cf. G. König, p. 7f. When, however, the Past Participle is used purely adjectivally, as in: a learned professor, his beloved wife, blessed innocence, an aged man, syncopation does not take place (Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 255). Cf. H. Kökeritz, p. 262; E. J. Dobson, §§ 311, 315.

In the Quartos and First Folio Participle and Preterite forms are often spelt in accordance with their pronunciation. The spelling "-ed" first became generally accepted in the 18th century, cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 256.

Ham., II, ii, 493 (Q₂): "unequal matcht"

Oth., II, i, 177 (F): "well kiss'd"

(Q₁): "well kist"

Oth., I, iii, 51 (F): "We lack't your Counsaile"

(Q₁): "We lacke your counsell"

Ham., IV, vii, 89 (Q₂): "he topt"

Weak Forms

§ 91 In New English there are many weak verbs with terminal "t" or "d" sounds which have no inflexion in the Preterite or Participle (cast, let, shed, spread). Other weak verbs with similar terminal sounds tended to imitate them and to dispense with the normal Preterite and Participle endings. Hence there arose an uncertainty about the form which is characteristic of Early New English. So it is that Participles such as disjoint and taint occur in Shakespeare. Similarly Participles taken over from Latin, like contract, infect, and especially the Participle forms in "-ate" (sometimes used in a purely adjectival sense): confiscate, create, fatigate, felicitate, incorporate, tended to follow the pattern of the older group and so survived for some time in this alien form. Sometimes weak forms in "-ed" occur alongside the older forms without endings, so that in some cases double forms are found: quit, quitted; cast, casted; sped, speeded.

The Preterite spet: "you spit on me" MV, I, iii, 127 (spet: F and Q₁) results from the shortening of the stem-vowel in the original O.E. spāette. The parallel form spat arose through the disappearance of the "e" and, because of its similarity to sat (from sit), it was regarded as a strong Pret. form from spit.

Wiv., I, iii, 27 (F): "I am glad I am so acquit of this
Tinderbox"

R3, V, v, 3 (F): "Couragious Richmond, Well hast thou
acquit thee"

Otherwise acquitted:

MV, V, i, 138 (F): "No more then I am wel acquitted of"

Tmp., III, iii, 71 (F): "the Sea (which hath requit it)"

Tmp., I, ii, 148 (F): "the very rats/ Instinctively have
quit it"

Quitted occurs only once:

WT, V, i, 192 (F): "having both their Countrey quitted"

The Preterite quit also occurs (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon).

Rom., IV, ii, 24 (F and Q₂): "Ile have this knot knit up"

The Preterite knit also occurs (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon).

MM, II, i, 86 (F): "she spit in his face"

WT, IV, iii, 113 (F): "If you had but look'd bigge, and
spit at him"

Ant., V, i, 24 (F): "that selfe-hand...Hath...Splitted the
heart"

Err., I, i, 104 (F): "Our helpefull ship was splitted in
the midst"

Err., V, i, 308 (F): "Hast thou so crack'd and splitted my
poore tongue"

2H6, III, ii, 411 (F): "a splitted Barke" (the only examples)

Tmp., V, i, 223 (F): "our Ship, Which...we gave out split"

Per., II, Ch., 32 (Q₁): "the Shippe...is wrackt and split"
(the only examples)

Mac., II, iii, 147 (F): "This murtherous Shaft that's
shot,/ Hath not yet lighted"

This is the normal form of the Participle; light occurs
only once:

Per., IV, ii, 77 (Q₁): "You are light into my hands"

H5, IV, i, 23 (F): "With casted slough, and fresh legeritie"

This is the only example of casted in Shakespeare, though

it occurs elsewhere in Early New English (see OED under cast). In the case cited the metre requires a two-syllable form.

PP, 270 (1612): "O cruell speeding, fraughted with gall"
This is the only example; elsewhere fraught is used as a Participle on account of its phonetic similarity to caught, raught.

Ham., I, ii, 20 (F and Q₂): "to be disioynt"

Jn., IV, i, 61 (F): "The Iron of it selfe, though heate
red hot"

MV, III, ii, 205 (F and Q₁): "untill I swet againe"

AYL, II, iii, 58 (F): "When service sweate for dutie"

H8, II, i, 33 (F): "he sweat extreemly"

Tim., III, ii, 28 (F): "I have swet to see his Honor"

1H6, V, iii, 183 (F): "a pure unspotted heart,/ Never yet
taint with love"

Jn., II, i, 73 (F): "the English bottomes have waft o're"

MM, IV, v, 10 (F): "It shall be speeded well"

2H4, IV, iii, 38 (F and Q₁): "I have speeded hither"

These are the only examples; elsewhere sped is the Participle and Preterite.

Err., I, i, 37 (F): "In Syracuse was I borne, and wedde/
Unto a woman"

Shr., I, ii, 263 (F): "Untill the elder sister first be
wed"

Shr., II, i, 289 (F): "To wish me wed"

Per., II, v, 92 (Q₁): "I will see you wed"

In all other cases the Participle is wedded.

Ham., III, ii, 190 (F): "None wed the second, but who
kill'd the first"

H8, III, i, 141 (F): "To give up willingly that Noble
Title/ Your Master wed me to"

In all other cases the Preterite is wedded.

R3, I, ii, 216 (F): "after I have solemnly interr'd/...
this Noble King,/ And wet his Grave
with my Repentant Teares"

Err., I, ii, 2 (F): "Lest that your goods too soone be
confiscate"

Err., II, i, 134 (F): "this body consecrate to thee"

Jn., IV, i, 107 (F): "Being create for comfort"

MM, II, ii, 154 (F): "whose mindes are dedicate/ To nothing
temporall"

Jn., III, i, 173 (F): "Thou shalt stand curst, and
excommunicate"

Cor., II, ii, 121 (F): "what in flesh was fatigate"

Lr., I, i, 77 (F and Q₁): "I am alone felicitate"

Tmp., III, iii, 10 (F): "the Sea mocks/ Our frustrate
search on land"

MND, III, ii, 208 (F): "As if our hands, our sides, voices,
and mindes/ Had beene incorporate"

Tro., I, iii, 125 (F): "when Degree is suffocate"

R3, III, vii, 179 (F): "first was he contract to Lady Lucⁱ"
(Q₁): "first he was contract to Lady Lucy"

Tro., I, iii, 187 (F and Q₁): "many are infect"

§ 92 In the case of a number of weak verbs with terminal sounds "n", "l", "rd" a spelling in "-t" exists alongside that in "-ed". The former is found as early as M.E. Examples in Shakespeare include: Pret. and Part. bended, bent; Part. blended, blent; Pret. and Part. builded, built; Part. gelded, gelt; Pret. gilded, Part. gilded, gilt; Part. girded, girt. Associated with these is burn, which has both burned and burnt in Pret. and Part.

The following are found only with the ending "-ed": dream, kneel, lean, learn. The spelling leapt occurs only once (AWW, II, v, 40 (F)). On the other hand deal is found only with the ending "-t".

Ham., II, i, 100 (F~~xxx~~ and Q₂): "(he) bended their light on
~~xxx~~ Cor., II, i, 281 (F): "the Nobles bended"

3H6, V, ii, 22 (F): "when Warwicke bent his Brow?"

Per., II, v, 48 (Q₁): "But bent all offices to honour her"

R2, V, iii, 98 (F): "Against them both, my true ioynts
bended be"

TGV, III, i, 229 (F): "But neither bended knees"

H5, V, 6hor., 18 (F): "his bended Sword"

2H6, I, i, 10 (F): "my bended knee"

Ant., II, iv, 12 (F): "my bended hooke"

Jn., II, i, 37 (F): "our Cannon shall be bent/ Against the
browes of this resisting towne"

This is the more common form.

Tro., IV, v, 86 (F): "This blended Knight, halfe Troian
and halfe Greeke"

Cor., III, i, 103 (F): "both your voices blended"

MV, III, ii, 183 (F and Q₁): "be(e)ing blent together"

TN, I, v, 257 (F): "Tis beauty truly blent"

LC, 152 (1609): "Experience for me many bulwarkes builded/
Of proofs new bleeding" (rhyme: yeelded,
sheelded - this is the only example)

R3, III, i, 73 (F and Q₁): "he built it?"

Mac., I, iv, 13 (F): "He was a Gentleman, on whom I built"

Per., I, Prol., 18 (Q₁): "Antiochus the great,/ Buylt up
this Citie"

Ant., III, ii, 30 (F): "To keepe it builded"

Son. ~~CXXIV~~ CXXIV, 5 (1609): "it was buylded far from accide~~nt~~"

R2, II, i, 43 (F): "This Fortresse built by Nature"

This is the more common form.

R2, II, i, 237 (F): "gelded of his patrimonie"

MV, V, i, 144 (F and Q₁): "Would her were gelt" (the only
example)

Wiv., I, iii, 69 (F): "the beame of her view, guilded my
foote" (the only example)

Lr., V, iii, 84 (F): "This ³uilded Serpent"

(Q₁): "This gilded Serpent" (20 examples)

Tro., II, iii, 27 (F and Q₁): "a guilt counterfeit"

LLL, V, ii, 652 (F): "A gilt Nutmegge"

(Q₁): "A gift Nutmegg"

Jn., II, i, 316 (F): "Hither returne all gilt with
Frenchmens blood"

2H4, IV, iii, 56 (F): "gilt two-pences"

Tro., III, iii, 178 (F and Q₁): "And goe to dust, that is
a little guilt"

Tit., II, i, 6 (F and Q₁): "having gilt the Ocean with his
beames"

Son. XII, 7 (1609): "Sommers greene all girded up in sheaves"

H5, III, Chor., 27 (F): "girded Harflew"

3H6, IV, viii, 20 (F): "his Iland, gyrt in with the Ocean"
(the only example)

TN, IV, ii, 112 (F): "I am shent for speaking to you"

Shent is the Participle of shend, itself not found in
Shakespeare.

Note. The form rent (now archaic) for rend is derived from
the noun rent, which was originally a Participle; it occurs
six times in Shakespeare, whereas rend is much more common.

EC, 55 (1609): "the lines she rents" (rhyme: contents)

MND, III, ii, 215 (F) and Q₁): "will you rent our
a(u)ncient love asunder"

3H6, III, ii, 175 (F): "That rents the Thornes, and is
rent with the Thornes"

R3, I, ii, 126 (F): "These Naailes should rent that beauty"

(Q₁): "These naailes should rend that beauty"

Tit., III, i, 261 (F and Q₁): "Rent off thy silver haire"

Mac., IV, iii, 168 (F): "shrieks that rent the ayre"

93 The weak forms of a number of verbs that were originally strong are of special interest. These include: beated Part., (mis)becomed Part., blowed Part., fretted Part., helped (help'd) Part. and Pret., hew'd Part., shaked Part. and Pret., weaved Part. and Pret., waxed Part. and Pret. The weak forms catched (catch'd) Part. and Pret., and reach'd Part. also occur. The old strong Part. and Pret. holp is more common than helped, and similarly raught (Part. and Pret.) occurs more often than the more recent reach'd. On the other hand catched is found more often than caught. Although it has now been displaced by the latter in the literary language, it is still common in dialect and vulgar speech (see OED under catch). Whereas the verbs mentioned in the first list above have strong forms alongside the weak ones (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon), the following occur only in weak formations: awake, wake, beseech, bestrew (only the Participle occurs), heave, light, rive, sow, shape, thrive (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon). Strive has Pret. strived, strove, Part. striven.

- Son. LXII, 10 (1609): "Beated and chopt with tand
antiquitie" (the only example)
- Ant., III, vii, 27 (F): "Which might have well becom'd
the best of men"
- Rom., IV, ii, 26 (F): "And gave him what becomed ~~life~~
Love I might"
- Cym., V, v, 406 (F): "He would have well becom'd this
place"
- LLL, V, ii, 778 (F): "Have misbecom'd"
- H5, III, ii, 97 (F): "I would have blowed up the Towne,
so Chrish save me" (Macmorris is speaking)
- Oth., III, iii, 182 (F): "blow'd Surmises"
(Q₁): "blowne surmises"
(elsewhere the Part. is blown)
- R2, III, iii, 167 (F): "Till they have fretted us a
payre of Graves,/ Within the Earth"
- MV, IV, i, 77 (F): "When they are fretted with the
gusts of heaven"
(Q₁): "when they are fretten with the
gusts of heaven"
- AWW, II, iii, 18 (F): "Not to be help'd"
- TGV, IV, ii, 48 (F): "being help'd" (in a song)
- WT, III, iii, 110 (F): "to have help'd the olde man"
- WT, III, iii, 113 (F): "to have help'd her"
- Oth., II, i, 138 (F): "her folly helpt her to an heire"
- R3, V, iii, 167 (F): "The first was I/ That help'd thee
to the Crowne"
(elsewhere holp is Part. and Pret.)
- Tit., II, iv, 17 (F): "hew'd" (the only case: elsewhere
hewn)
- Tro., I, iii, 101 (F): "when Degree is shak'd"
- 1H4, III, i, 16 (F): "The frame and foundation of the
Earth/ Shak'd like a Coward"
- The usual form for both Pret. and Part. is shock.
- Luc., 52 (1594): "Within whose face Beautie and Vertue
strived" (rhyme: arived)

Per., V, Prol., 16 (Q₁) : "the Citie striv'de"

(rhyme:

AWW, I, i, 241 (F): "Who ever strove/ To shew her merit"

(rhyme:

H8, II, iv, 30 (F): "Have I not strove to love"

Per., IV, Prol., 21 (Q₁): "when they weavde the sleded silke"

1H4, V, iv, 88 (F): "Ill-weav'd Ambition"

The Participle woven is also found.

Err., I, i, 92 (F): "The seas waxt calme"

Tim., III, iv, 11 (F): "the dayes are waxt shorter"

Luc., 1663 (1594): "From lips new waxen pale, begins to blow"

2H6, III, ii, 76 (F): "Art thou like the Adder waxen deafe?"

Rom., IV, v, 48 (F): "cruell death hath catcht it"

LLL, V, ii, 69 (F). "None are so surely caught, when
they are catcht" (rhyme: hatch'd)

(Q₁): "None are so surely caught, when
they are catch" (rhyme: hatcht)

AWW, I, iii, 176 (F): "My feare hath catcht your fondnesse"

Cor., I, iii, 68 (F): "catcht it again"

(elsewhere caught is used)

Oth., I, ii, 24 (F₁): "I have reach'd"

(elsewhere raucht is used for both
Pret. and Part.)

94 The forms raught (Pret. and Part.) and wrought (Pret. and Part.) are especially interesting. They belong to the class of weak verbs which in O.E. formed their Pret. and Part. without a central vowel. Raught is still fully current in Shakespeare (see § 93), whereas in the case of stretch only the form stretched is found. The form worked is not found, wrought being the only form that occurs. The form pight 'pitched' also comes under this heading. Because of its similarity to Part. raught, taught it was also possible to use the Infinitive fraught 'to load' as a Participle. Distraught appears twice as Part., alongside distract, and arose through the fusion of distract(ed) and straught, the Part. of stretch. (Cf. Oxford Dictionary of Etymology (1966) under distraught. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 259 considers distraught was formed from distract in imitation of caught from catch, but the dissimilarity between the two suggests that this is a less likely explanation.) In the same way bestraught (in use since the 16th century) may be the result of a mixture of [di]straught and be[set], which is which is related in meaning (H. Sweet, p. 401); but see OED (under bestraught), which has another explanation. Pick in Cor., I, i, 204 (F): "as high/ As I could picke my Lance" is evidently the Northern form of pitch. It is still found in dialect.

H5, IV, vi, 21 (F): "He smil'd me in the face, raught me
his hand"

LLL, IV, ii, 41 (F): "And wrought not to five-weekes when
he came to five-score"

(Q₁): "And rought not to five-weeks when
he came to fivescore"

3H6, I, iv, 68 (F): "That raught at Mountaines with
out-stretched Armes"

Ant., IV, ix, 30 (F): "The hand of death hath raught him"

2H6, II, iii, 43 (F): "This Staffe of Honor raught"

MM, IV, ii, 140 (F): "His friends still wrought Repreeves
for him"

Mac., I, iii, 149 (F): "My dull Braine was wrought with
things forgotten"

Tro., V, x, 24 (F): "Thus proudly pight upon our Phrygian
plaines"

(Q₁): "Thus proudly pitch upon our Phrigian
plaines"

Lr., II, i, 67 (F and Q₁): "And found him pight to doe it"

MV, II, viii, 30 (F): "A vessell of our countrey richly
fraught" (occurs frequently)

Rom., IV, iii, 49 (F and Q₂): "shall I not be distraught"

R3, III, v, 4 (F): "As if thou were distraught"

Shr., Ind., ii, 27 (F): "I am not bestraught" (the only
example)

Strong Forms

- 95 Weak formations from verbs that were originally strong are found fairly often, but the reverse phenomenon is less common. Strew has a strong Part. strewn (once), which is an imitation of hewn (H. Sweet, p. 419). Show has a strong Part. shown as well as the weak form showed, the former being an imitation of known (H. Sweet, p. 419); both forms are favoured by Shakespeare. Sweat has Part. sweaten (once). The form sain occurs once in rhyme instead of the usual Part. said. It should be noted that in Shakespeare dig has only digged as Part. and Pret., although dug has existed as a Part. since the 16th century and as a Pret. since the 18th (OED under dig).

TN, II, iv, 61 (F): "Not a flower.../ On my blacke coffin,
let there be strewne"

(rhyme: throwne; elsewhere strew(e)d)

Jn., IV, i, 111 (F): "The breath of heaven, hath.../...
strew'd repentant ashes on his head"

WT, III, ii, 221 (F): "I have shew'd too much/ The
rashnesse of a woman"

AWW, I, iii, 184 (F): "thine eies/ See it so grosely
showne in thy behaviours"

Mac., IV, i, 65 (F): "Greaze that's sweaten/ From the
Murderers Gibbet" (elsewhere: sweat)

LLL, III, i, 83 (F and Q₁): "that hath tofore bin saine"
(rhyme: plaine; Armado is speaking)

Note. LC, 91 (1609): "What largenesse thinkes in parradise was sawne" is a highly problematical passage. Sawne (rhyme: drawne) may be the Participle of either sow or see. Cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under sow.

- 96 Parallel "a" and "u(o)" forms are found in a group which has for the most part retained the double Pret. form in the literary language until modern times as a result of analogy (see A. E. H. Swaen, "To shrink, to sing, to drink etc.," Anglia, XVII (1895), 486-514), though the different forms are not found with equal frequency: began, begun; drank, drunk; sung, sang; sprang, sprung; swam, swom (= swum); wam, won; ran, run. The verbs ring, shrink, spin, sting, wring have only the "u" form in Pret. and Part. (see the individual verbs in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon).

Luc., 1439 (1594): "their rankes began" (rhyme: ran, thar;
this is the usual form)

Rom., I, ii, 98 (F and Q₂): "since first the world begun"
(rhyme: Sun)

Ven., 462 (1593): "ere his words begun" (rhyme: gun)

Luc., ~~554~~ 374 (1594): "his eyes begun/ To winke" (rhyme: Sunne)

LC, 12 (1609): "all that youth begun" (rhyme: Sunne, donne)

LC, 262 (1609): "they t'assaile begun" (rhyme: Sunne)

TN, V, i, 414 (F): "A great while ago the world begon"
(rhyme: done)

R2, I, i, 158 (F): "let this end where it begun" (rhyme: son)
(Q₁): "let this ende where it begonne"
(rhyme: sonne)

Ham., III, ii, 220 (F): "where I begun" (rhyme: run)

JC, V, i, 114 (F): "But this same day/ Must end that worke,
the Ides of March begun"

("the Ides of March" = "on the Ides of March", so that
here begun is a Participle)

Tit., IV, iii, 85 (F and Q₁): "I never dranke with him"

Shr., Ind., ii, 6 (F): "I ne're drank sacke"

AWW, II, iii, 106 (F): "thy father drunke wine"

1H4, II, iv, 168 (F): "I am a Rogue if I drunke to day"

Ant., II, v, 21 (F): "I drunke him to his bed"

Jn., V, vii, 12 (F): "even now he sung" (the usual form)

Son. LXXIII, 4 (1609): "where late the sweet birds sang"
(rhyme: sange; the only example)

Cor., I, iii, 17 (F): "I sprang"

3H6, V, vii, 31 (F): "I love the tree frō whence I sprang"

Err., I, i, 6 (F): "The enmity and discord which of late/
Sprung from the rancorous outrage of
your Duke"

Ven., 1168 (1593): "A purple floure sproong up"

2H4, I, i, 111 (F and Q₁): "he never more sprung up"

H8, III, i, 7 (F): "To his Musicke, Plants and Flowers/
Ever sprung"

Tim., I, ii, 116 (F): "Ioy.../...at that instant, like a late
sprung up"

Ham., III, i, 186 (F): "The Origin and Commencement of this
greefe/ Sprung from neglected love"

Tmp., III, ii, 16 (F): "I swam" (the only example)

TGV, I, i, 26 (F): "you never swom the Hellespont" (the only
~~1H4, III,~~ example)

1H4, III, ii, 59 (F): "my State...wanne"

(Q₁): "my state...wan" (once only)

Ven., 1112 (1593): "He ran upon the Boare" (the usual form)

1H4, II, iv, 287 (F): "[you] still ranne and roar'd"

(Q₁): "[you] stil run and roard"

PP, 156 (1612): "To kisse and clip me till I run away"

Shr., Ind., ii, 67 (F): "And til the teares.../...ore-run
her lovely face"

Mac., II, iii, 117 (F): "Th'expedition of my violent Love/
Out-run the pawser, Reason"

- 97 The Preterites bare, brake, sate, spake, sware, ware now occur only as archaisms in high-style; they have long since died out in popular colloquial speech. In Shakespeare, too, they are generally far less frequent than the parallel forms, which are now the only ones in use. A Pret. drave is found alongside drove, and gat occurs instead of got.

Err., II, i, 73 (F): "I bare home up . my shoulders"

R3, II, i, 89 (F): "Some tardie Cripple bare the Countermant"

(Q₁): "Some tardy cripple bore the countermant"
(bore is the more common form)

Err., V, i, 48 (F): "till this afternoone his passion/
Ne re brake into extremity of rage"

Ven., 469 (1593): "And all amaz'd, brake off his late intent"

1H4, I, i, 48 (F): "the tidings of this broile,/ Brake off
our businesse for the Holy Land"

R3, III, vii, 41 (F): "And even here brake off"

Apart from these Cases broke is the usual form.

H8, IV, i, 65 (F): "while her Grace sate downe/ To rest a
while"

Jn., IV, ii, 232 (F): "When I spake darkely, what I purposed"
The form spoke also occurs.

Tit., IV, i, 91 (F): ~~"and Q₁~~: "Lord Iunius Brutus sweare
for Lucrece rape"

Tit., I, i, 487 (F): "sure as death I sware"

(Q₃): "sure as death I swore"

2H4, III, ii, 343 (Q₁): "[he] sware" (elsewhere swore)

Tit., I, i, 6 (F): "I was the first borne Sonne, that was
the last/ That wore the Imperiall Diadem"

(Q₁): "I am his first borne sonne, that was
the last/ That ware the Imperiall Diademe"
(the only example of ware)

Tro., III, iii, 190 (F) ~~and Q₁~~: "And drave great Mars to
faction"

AYL, III, ii, 438 (F): "I drave"

Rom., I, i, 127 (F): "A troubled mind drave me to walke
abroad"

(Q₂): "A troubled minde drive me to walke
abroad"

Ant., I, ii, 98 (F): "drave" (drove is more common)

Per., II, ~~III~~ ii, 6 (Q₁): "whom Nature gat,/ For men to see;
and seeing woonder at"

This is the only example of gat.

98 Each of the Preterites bid (from bide), drive, and come occurs only once in Shakespeare. The form writ, on the other hand, is very common as a Pret., whereas the earlier form wrote is rare. These forms of the Preterite are formed from the apocopated form of the O.E. Participle. In the Southern vernacular forms like come and drive are still much in use as Preterites (Englische Studien, XII (1889), 219). The Pret. see, still much in use in Southern vulgar speech (Englische Studien, XII (1889), 219), occurs four times in Shakespeare.

R3, IV, iv, 304 (F): "for whom you bid like sorrow"

1H4, II, iv, 201 (F and Q₁): "then come in the other"

Rom., I, i, 127 (Q₂): "A troubled minde drive me to walke abroad"

(F): "A troubled mind drave me to walke abroad"

TN, V, i, 370 (F): "Maria writ/ The Letter"

2H4, III, ii, 33 (Q₁): "I see him"

(F): "I saw him"

H8, I, iii, 12 (F): "That never see'em pace before"

LLL, IV, i, 70-71 (F): "He came, See, and overcame: hee came one; see, two; covercame three"

(Q₁): "He came, See, and overcame: He came, one; see, two; covercame, three"

§ 799

It is not uncommon for the Pret. form to displace that of the Part. Examples of this are: arose, drove, fell, forsook, rode, shook, smote, spake, stroke, swam, took, (beteok^{ake}, mistook), wrote. ~~Many of them still survive in dialect (Englische Studien, XII~~

Err., V, i, 388 (F): "thereupon these errors are arose" (once)

2H6, III, ii, 84 (F): "Drove" (once); there is also a Participle droven:

Ant., IV, vii, 5 (F): "we had droven them home" (once)

Lr., IV, vi, 54 (F): "thou hast perpendicularly fell"

Tit., II, iv, 50 (F): "He would have dropt his knife
and fell asleepe"

Tim., IV, iii, 265 (F): "Fell"

These are the only cases of fell; the usual form is fallen.

Cor., IV, v, 82 (F): "who/ Have all forsooke me"
(forsaken is also found)

Ven., 571 (1593): "had she then gave over"
(once; otherwise given)

EE, IV, iii, 2 (F): "The King himselfe is rode to view
their Battaille"

2H4, V, iii, 98 (F): "helter skelter have I rode to the"
(twice; elsewhere rid and ridden)

Tro., III, iii, 225 (F): "Be shooke to ayrie ayre"

This is the usual form; shaken and shaked are less common.

LLL, IV, iii, 28 (F): "their fresh rayse have smot"
(rhyme: not)

Cor., III, i, 319 (F): "Our Ediles smot"

This form occurs only twice; smit is found once:

Tim., II, i, 23 (F): "Have smit my credit"

H8, II, iv, 153 (F): x "spake" (Part., once)

Tro., II, ii, 7 (F): "Shall be stroke off"

The forms struck, strucken, stroken, strooken, striken (twice) are also found as Participles; the Preterite is stroke, strook(e), struck.

H8, II, iv, 30 (F): "which of your Friends/ Have I not
strove to love"

AYL, IV, i, 38 (F): "you have swam" (once)

Swom is also found once:

Tmp., II, ii, 132 (F): "Swom ashore"

TN, I, v, 282 (F): "He might have tooke his answer long ago"

Ham., V, i, 151 (Q₂): "I have tooke note of it"

(F): "I have taken note of it"

Per., I, iii, 35 (Q₁): "your Lord has betake himselfe to
unknowne travailes"

TN, V, i, 266 (F): "you have beene mistooke"

(mistaken (mista'en) is also found)

Lr., I, ii, 94 (Q₁): "he hath wrote"

(F): "he hath writ"

Ant., III, v, 11 (F): "he had formerly wrote"

Cym., III, v, 2 (F): "My Emperor hath wrote"

Cym., III, v, 21 (F): "Lucius hath wrote"

The forms writ and written are more common.

; 100

Sometimes the Part. ending "-(e)n" was omitted. In Early New English the new forms which resulted from this existed alongside the original full forms. Thus in Shakespeare the Participles broke, chose, spoke are on an equal footing with broken, chosen, spoken; but others, like shore, are found only when the rhyme requires it (once). Sometimes there is a difference in function; for example frozen is the only form that appears adjectivally before a noun, never froze. Some of the apocopated Part. forms in question now survive only in popular speech: forms like bore, broke, froze, spoke, stole are still common in the vernacular of Southern English (Englische Studien, XII (1889), 217, 218).

There is another group in which both Part. forms existed side by side for a long time in the written language, but where there is no clear difference in use: beaten, beat; begot, begotten; bid, bidden; chid, chidden; eat, eaten; forbid, forbidden; forgot, forgotten; got, gotten; hid, hidden; trod, trodden. The only difference seems to be that the full form is preferred before nouns, as is shown very clearly by the use of chidden, forgotten, hidden, sunken.

Ham., V, 1, 205 (F): "he hath borne me on his backe"

(Q₂): "hee hath bore me on his backe"

TN, V, i, 178 (F): "Has broke my head a-crosse"

Tro., III, i, 53 (F and Q₁): "You have broke it"

Broken is also found; broke is never used adjectivally before a noun.

Oth., I, i, 17 (F): "I have already chose my Officer"

(Q₁): "I have already chosen my officer"

Err., V, i, 313 (F): "all the Conduits of my blood froze up"

2H4, I, i, 199 (F): "it had froze them up"

With a noun the more usual form frozen is used.

MND, V, i, 347 (F and Q₁): "since you have shore" (rhyme: gore)
(elsewhere shorn)

Ven., 943 (1593): "he had spoke" (spoken is also found)

Lr., V, viii, 89 (F and Q₁): "My Lady is bespoke"

Jul., II, i, 238 (F): "Y'have, ungently Brutus/ Stole from my bed"

Mac., II, iii, 73 (F): "stole" (elsewhere stolen)

TN, III, iv, 43 (F): "'twas well writ"

(the usual form; written is also found)

Err., II, ii, 42 (F): "I am beaten"

Cor., I, iv, 40 (F): "they had beate" (the less common form)

Jn., I, i, 75 (F): "where I be as true begot or no"

(the usual form)

1H6, II, v, 72 (F): "no Heire begotten of his Body"

1H6, V, iv, 37 (F): "Not me, begotten of a Shepheard Swaine"

AWW, III, ii, 61 (F): "a childe begotten of thy bodie"

WT, III, ii, 135 (F): "his innocent Babe truly begotten"

(the only occasions; also in misbegotten, true-begotten,
first-begotten, see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 96)

MV, II, v, 11 (F and Q₁): "I am bid forth to supper"

Ado, III, iii, 32 (F and Q₁): "when he is bidden" (the only case)

Lr., IV, vii, 37 (F and Q₁): "though he had bit me"

Lr., I, iv, 236 (F and Q₁): "it('s) had it head bit off"

1H4, II, i, 19 (F and Q₁): "be better bit"

Rom., I, i, 157 (F and Q₂): "As is the bud bit"

H8, V, iv, 64 (F): "bitten Apples" (once; also in fly-bitten,
weather-bitten, see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 115)

Err., IV, iv, 97 (F): "They must be bound"

Jn., III, iii, 29 (F): "I am much bounden to your Maiesty"

(formal)

AYL, I, ii, 298 (F): "I rest much bounden to you"

MND, III, ii, 200 (F): "wee have chid the hasty footed time"

TGV, II, i, 12 (F): "I was last chidden"

Oth., II, i, 12 (F): "The chidden Bilow seemes to pelt the
Clouds"

(Q₁): "The chiding bilow seemes to pelt the
cloudes"

Mac., I, iii, 84 (F): "have we eaten on the insane Root"

(the more common form)

R2, V, v, 85 (F): "That Iade hath eate bread from my Royall
hand"

Rom., III, i, 92 (F): "the Prince expresly hath/ Forbidden
bandying"

(Q₂): "the Prince expresly hath/ Forbid this
bandying" (forbid is the usual form)

Son. VI, 5 (1609): "That use is not forbidden usery"

Err., III, ii, 1 (F): "you have quite forgot/ A husbands
office" (the usual form)

H8, II, i, 29 (F): "all/ Was either pittied in him, or
forgotten" (15 times; the only form with
nouns, see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 443)

Ant., IV, vii, 4 (F): "this is fought indeed"

H5, IV, vi, 18 (F): "this glorious and well-foughten field"
(the only example of foughten)

Son. LXXVIII, 3 (1609): "every Alien pen hath got my use"

3H6, IV, vii, 87 (F): "that once gotten"

3H6, III, iii, 90 (F): "Henry the Fift had gotten"

2H6, IV, iv, 49 (F): "Iacke Cade hath gotten London-bridge"

R2, V, v, 74 (F): "at length have gotten leave"

Wiv., I, iii, 25 (F): "He was gotten in drink"

(the only cases of gotten)

Ant., II, vii, 93 (F): "Fill till the cup be hid" (the usual form)

JC, I, ii, 57 (F): "Your hidden worthinesse"

Ven., 767 (1593): "the hidden treasure"

Son. XXXI, 8 (1609): "But things remov'd that hidden in
there lie"

MM, V, i, 397 (F): "my hidden powre"

AYL, I, iii, 121 (F): "what hidden womans feare"

H5, III, vii, 118 (F): "it is no hidden vertue in him"

R3, II, i, 14 (F and Q₁): "Confound your hidden falshood"

Mac., I, iii, 113 (F): "with hidden helpe"

Oth., II, i, 247 (F): "most hidden loose Affection".

(Q₁): "hidden affections"

(the only cases of hidden)

MND, V, i, 119 (F and Q₁): "He hath rid his Prologue, like
a rough Colt(e)"

H8, II, ii, 3 (F): "the Horses...I saw well chosen, ridden,
and furnish'd"

Rid, rode are used in the Active and ridden in the Passive
(see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 978).

TGV, II, iv, 34 (F): "A fine volly of words, gentlene, &
quickly shot off"

1H4, II, iv, 143 (F): "a shotten Herring" (= 'having spent
the roe'; also occurs in shoulder-shotten, nook-shotten,
see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1048)

Luc., 1592 (1594): "Her eyes though sod in tears look'd
red and raw"

H5, III, v, 18 (F): "sodden Water"

Err., I, ii, 45 (F): "The clocke hath strucken twelve"

Wiv., V, v, 1 (F): "The Windsor-bell hath stroke twelve"
struck (stroke) is by far the more common form.

H5, I, ii, 165 (F): "sunken Wrack"

Son. II, 7 (1609): "sunken eyes"

AYL, III, ii, 393 (F): "a blew eie and sunken"

Sunken occurs only in the cases cited; elsewhere sunk is used.

H8, III, i, 143 (F): "Would I had never trod this English Earth"

Ven., 707 (1593): "miserie is troden on by manie"

Note 1. The forms shaven, mis-shapen, molten occur in Shakespeare
as adjectives, as they do in modern usage; misshaped is also
found once. Shakespeare uses both engraved and engraven. The
now obsolete form wreathen derives from the Part. writen
(from Inf. writhe), which is influenced by wreathe. Moulten,
which occurs once, seems to have the meaning moulting.

Ado, III, iii, 145 (F and Q₁): "the shaven Hercules"

Tmp., V, i, 268 (F): "This mishapen knave"

Lr., IV, vii, 48 (Q₁): "molten lead"

Luc., 203 (1594): "it will live engraven in my face"

Tit., III, ii, 4 (F): "that sorrow-wreathen knot"

1H4, III, i, 152 (F): "a moulten Raven" (Q₁): "a molten raven"

Note 2. The Part. set corresponds to M.E. set (O.E. seten),
Part. from O.E. sittan; it occurs several times.

LC, 39 (1609): "Upon whose weeping margent she was set"
(rhyme: jet, wet)

H8, III, i, 74 (F): "I was set at worke,/ Among my Maids"

This passage is taken verbatim from Holinshed.

Individual Forms of the Past Participle.

101 Afeard, still found in Southern vernacular speech (Englische Studien, XII, 219), is common in Shakespeare, where it seems to be on an equal footing with afraid. Sometimes the ^{1st} Folio replaces afeard by afraid (A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under afeard). Afraid derives from the verb affray 'frighten'; afeard comes from O.E. afóered.

Fet (also in deep-fet, far-fet) corresponds to the O.E. Part. fett from fetian 'fetch' (see E. Sievers, Angelsächsische Grammatik, ^{3rd ed. (Halle 1898)} § 416, n.9).

Lien, not uncommon elsewhere in the 17th century, and which is found in Shakespeare alongside lain, shows a transfer of the vowel of the Infinitive and Present to the Past Participle.

The influence of the noun load is seen in the form loaden, which occurs alongside laden.

Rotten is the most common form of the Past Participle of rot, but rotted is also found. In M.E. only the ~~latter~~ latter form was found in the South, while rotten was characteristic of the North.

The strange form beholding, ^{was} still very common in the 17th century, ~~is first found in 1461 in the Paston-Letters~~, but beholden is found in the forms bihalden and biholde in Sir Gawain and the Green Knight, ^{1547 and 1742.} The form I am beholding to you came about through a fusion of I am beholden to you and I am holding to you (examples of this construction in E. Matzner, Ae. Sprpr. Wtb., p. 405). The reason for this new formation may have been the obsolescence of the Participle (be)hold(e). There are 21 instances of beholding in Shakespeare.

The Participle ycleped, ycliped (yclyped, ecliped), which occurs twice in Shakespeare, was archaic even then; clipt is also found once in the ^{First} Folio. It belongs to the verb clepe (which occurs four times) from O.E. cleopian, from whose parallel form clipian the forms with root "i" derive. Apart from this the Part. prefix "y" occurs only in the forms yclad and y-slaked.

MV, I, ii, 47 (Q₁): "~~amx~~ "I am much afeard"

(F): "I am much afraid"

MND, III, i, 28 (F): "Will not the Ladies be afear'd of
the Lyon?"

R3, II, ii, 121 (F): "the young Prince be fet/ Hither to
London"

(Q₁): "the yong Prince be fetcht/ Hither to
London"

2H6, II, iv, 33 (F): "my deepe-fet groanes" (only two cases)

Jn., IV, i, 50 (F): "Many a poore mans sonne would have
lyen still"

Ham., V, i, 190 (Q₂): "heer's a scull now hath lyen you
i'th earth 23. yeeres"

(F): "this Scul, has laine in the earth
three & twenty years"

~~(three cases only)~~

Per., III, ii, 85 (Q₁): "I heard of an Egypstian that had
9. howers lien dead"

(three cases only)

Cor., V, iii, 164 (F): "Loden with Honor"

1H4, I, i, 37 (F): "A Post from Wales, loaden with heavy
Newes"

(Q₁): "A post from Wales, loden with heavy
newes"

1H6, II, i, 80 (F): "For I have loaden me with many Spoyles"

H8, IV, ii, 2 (F): "loaden Branches"

Tit., V, ii, 53 (F and Q₁): "when thy Car is loaden with
their heads"

Tim., III, v, 50 (F): "loaden with Irons" (six cases only)

Ant., III, xi, 5 (F): "Laden with Gold"

Ven., 1022 (1593): "As one with treasure laden"

Tit., I, i, 36 (F): "laden with Honours Spoyles"

Ant., V, ii, 123 (F): "laden with like frailties"
(four cases only)

Son. LXXXI, 2 (1609): "when I in earth am rotten"
(the usual form)

MND, II, i, 95 (F): "the greene Corne/ Hath rotted"

Luc., 823 (1594): "The branches of another roote are rotted"

(Rhyme: unspotted, alotted)

Tit., IV, iv, 93 (F): "The other rotted with delicious foode"

(the only examples of rotted)

JC, III, ii, 70 (F): "I am beholding"to you"

R3, III, i, 107 (F): "he is more beholding to you, then I"

LLL, V, ii, 602 (F): "Iudas I am, ycliped Machabeus"

(Q₁): "Iudas I am, ecliped Machabeus"

LLL, I, i, 242 (F): "it is ycliped, Thy Parke"

Mac., III, i, 94 (F): "As Hounds, and Greyhounds...are
clipt/ All by the Name of Dogges"

Ven., 995 (1593): "She clepes him king of graves"

2H6, I, i, 33 (F): "Her words yclad with wisdomes
Maiesty" (the only occurrence)

Per., III, Prol., 1 (Q₁): "yslacked"

Alphabetical list of strong verbs

§ 152 The letter A indicates that a Past participle form is the only one used in the role of an attributive adjective. Forms found only in rhyme are enclosed in round brackets. Occasional weak formations in "-(e)d" are enclosed in square brackets. A numeral in brackets beside a form indicates the number of times it occurs. A dash indicates that no example of a particular form occurs. No attempt has been made to reproduce exactly the original spelling. Both the First Folio and the "good" Quartos are used as sources.

<u>abide</u>	-	-
<u>arise</u>	<u>arose</u>	<u>arose</u>
<u>backbite</u>	-	<u>backbitten</u> (1)
<u>bear(e)</u>	<u>bore</u> , <u>bare</u>	<u>borne</u> , <u>bore</u> (1)
<u>beat(e)</u>	<u>beat</u>	<u>beaten</u> , <u>beat</u> (11), [<u>beated</u> (1)]
<u>become</u>	<u>became</u>	<u>become</u> , [<u>becomed</u> (3)]
<u>befall</u>	<u>befell</u>	<u>befallen</u>
<u>beget</u>	<u>begot</u>	<u>begot</u> , <u>begotten</u> (4)
<u>begin</u>	<u>began</u> , (<u>begun</u> (8))	<u>begun</u> , <u>began</u> (1)
<u>behold</u>	<u>beheld</u>	<u>beheld</u>
<u>bespeak</u>	<u>bespoke</u> , <u>bespake</u>	<u>bespoke</u>
<u>bestride</u>	<u>bestrid</u>	<u>bestrid</u>
<u>betake</u>	<u>betook</u>	<u>betook</u>
<u>betide</u>	-	<u>betid</u>
<u>bid</u>	<u>bid</u> , <u>bade</u>	<u>bid</u> , <u>bidden</u> (1)
<u>bide</u>	<u>bid</u>	-
<u>bind</u>	<u>bound</u>	<u>bound</u> , <u>bounden</u> (2)
<u>bite</u>	-	<u>bit</u> , <u>bitten</u>
<u>blow</u> ('bloom')	-	<u>blown</u>
<u>blow</u>	<u>blew</u>	<u>blown</u> , [<u>blowed</u> (2)]
<u>break</u>	<u>broke</u> , <u>brake</u> (4)	<u>broken</u> A, <u>broke</u>
<u>chide</u>	<u>chid</u>	<u>chid</u> , <u>chidden</u> (4) A
<u>choose</u> , <u>chuse</u>	<u>chose</u>	<u>chosen</u> , <u>chose</u>
<u>cleave</u>	<u>cleft</u> , <u>clove</u> (1)	<u>cleft</u> , <u>cloven</u> (5) A
<u>cling</u>	<u>clung</u>	-

<u>come</u>	<u>came</u> , <u>come</u> (1)	<u>come</u>
<u>crow</u>	<u>crew</u>	<u>[crowed]</u>
<u>draw</u>	<u>drew</u>	<u>drawn(e)</u>
<u>drink</u>	<u>drank</u> , <u>drunk</u>	<u>drunk</u> , <u>dronke</u>
<u>drive</u>	<u>drove</u> , <u>drave</u> (4)	<u>driven</u> , <u>droven</u> (1), <u>drove</u> (1)
<u>eate</u>	<u>eat</u>	<u>eaten</u> , <u>eat</u>
<u>fall</u>	<u>fell</u>	<u>fallen</u> , <u>faln(e)</u> , <u>fell</u> (3)
<u>fight</u>	<u>fought</u>	<u>fought</u> , <u>foughten</u> (1)
<u>find</u>	<u>found</u>	<u>found</u>
<u>fling</u>	<u>flung</u>	<u>flung</u>
<u>flow</u>	<u>[flowed]</u>	<u>[flowed]</u> , <u>flown</u> (1)
<u>fly</u>	<u>flew</u> (never = <u>fled</u>)	<u>flown</u>
<u>forbear</u>	-	<u>forborne</u>
<u>forbid</u>	<u>forbade</u>	<u>forbid</u> , <u>forbidden</u> (5) <u>forbod</u> (1)
<u>forget</u>	<u>forgot</u>	<u>forgot</u> , <u>forgotten</u> (15) A
<u>forsake</u>	<u>forsook</u>	<u>forsook</u> , <u>forsaken</u>
<u>forswear</u>	<u>forswore</u>	<u>forsworn</u>
<u>freeze</u>	<u>froze</u>	<u>froze</u> , <u>frozen</u> A
<u>get</u>	<u>got</u> , (<u>gat</u> (1))	<u>got</u> , <u>gotten</u> (5)
<u>gin</u>	<u>gan</u>	-
<u>give</u>	<u>gave</u>	<u>given</u> , <u>gave</u> (1)
<u>gnaw</u>	<u>[gnawed]</u>	<u>gnawn</u>
<u>go(e)</u>	<u>went</u>	<u>gon(e)</u>
<u>grave</u>	-	<u>[graved]</u> , <u>graven</u>
<u>grind</u>	-	<u>ground</u>
<u>grow</u>	<u>grew</u>	<u>grown(e)</u>
<u>hang</u>	<u>hung</u> , <u>[hanged]</u> (see A. Schmidt, <u>Shakespeare-Lexicon</u> under <u>hang</u>)	<u>hung</u> , <u>[hanged]</u>
<u>help</u>	<u>holp</u> , <u>[helped]</u>	holp <u>holp(e)</u> , <u>[helped]</u> (4)]
<u>hide</u>	<u>hid</u>	<u>hid</u> , <u>hidden</u> (9) A
<u>hew</u>	-	<u>hewn</u> , <u>[hewed]</u> (1)]

hold

know

lie

load

melt

-

mistake

ride

ring

rise

run(ne

see

seethe

shake

shave

shear

shine

shoot

show

shrink

sing

sink(e

sit

slay

slink

smite

speak(e

spin

spring

stand

steal

held

knew

lay

-

[melted]

-

mistook

rode

rung

rose

ran, run (4)

saw, see (4)

-

shook, [shaked]

-

shore

shone

shot

[showed]

shrunk

sung, (sang (1))

-

sat, sate

slew

slunk

smote

spoke, spake

spun

sprang (2), sprung (6)

stood

stole

held, holden (1),
(hild (1))

known(e

lain, lien (3)

laden, loaden

[melted], molten

(attributive adjective used only of
metals)

misshapen, [misshaped (1)]

mistook, mistaker,

mista'en

rid, ridden (2), rode (2)

rung

risen

run

seen(e

sod(d, sodden

shook, shaken (5),

[shaked (3)]

[shaved], shaven A

shorn, (shore (1))

shone

shot, shotten A

[showed], shown, shewne

shrunk

sung

sunk, sunken A

sat, set (2)

slain(e

-

smit (1), smote (2)

spoken, spoke

spun

sprung

stood

stol(1)en, stolne,

stole (2)

stick
sting
stink
strike

strive
swear
swell

swim
swing
take
tear
throw
tread
understand
wear(e
weave
win(ne
wind
withdraw
withhold
withstand
wring
write

stuck
stung
stunk
struck, stroke

strove (2), [strived (2)]
swore, sware (3)
[swelled]

swam (1), swom (1)

swong

took

tore

threw

trod

understood

wore, ware (1)

[weaved]

won(ne, wan (1)

wound

withdrew

-

-

wrung

writ, wrote (3)

stuck

stung

-

struck(en, stroke,
stricken (2)

strove (1)

sworn(e, (swore (1))

[swelled (3)],

swol(le)n (5)

swam (1), swom (1)

-

taken, tane, ta'en, took

torn(e

thrown

trod, trodden A

understood

worn(e

woven, [weaved (2)]

won

wound

withdrawn

withheld

withstood

wrung

writ, written, wrote (3)

Copulative, and Modal
Auxiliary Verbs.

53 The Present tense of to be usually has the forms Sing. am, art, is, Plur. are, but the parallel forms Sing. be, beest (be'st), be, Plur. be are also found occasionally. The last is comparatively common as an Indicative, but be is very rare in the Singular. It is found, however, after think. Here it can hardly be regarded as being any longer a Subjunctive, but, as is pointed out by Abbott (§ 299), it tends to express some notion of doubt, question, or thought both here and (in the plural) in questions. The form beest (be'st) is generally found only after if (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 83). This may be because be, beest were used in O.E. generally in a future sense. Since the future and Subjunctive were closely connected in meaning be, beest tended to assume a Subjunctive use. Hence they are often used (after though, if, and other words that frequently take the Subjunctive) without having the full force of the Subjunctive, and where if any other verb were used it would be in the Indicative. See Abbott, § 298.

Plural:

Wiv., I, i, 298 (F): Glender: "be there Beares ith' Towne?"

Anne: "I thinke there are"

Lr., I, v, 36 (F): "Be my Horsses ready"

TGV, III, i, 55 (F): "Be they of much import?"

Fim., I, ii, 171 (F): "Where be our men?"

Tmo., III, i, 1 (F): "There be some Sports are painfull"

Pro., II, i, 109 (F): "else there be Liars"

Shr., I, i, 132 (F): "there bee good fellowes in the world"

Oth., IV, iii, 63 (F): "There be some such, no question"

MM, IV, iii, 3 (F): "heere be manie of her olde Customers"

TGV, III, i, 111 (F): "the doores be lockt"

Cor., III, i, 228 (F): "you xhy that be noble"

Wiv., II, i, 182 (F): "now they be out of service"

Wiv., I, iii, 98 (F): "I have opperations, Which be humors
of revenge"

o) Singular:

AYL, II, vii, 1 (F): "I thinke he be transform'd into a
beast/ For I can no where finde him,
like a man"

1H6, II, i, 46 (F): "I thinke this Talbot be a Fiend of Hell"

Err., V, i, 378 (F): "I thinke it be sir, I denie it not"

Tmp., II, ii, 104 (F): "if thou beest Stephano touch me,
and speake to me"

Tmp., V, i, 134 (F): "If thou beest Prospero/ Give us
particulars of thy preservation"

Tmp., III, ii, 25 (F): "Moone-calfe, speak once in thy
life, if thou beest a good Moone-
calfe"

Err., V, i, 341 (F): "Speake olde Egeon, if thou bee'st
the man/ That hadst a wife once
call'd Aemilia"

Note. There is one certain example in Shakespeare (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 84) of the form been = are (see OED, p. 716), originally Midland, which became obsolete about the middle of the 16th century: "Where when men been, there's seldome ease", Pericles, II, Prol., 28⁽⁹⁾ (Cf. § 457). This occurs in a passage that is deliberately archaic.

§ 104

The following forms of the Imperfect Indicative are found:
Sing. 1st Pers. was (in dependent clauses Subjunctive were);
2nd Pers. wert (the normal form in Shakespeare). The latter
first appears in the 16th century and survived in the liter-
ary language until the 19th century. The corresponding new
form, wast, also appears for the first time in the 16th
century and achieved pre-eminence on account of its use in
the translation of the Bible (Karl Brunner, Die englische
Sprache, II (Tübingen, 1962), 280). It is quite rare in the
Quartos and for the most part appears only in the ^{First} Folios
(see OED under be). The 3rd Pers. is was (sometimes were;
were in dependent clauses is Subjunctive); in the 3rd Pers.
Plur. was is found several times alongside the more normal
were. It appeared in the 14th century, and you was was in
use in the literary language as a singular until the latter
half of the 18th century (see OED and Karl Brunner, Die
englische Sprache, II, 280).

Ingular:

2H6, I, i, 197 (F): "When thou wert Regent for our Sovereigne"

R3, I, iv, 213 (F): "Whom thou was't sworne to cherish and
defend"

(Q₁): "Whom thou wert sworne to cherish and
defend"

33, II, iv, 33 (F): "she was dead, ere y^e wast borne"

(Q₁): "she was dead ere thou wert borne"

Ado, I, i, 236 (F): "Thou wast ever an obstinate heretique
in the despite of Beautie"

1H6, I, iv, 50 (F): "So great feare of my Name 'mongst
them were spread"

Tit., V, iii, 99 (F): "And they it were that ravished our
Sister"

EM, I, iv, 54 (F): "His giving-out, were of an infinite
distance"

R2, I, iii, 201 (F): "If ever I were Traitor, / My name be
blotted from the booke of life"

1H4, II, iv, 182 (F): "I am a Rogue, if I were not at halfe
Sword with a dozen of them"

WT, V, ii, 33 (F): "most true, if ever Truth were pregnant
by Circumstance"

TGV, IV, i, 30 (F): "nere repent it, if it were done so"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, pp. 83-84.

Plural:

R3, III, ii, 86 (F): "their states were sure"

(Q₁): "their states was sure"

Cor., IV, i, 4 (F): "You were us'd/ To say, Extremitities
was the trier of spirits"

Note. The Past Part. form bin is commonly found instead of been.

Shr., V, ii, 115 (F): "she is chang'd as she had never bin"

TM, I, v, 1 (F): "where thou hast bin"

AYL, IV, i, 39 (F): "where have you bin"

LLL, I, ii, 68 (F): "What great men have beene in love?"

(Q₁): "What great men have bin in love?"

Ado, IV, i, 151 (F and Q₁): "I have this twelvemonth bin
her bedfellow"

105 Shakespeare makes relatively sparing use of be and the Present participle, the so-called ^{continuous} ~~progressive~~ tense (he is coming); it was only later that it became common. For, example, it occurs only twice in Titus Andronicus, whereas it appears more than a dozen times in Henry VIII. Twelve cases occur in The Merry Wives of Windsor and eleven in Henry IV Part 1. The majority of verbs used in this way in Shakespeare are transitive (or intransitive verbs used absolutely), cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 22. The ^{continuous} ~~progressive~~ ^{form} of the passive is not found in Shakespeare: the earliest known example occurs in 1795, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 22. See also § ¹⁶⁷ 634.

Tit., II, iii, 39 (F): "Blood, and revenge, are Hammering
in my head"

Tit., IV, iii, 91 (F): "I am going with my pigeons to the
Tribunall Plebs"

1H4, IV, i, 89 (F): "The Earle of Westmerland, seven thousand
strong,/ Is marching hither-wards"

Ado, III, v, 37 (F and Q₁): "A good old man sir, he(e) will
be talking"

Ado, II, i, 87 (F and Q₁): "The revellers are entring"

H8, IV, i, 56 (F): "Where have you bin broiling?"

H8, III, ii, 139 (F): "the which,/ You were now running o're"

H8, III, ii, 178 (F): "Which ever ha's, and ever shall be
growing"

AYL, V, i, 13 (F): "we shall be flouting: we cannot hold"

Cym., II, ii, 44 (F): "She hath bin reading late,/ The Tale
of Tereus"

H8, V, iv, 10 (F): "you must be seeing Christenings?"

Ado, I, i, 119 (F and Q₁): "are you yet living?"

2H4, III, ii, 45 (F): "Is old Double of your Towne living yet?"

Tmp., II, ii, 117 (F): "art thou living Stephano?"

Note. Apart from the construction mentioned above, the idea of being on the point of doing something is expressed in Shakespeare by to be about to and to be at a point to (now to be on the point of (doing something)).

H8, II, iv, 70 (F): "I am about to weep"

1H4, I, iii, 22 (F and Q₁): "You were about to speake"

WT, IV, iv, 453 (F): "once, or twice/ I was about to speake"

Cym., III, vi, 16-17 (F): "I was/ At point to sinke, for
Food"

§ 106 The combination of be with the active prepositional infinitive related to the subject expresses futurity, obligation, necessity, or duty. In the negative it denotes prohibition. Must and have followed by the infinitive have now replaced this construction in many instances, so that it is far less common than formerly (examples under b)). Be with the passive infinitive (it is to be done - examples under c)) dates from the beginning of the 14th century, and became increasingly common subsequently. By the beginning of the 16th century it had almost completely displaced the rival construction it is to do. By Shakespeare's time it was a well-established and commonly used idiom. Shakespeare still occasionally uses the type it is to do because this fits his iambic metre better than it is to be done. Cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 23; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 350-1; F. T. Visser, An historical syntax of the English Language (Leiden, 1963-1969), §§ 1379-1381. The gerund, which was originally the basis of this construction, can still be clearly recognized on occasion (examples under d)).

a) Modern use:

ILL, V, ii, 508 (F): "I know not the degree of the Worthie,
but I am to stand for him"

Oth., V, ii, 56 (F): "Thou art to dye"

R2, IV, i, 322 (F): "The Woes to come, the Children yet
unborne,/ Shall feele this day as
sharpe to them as Thorne."

Cym., I, iv, 23-24 (F): "But how comes it, he is to sojurne
with you?"

b) Older use:

Cor., V, vi, 74 (F): "You are to know,/ That prosperously I
have attempted, and/ With bloody
passage led your Warres, even to/ The
gates of Rome" (= you must know)

Cor., II, iii, 45 (F): "we are not to stay altogether"
(= we must not stay)

Cor., II, iii, 47 (F): "He's to make his requests by
particulars" (= he will have to make)

Oth., III, iii, 218 (F): "I am to pray you, not to straine
my speech/ To grosser issues, nor
to larger reach,/ Then to Suspition"
(= I must pray)

TN, I, v, 218 (F): "I am to hull here a little longer"
(= I must hull)

Cym., II, iv, 52 (F): "I grant/ We were to question farther"
(= we should have to question)

WT, III, iii, 85 (F): "I am not to say it is a Sea, for it
is now the skie" (= I must not say)

MND, IV, ii, 29 (F and Q₁) : "I am to discourse wonders"

MND, V, i, 153 (F): "I wonder if the Lion be to speake."

TGV, III, i, 59 (F): "I am to breake with thee of some
affaires/ That touch me neere"

MV, I, i, 5 (F and Q₁): "whereof it is borne,/ I am to learne"

Ant., I, ii, 34 (F): "You have seene and proved a fairer
former fortune, then that which is to
approach."

Cym., III, v, 15 (F): "the Event/ Is yet to name the winner"

WT, III, iii, 125 (F): "If the sinnes of your youth are
forgiven you, you're well to live"

WT, II, i, 197 (F): "Come follow us,/ We are to speake in
publique"

TGV, II, iii, 37 (F): "thou art to post after with oares"

Wiv., IV, ii, 128 (F): "you are not to goe loose any longer"

AYL, III, ii, 427-428 (F): "Hee was to imagine me his Love"

c) Passive:

WT, IV, iv, 821 (F): "whose miseries are to be smil'd at"

TN, I, v, 152-154 (F): Malvolio: "What is to be said to him
Ladie, hee's fortified
against any deniall."

Olivia: "Tell him, he shall not
speake with me."

Ado, IV, i, 96-97 (F): "they are not to be named my Lord,/
Not to be spoken of"

(Q₁): "they are not to be named my lord,/
Not to be spoke of"

Ado, IV, ii, 7 (F): "which are the offenders that are to be examined"

Ado, I, iii, 76 (F and Q₁): "shall we go(e) prove whats to be done?"

Ado, III, v, 43 (F and Q₁): "God is to be(e) worshipt"

WT, IV, iv, 712 (F): "your flesh and blood is not to be punish'd by him"

WT, V, ii, 48 (F): "which was to bee seene"

ANTH, III, vi, 54 (F): "That was not to be blam'd"

ANTH, III, vi, 60 (F): "it is not to be recovered"

ANTH, III, vi, 63 (F): "It is to be recovered"

Ham., V, i, 1 (F and Q₂): "Is she(e) to be(e) buried in Christian buriall"

d)

Temp., II, ii, 94-96 (F): "his forward voyce now is to speake well of his friend; his backward voice, is to utter foule speeches, and to detract"

JC, I, iii, 40 (F): "This disturbed Skie is not to walke in"

Note 1. Be sometimes expressed the idea of continuous activity.

Oth., V, i, 81 (F): "I am sorry to finde you thus;/ I have beene to seeke you."

AYL, II, v, 34-35 (F): Aliens: "he hath bin all this day to looke you."

Jaques: "And I have bin all this day to avoid him"

ANTH, II, i, 94 (F): "Ile fit you,/ And not be all day neither"

Note 2. Shakespeare uses be as a principal verb to indicate existence (examples under a)), belonging (examples under b)), and topicality (examples under c)), the last chiefly in the formula were it not that and in being used as a conjunction.

a)

Ant., I, iii, 67 (F): "The purposes I beare: which are, or cease,/ As you shall give th'advice"

Son. LIX, 1-2 (1609): "that which is,/ Hath beene before"

Cym., I, iv, 82 (F): "the most pretious Diamond that i's"

b)

Lr., I, i, 68 (F): "To thine and Albanies issues/ Be this
perpetuall"

H8, III, ii, 186-190 (F): "your Hand, and Heart...Should...
be more/ To me your Friend, then
any"

Ham., II, ii, 124 (F): "whilst this Machine is to him"

c)

Shr., III, ii, 140 (F): "Were it not that my fellow
schoolemaster/ Doth watch Bianca's
steps so narrowly"

Ham., II, ii, 262 (F): "were it not that I have bad dreames"

§ 107 Hath, 3rd P. Sing., is quite common alongside has (it occurs 16 times in Hamlet, Act I), even in texts where, apart from doth, the "-th" form is extremely rare: for example it occurs 28 times in the first two acts of The Merry Wives of Windsor. Very often both forms are used together quite indiscriminately. Hath is used with a plural function several times in the older Quartos and more frequently in the ^{First}Folios - see also the section on Congruence.

Singular:

Wiv., III, ii, 30 (F): "Has Page any braines? Hath he any eies? Hath he any thinking?"

Wiv., I, iii, 58 (F): "the report goes, she has all the rule of her husbands Purse: he hath a legend of Angels"

(Q₁): "the report goes, she hath all the rule/ Of her husbands purse. She hath legians of angels"

Has appears frequently in the ^{First}Quartos of Othello and is replaced in the ^{First}Folio by hath.

Plural:

MND, II, i, 91 (F): "Therefore the Windes, piping to us in vaine,/ As in revenge, have suck'd up from the sea/ Contagious fogges: Which falling in the Land,/ Hath everie petty River made so proud"

Wiv., I, i, 14 (F): "All his successors (gone before him) hath don't"

Mac., III, i, 110 (F): "Whom the vile Blowes and Buffets of the World/ Hath so incens'd"

Mac., IV, iii, 113 (F): "These Evils thou repeat'st upon thy selfe,/ Hath banish'd me from Scotland"

Err., V, i, 86 (F): "thy iealous fits/ Hath scar'd thy husband from the use of wits"

Note. The spelling ha's for has suggests the existence of a shortened form ha (ha'), and in fact this occurs quite often,

especially in the ^{First} Quarto of Othello; on the other hand a instead of have is much rarer.

JC, I, iii, 19 (F): "I ha'not since put up my Sword"

AM, V, ii, 40 (F): "you shall ha't"

Shr., V, ii, 181 (F): "thou shalt ha't" (Rhyme: Kate)

(see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon,
p. 517)

Ado, III, v, 35 (F): "our watch...have tane a couple of as
arrant knaves as any in Messina"

(Q₁): "our watch...ha tane a couple of as
arrant knaves as any in Messina"

Ham., IV, v, 199 (F): "Gramercy on his Soule"

(Q₂): "God a mercy on his Soule"

H5, IV, vii, 7 (F): "the Cowardly Rascalls...ha' done this
slaughter"

(Q₁): "the cowerdly rascals...have done this
slaughter"

Oth., I, iii, 409 (F): "I have't"

(Q₁): "I ha't"

Oth., II, iii, 115 (F): "Let's have no more of this"

(Q₁): "Let's ha no more of this"

Lr., I, iv, 114 (F): "this fellow ha's banish'd two on's
Daughters"

(Q₁): "this fellow hath banisht two on's
daughters"

LLL, V, ii, 17 (F): ~~"she might~~

(F and Q₁): "she might a bin a Grandam ere
she _ed"

§ 108 Have and the prepositional infinitive as commonly used today is comparatively rare in Shakespeare (examples under a)). This construction derives from the use of the principal verb have with to and the gerund (examples under b)), so that I have to pay originally meant 'I have something to pay'. In this way it was possible to express also an obligation or duty. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1398. 1408.

a)

Jn., II, i, 183 (F): "I have but this to say"

2H6, V, iii, 17 (F): "God knowes how long it is I have to live"

b)

Wiv., II, i, 38 (F): "I have to show to the contrary"

AYL, II, iv, 93 (F): "thou shalt have to pay for it of us"

Jn., IV, i, 8 (F): "I have to say with you"

AWW, II, iii, 237 (F): "thou hast to pull at a smacke"

Note. The expression have at you (have at thee), formerly very common and found as early as M.E., usually with the meaning 'take care, be warned', originally had the sense of 'it (the blow, attack) is intended for you'.

H8, III, ii, 309 (F): "Have at you"

Rom., V, iii, 70 (F): "Wilt thou provoke me? Then have at thee Boy"

2H6, II, iii, 92 (F): "Peter have at thee with a downe-right blow"

§ 109

Have in conjunction with an object followed by a Past participle whose content is occasioned, willed, wished, or intended by the subject, and which when combined with a verb of willing, wishing, or being able has the meaning of 'to arrange for, see to, make', was very common in the spoken language of the 15th and 16th centuries (I'll have the cudgel hallowed), cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 23. If have has the sense of 'receive' (I had five shillings given me), then the character of the participle, which in O.E. could be inflected, can be recognized very clearly. Thus the participle is a predicative definition of the object. The particular meaning of the verb have depends on whether the participle following the object indicates an action already finished in the past or whether its completion is sought only in the present or future. The construction in the passive sense is now a useful equivalent to O.E. weorþan: "I had five shillings given me." The rival construction: "I was given a gold watch" (cf. § 632) was formerly far less common than it is today.

2E, V, iv, 2 (F): "I would I might dy, that I might have thee lang'd"

2H4, V, iv, 21 (F): "I will have you as soundly swindg'd for this"

H5, II, ii, 58-60 (F): "Though Cambridge, Scroope, and Gray ...Wold have him punish'd"

LV, IV, i, 46 (F): "to give ten thousand Ducates/ To have it bain'd?"

Wiv., IV, ii, 216 (F): "Ile have the cudgell hallow'd, and hung ore the Altar"

Wiv., IV, ii, 235 (F): "Ile warrant, they'll have him publiquely sham'd"

Wiv., V, v, 38 (F): "I thinke the divell wil not have me damn'd"

1H4, I, iii, 233 (F): "I would have poyson'd him with a pot of Ale"

Lr., I, v, 46 (F): "Il'd have thee beaten for being old before thy time"

Wiv., II, ii, 73 (F): "I had my selfe twentie Angels given
me this morning"

Lr., I, iv, 236 (F): "the Hedge-Sparrow fed the Cuckoo so
long, that it's had it head bit off
by it young"

Note. Get, which is now very common in speech as a causative verb, is also found with this function in Shakespeare, but it is not nearly so developed in other uses as it is now (cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under get).

Shr., I, ii, 38 (F): "I...could not get him for my heart to
do it"

Lr., III, vii, 103 (Q₁): "get the bedlom/ To lead him where
he would"

§ 110 The Pres. Sing. forms of do are: 1st Pers. do, 2nd Pers. dost, doest (both forms are equally common), 3rd Pers. does (do's), doth. This last form is quite common; for example, it occurs three times in the first two acts of The Merry Wives of Windsor and seven times in the first act of Hamlet. Doth is also used in the plural (as well as do); in this role it is especially common in the ^{First} Folios, see also the section on Congruence. Diddest (two syllables) occurs once as the 2nd Pers. Imperf. ^{Sing. (Ham. IV, v, 58 (F))}, elsewhere the form didst is used, see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 323.

Singular:

- Oth., III, iii, 117 (F): "I thinke thou do'st"
 (Q₁): "I thinke thou doest"
Lr., IV, vi, 138 (F): "Do'st thou know me?"
Lr., IV, i, 72 (F): "Because he do's not feele"
 (Q₁): "Because he does not feele"
Lr., II, ii, 97 (F): "No more perchance do's mine"
 (Q₁): "No more perchance does mine"

Plural:

- Rom., IV, v, 128 (F and Q₂): "When griping griefes the
 h(e)art doth wound"
MV, III, ii, 33 (F): "Where men enforced doth speake any
 thing"
 (Q₁): "where men enforced doe speake any
 thing"
2H6, I, ii, 22 (F): "My troublous dreames this night, doth
 make me sad"
Cor., III, iii, 99 (F): "the Ministers/ That doth distribute
 it"
Cor., V, vi, 78 (F): "Our spoiles we have brought home/
 Doth more then counterpoize a full
 third part/ The charges of the Action"
Jn., V, ii, 42 (F): "great affections wrastling in thy
 bosome/ Doth make an earth-quake of
 Nobility"

Periphrastic do

§ 111 The most important difference in the use of periphrastic do between the language of Shakespeare and modern English lies in its use in affirmative statements. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1419-20.

§ 112

Do is used in Shakespeare, as it still is, for emphasis and is therefore very common in antithesis. It is doubtful, however, whether such common expressions as I do assure (protest, entreat, beseech) are always used in Elizabethan English for emphasis, since these verbs are already emphatic in themselves (examples under a)). In the same way that do emphasizes a statement it can also be used to express the intensity of an emotion (examples under b)). It often occurs in formal and official speech and gives it dignity and emphasis. Apart from this Shakespeare uses periphrastic do not only to affirm something as a fact, as it is still used today, but also to aver that something unlikely, unnatural, or scarcely believable really did happen (ghosts did shriek about the streets), or to depict vividly a dreamed experience (examples under c)), though occasionally in the examples given below it is used for reasons of rhythm or metre. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 327-8.

a) Emphasis of statement:

WT, I, ii, 446 (F): "I doe beleeeve thee"

H8, III, ii, 60 (F): "I do assure you,/ The King cry'de Ha,
at this"

Rom., III, i, 71 (F): "I do protest I never iniur'd thee"

JC, III, ii, 65 (F): "I do intreat you, not a man depart"

H5, III, v, 65 (F): "I doe beseech your Maiestie"

Antithesis:

AYL, III, iv, 24-27 (F): "I thinke he is not a picke purse,
nor a horse-stealer, but for his
verity in love, I doe thinke him
as concave as a covered goblet,
or a Worme-eaten nut"

Ham., I, v, 35-40 (F): "It's given out, that sleeping in
mine Orchard,/ A Serpent stung me
...But know thou Noble youth,/ The
Serpent that did sting thy Fathers
life,/ Now weares his Crowne"

(did sting indicates here the contrast between the truth
and false rumour)

Especially formal:

Err., IV, i, 78 (F): "I do arrest you sir"

H5, II, ii, 76-77 (F): "I do confesse my fault,/ And do
submit me to your Highnesse mercy"

R2, III, ii, 6 (F): "Deere Earth, I doe salute thee with my
hand"

b) Intensity of emotion:

Ham., III, iv, 173 (F): "For this same Lord,/ I do repent"

2H4, II, i, 138 (Q₁): "I say to you I do desire deliverance
from these officers, being upon hasty
imploiment in the Kings affayres"

(F): "I say to you, I desire deliv'rance
from these Officers being upon hasty
employment in the Kings Affaires"

Tit., V, iii, 190 (F): "If one good Deed in all my life I
did,/ I do repent it from my very
Soule"

c) Fact, reality:

Mac., V, v, 47 (F): "If this which he avouches, do's
appeare,/ There is nor flying hence,
nor tarrying here"

JC, II, ii, 23-24 (F): "Horsses do neigh, and dying men did
grone,/ And Ghosts did shrieke and
squeale about the streets"

Dream:

JC, II, ii, 76-79 (F): "She dreamp't to night, she saw my
Statue,/ Which like a Fountaine,
with an hundred spouts/ Did run
pure blood: and many lusty Romans/
Came smiling, & did bathe their
hands in it"

R3, III, iv, 84-86 (F): "Stanley did dreame, the Bore did
rowse our Helmes,/ And I did scorne
it, and disdaine to flye:/ Three
times to day my Foot-Cloth-Horse
did stumble"

(in the last instance did indicates a fact.)

Note. The expression I have done 'I have finished' is found in Shakespeare (H8, V, iii, 86 (F)).

§ 113

Do referring back to a preceding verb in order to avoid repetition is as common in Shakespeare as in modern English (examples under a)). Do can be used as an affirmative answer, corresponding to the present-day use, whether it occurs alone or is accompanied by an adverb; now, however, inversion does not take place after the latter (examples under b)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 182-4, 197-9.

Vicarious do a)

MND, III, ii, 167 (F) ~~and Q₁~~ and Q₁): "Whom I do(e) love, and
will do to my death"

H5, III, v, 50 (F): "Rush on his Hoast, as doth the melted
Snow/ Upon the Valleyes"

H5, IV, i, 106-107 (F): "the Violet smells to him, as it
doth to me"

Rom., II, ii, 19-20 (F): "The brightnesse of her cheek
would shame those starres,/ As
day-light doth a Lampe"

TGV, II, vi, 17 (F): "I cannot leave to love; and yet I doe"

AYL, III, ii, 243-244 (F): "Looks he as freshly, as he did
the day he Wrastled?"

3H6, I, i, 221 (F): "Or felt that paine which I did for him
once"

WT, II, iii, 48 (F): "Unlesse he take the course as you
have done"

Oth., I, i, 155 (F): "Though I do hate him as I do hell

(Q₁): "The I doe hate him, as I doe hells paines"
TN, II, v, 143 (F): "A should follow, but O does"

b) In reply:

Mac., III, vi, 40 (F): Lennox: "Sent he to Macduffe?"
Lord: "He did"

1H4, II, iv, 353 (F): Bardolph: "doe you behold these
Exhalations?"

Prince: "I doe"

Wiv., I, iv, 32 (F): Mistress Quickly: "do's he not hold
up his head (as it were?) and strut
in his gate?"

Simple: "Yes indeede do's he"

AYL, III, iii, 25 (F): Audrey: "Do you wish then that the
Gods had made me Poeticall?"

Touchstone: "I do truly"

TGV, I, i, 78 (F): Speed: "You conclude that my Master is a
Shepherd then, and I Sheepe?"

Proteus: "I doe"

Note 1. Do is used with a pronoun at the end of an affirmative statement to repeat the preceding verbal idea and emphasize it more strongly. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 201 is mistaken in supposing that this construction is not found before the 18th century.

MND, II, ii, 129 (F): "you do me wrong (good-sooth you do)"

MND, III, ii, 251 (F and Q₁): "Helen, I love thee, by my
life I doe"

Note 2. Do referring back to the idea contained in the predicate of an affirmative statement sometimes has an ironic sense when used interrogatively with a pronoun. When used in this way it often indicates amusement, surprise, disbelief, astonishment, irony, sarcasm, irritation. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 203.

Wiv., III, iii, 216 (F): "You use me well, M. Ford? Do you?"

Wiv., IV, ii, 138 (F): "I suspect without cause (Mistress)
do I?"

MND, III, i, 120 (F): "What do you see? You see an Asse-head
of your owne, do you?"

1H4, II, ii, 97 (F): "you are Grand Iurers, are ye?"

§ 114 Leaving aside the cases mentioned above (§§ 595, ¹¹²⁻³596), do is found in affirmative statements where it seems to serve no purpose other than possibly one of rhythm: the periphrastic form is now regarded as fully equivalent to the non-periphrastic (I do see = I see). This apparently parasitic use of do was still common at the beginning of the 17th century but died out in prose in the 18th century and is quite unknown in present-day conversational speech, though it survives as an archaism in liturgical and legal language and is also still found in South-Western dialects (see OED under do B. 25). Generally speaking it is not so common in the colloquial speech of the 16th and 17th centuries as in the literary language (H. Dietze, *Das umschreibende 'do' in der neuenglischen Prosa*, Diss. (Jena, 1895), p. 27). Altogether there are 21 examples of periphrastic do in affirmative statements in the prose of The Merry Wives of Windsor and in Much Ado About Nothing, I and II (H. Dietze, p. 29); the total in As You Like It, III, i-iv is 4. In a number of these cases do has an emphatic effect, but they have not been excluded from consideration since this could only have been done on the basis of modern feeling for the language so that there would still be no explanation of the remaining cases. Only prose has been taken into account in this enumeration, since in rhythmical language the periphrastic form is often used to fill out the verse or to solve problems of rhythm (examples under a)). This is shown by the fact that periphrastic do occurs far more often in verse than in prose, but in the individual plays vary greatly in the frequency of its use (5 times in The Two Gentlemen of Verona, together with 2 appearances in a prose passage; 20 times in verse in A Midsummer Night's Dream, II). In addition to this there are many cases where the non-periphrastic and periphrastic forms occur side by side (examples under b)) without there being any justification for the latter other than the requirements of the metre.

Do on metrical grounds: a)

IND, III, ii, 16 (F and Q₁): "When I did him at this
advantage take"

Jn., II, i, 120 (F): "Who is it thou dost call usurper
France?"

MND, III, ii, 184 (F): "Why should he stay whom Love doth
presse to go?"

IV, II, iii, 3 (F): "thou a merrie divell/ Did'st rob it
of some taste of tediousnesse"

IV, II, vii, 60 (F): "Here doe I choose, and thrive I as I
may"

Ham., II, ii, 50 (F): "Oh speake of that, that I do long
to heare"

(Q₂): "O speake of that, that doe I long
to heare"

b) The periphrastic and non-periphrastic forms occur side by side:

LLL, II, i, 11-12 (F and Q₁): "When she did starve the
generall world beside,/ And
prodigally gave them all to you"

LLL, II, i, 70-71 (F and Q₁): "For every object that the one
doth catch,/ The other turnes
to a mirth-mo(o)ving iest"

H5, II, ii, 96-97 (F): "Thou that didst beare the key of
all my counsailes,/ That knew'st
the very bottome of my soule"

H5, I, ii, 62 (F): "Charles the Great/ Subdu'd the Saxons,
and did seat the French/ Beyond the
River Sala"

Do stressed in verse:

MND, III, ii, 179-180 (F): "Wherein it doth impaire the ~~the~~
seeing sense,/ It paies the
hearing double recompence"

IV, II, vi, 8-11 (F and Q₁): "who riseth from a feast/ With
that keene appetite that he
sits downe?/ Where is the
horse that doth untread"

again/ His tedious measures"

Note. H. Bradley (The Making of English (1904), p. 70) draws attention to the use of do on rhythmical grounds in prose. He refers to the Bible of 1611 (Luke, ix, 17): "And they did eate, and were all filled".

§ 115

This use of do in Early New English of periphrastic do in an affirmative statement does not have any parallel in Old English and is still uncommon even in Chaucer. The modern language tolerates such periphrasis only in connection with an adverb or adverbial expression, otherwise it has been abandoned except in cases where it takes the principal stress. Thus this usage had real life and significance only in the 15th to 17th centuries. It obviously served quite definite purposes, and when these were achieved it was no longer used in affirmative statements. These purposes corresponded with the need for a change in the word-order of the clause. In the 15th to 17th centuries the chief concern was the position of the adverb and the need when there is no personal indirect object to place the direct object (when this is a thing) as close as possible to the predicative verb. The use of periphrastic do brings the adverb of negation to the position originally occupied by the particle of negation in front of the verb (he ne geseah = he saw not), which was necessary simply because, if it follows the verb and there is a following object, it can be interpreted in certain circumstances as ~~an~~ a word negation rather than a clause negation, so that there is a danger of misunderstanding. The change from he saw not the star to he did not see the star is therefore connected with the attempt to find a place for the adverb (or adverbial expression) in front of the predicative verb if it is to the latter that it refers. Do assists this end and is therefore often combined particularly with adverbs before the verb in cases where it now seems to be superfluous. There are instructive examples of this phenomenon in Shakespeare's prose.

MM, IV, ii, 54 (F): "he doth oftner aske forgivenesse"

Lr., I, i, 3 (F): "It did alwayes seeme so to us"

§ 116

Periphrastic do is often found in an affirmative relative clause or in a clause that substantiates a statement where something that is true and generally recognized as such, and which is therefore accepted as obvious by both author and reader (or listener), is added to what has previously been stated: "For he that knoweth what is straight, doth even thereby discern what is crooked" (Richard Hooker, Of the Lawes of Ecclesiasticall Politie, I, viii). Quite often do represents an emotional relationship between the speaker (or author) and the listener (or reader). Frequently it merely indicates the emotional tone of the speech. The general idea behind ~~it~~ it is simply 'in fact': "we were come into a Land of Angelles, which did appeare to us dayly" (Francis Bacon, The New Atlantis). There can be no doubt that very often in Elizabethan prose do was just ~~another~~ a rather weak means of expressing emotion; hence it is that it is now generally obsolete in this function except when it takes the principal stress in the clause. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 323-4 and 327-8.

§ 117 A stressed do in connection with an affirmative imperative was formerly used, as it still is, to emphasize a request, warning, or order; today if the imperative expresses a command, then a pronoun usually precedes the verbal idea: do you go at once! (see OED under do 30a). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1427, 1430.

H5, V, ii, 133 (F): "Give me your answer, yfaith doe"

WT, V, ii, 144 (F): "Give me the Lye: doe"

3H6, V, v, 73 (F): "sweet Clarence do thou do it"

1H4, II, iv, 32 (F and Q₁): "doe thou stand(e) in some
by-roome"

1H4, II, iv, 34-35 (F): "do never leave calling Francis"

(Q₁): "do thou never leave calling Frances"

Cym., I, v, 48 (F): "Do thou worke"

H8, V, iii, 84 (F): Gardiner: "I shall remember this bold
Language."

Cromwell: "Doe./ Remember your bold
life too"

Note. In Shakespeare the imperative do also occurs alone in the sense of 'go on!', but this is now obsolete.

Tro., II, i, 58 (F and Q₁): "do rudenes(se), do Camel(l),
do, do"

Tmp., IV, i, 239 (F): "Doe, doe; we steale by lyne levell"

The present position as regards the frequency of use of the periphrastic form in negative statements was reached about 1700, at least as far as conversational speech is concerned. In Shakespeare the non-periphrastic form still predominates, the proportions being suggested by the fact that in The Merry Wives of Windsor and Much Ado About Nothing, I and II there are 27 non-periphrastic and 13 periphrastic forms (H. Dietze, ~~"Das umschreibende 'do' in der neuenglischen Prosa"~~, Diss. (Jena, 1895), p. 43). In As You Like It, III, i-iv (prose) there are 5 non-periphrastic and 3 periphrastic cases. Contracted forms like don't for do not, which are now used exclusively in conversational speech, are not found in Shakespeare's text, though he slurs over not with do, can, may, see G. König, ~~Der Vers in Shakespeares Dramen (Quellen und Forschungen)~~, (Straßburg, 1888), p. 39, and H. Kökeritz, ~~Shakespeare's Pronunciation~~, p. 280. Certain individual verbs resist the use of the periphrastic form very strongly, especially care, know, doubt, mistake. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 331-3; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1432, 1441.

AYL, III, iv, 17 (F): "a Nun of winters sisterhood kisses
not more religiouslie"

AYL, III, ii, 351 (F): "they perceive not how time moves"

AYL, III, ii, 50 (F): "you salute not at the Court"

AYL, III, ii, 282 (F): "I do not like her name"

AYL, III, iv, 3 (F): "teares do not become a man"

W, III, iii, 36 (F and Q₁): "and then I care not"

1H4, II, ii, 12 (F): "that Rascall hath removed my Horse,
and tied him I knowe not where"

Ant., II, i, 42 (F): "I know not"

JC, III, ii, 240 (F): "you go to do you know not what"

TN, II, iii, 185 (F): "I doubt not"

1H4, V, iv, 59 (F) and Q₁): "If I mistake not, thou art
Harry Monmouth"

R2, V, iii, 129 (F and Q₁): "I do not sue to stand"

AWW, III, vi, 30-32 (F): "if he do not...offer to betray you"

Tit., II, ii, 25 (F and Q₁): "we hunt not"

R3, III, i, 14 (F): "Your Grace...look'd not on the poyson
of their hearts"

Ado, V, i, 176 (F): "she wept heartily, and said shee car'd
not"

Ado, V, i, 284 (F and Q₁): "yet sinn(')d I not"

TN, III, iv, 242 (F): "I knowe not"

Tim., III, v, 112 (F): "It comes not ill: I hate not to be
banisht"

Cym., V, i, 6 (F): "Every good Servant do's not all Commands"

§ 119

In Shakespeare negative questions usually ~~have~~ the periphrastic form (do I not dwindle?). In Twelfth Night only the periphrastic forms of the Present and Preterite are used, and in The Merry Wives of Windsor there is only one non-periphrastic form out of a total of seven. In affirmative questions requiring an answer connected with the content of the clause the periphrastic form is much commoner than the non-periphrastic (did he ask for me?); in Twelfth Night the proportion is 12:2, and in As You Like It, III, i-iv (prose) 13:3. On the other hand if the question is introduced by a specific interrogative, and if an answer relating to this is expected, then the non-periphrastic form is preferred (what said he? where dwellest thou?). In Twelfth Night there are only 2 periphrastic forms out of 14, and in As You Like It, III, i-iv (prose) only 3 out of 16; see here H. Dietze, ~~"Das unschreibende 'do' in der neuenglischen Prosa, Diss. (Jena, 1895),~~ p. 51f. The most common non-periphrastic forms in affirmative questions are associated with the verbs say, think, mean, come, go, stand, fare. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 329-331; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1450-64. Note. The formula of greeting how do you? (how dost thou?) is found in Shakespeare.

TN, III, iv, 106 (F): "How do you Malvolio?"

Ham., IV, v, 40 (F): "How do ~~you~~ ye, pretty Lady?"

(Q₂): "How doe you pretty Lady?"

TN, V, i, 11 (F): "how doest thou my good Fellow?"

Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 333.

§ 120 It seems that periphrastic do was normal in negative commands even before 1700 (H. Dietze, p. 66) and it occurs sporadically as early as the 14th century (F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1446, 1447a); but in Shakespeare the non-periphrastic form still predominates. In The Merry Wives of Windsor and Much Ado About Nothing there are 4 cases with and 6 without periphrasis.

TGV, II, ii, 13 (F): "answere not"

MND, II, i, 188 (F and Q₁): "pursue me not"

MND, II, i, 211 (F and Q₁): "Tempt not(,) too much(,) the
hatred of my spirit"

Tit., I, i, 116 (F): "staine not thy Tombe with blood"

R2, II, i, 135 (F): "Live in thy shame, but dye not shame
with thee"

H5, IV, i, 56 (F): "Doe not you weare your Dagger in your
Cappe that day"

H5, IV, iii, 30-33 (F): "wish not a man from England...doe
not wish one more"

Note. Negative commands and exhortations with be are first found in the 16th century. The construction without do dropped into disuse after the end of the 17th century. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1447b.

Cym., V, iv, 134 (F): "Be not, as is our fangled world, a
Garment/ Nobler then that it covers"

MND, III, ii, 306 (F and Q₁): "Good Hermia, do not be so
bitter with me(e)"

Ant., II, vi, 32 (F): "Which do not be entreated too"

§ 121

Can is sometimes used by Shakespeare as a modal verb equivalent to may, as well as ~~it~~ in its modern sense of 'to be able, capable' (he can read, he can write). Sometimes it merely indicates the absence of prohibitive circumstances; it is still often used in this way: you can have this. §§ 1626, 1630.

Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 319-20; F.T. Visser, Syntax,

Tmp., III, i, 92 (F): "So glad of this as they I cannot be"

Tmp., I, ii, 38 (F): "Canst thou remember/ A time before
we came unto this Cell?"

TGV, V, iv, 4 (F): "Here can I sit alone, un-seene of any"

Ven., 79 (1593): "Looke how he can, she cannot chuse but
love"

Note 1. As well as being an auxiliary verb, can also appears in Shakespeare as a principal verb with the meaning 'to be able, to have aptitude'. It is now obsolete in this sense. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 319-20.

Tmp., IV, i, 27 (F): "the strongst suggestion,/ Our worser
Genius can"

Er., IV, iv, 8 (F): "What can mans wisdom/ In the
restoring his bereaved Sense"

TGV, II, iv, 165 (F): "all I can is nothing,/ To her,
whose worth, make other worthies
nothing"

Ham., IV, vii, 85 (Q₂): "they can well on horsebacke".
(F): "they ran well on Horsebacke"

Note 2. The collocation of can with be able, now regarded as tautological, is not found after the end of the 17th century. Cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, § 1627.

WT, V, ii, 27 (F): "such a deale of wonder is broken out within this house,
that Ballad-makers cannot be able to expresse it"

§ 122 In Shakespeare may (Pret. might, mought) still retains its original meaning 'to be able, to be capable', even in the indicative (examples under a)); in this sense it was subsequently replaced by can, be able. It is also connected with can in its modern use to express the limit of a possibility (examples under b)). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 319; Abbott, §§ 309, 312; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1653-5.

a)

MND, V, i, 2 (F): "I never may beleeeve/ These anticke fables, nor these Fairy toyes"

R3, III, i, 187 (F): "Buckingham: "Good Catesby, goe effect this businesse soundly."

Catesby: "My good Lords both, with all the heed I can."

(Q₁): Buckingham: "Good Catesby effect this busines soundly."

Catesby: "My good Lo: both, with all the heede I may."

IV, I, iii, 7 (F and Q₁): "May you sted me?"

Oth., II, iii, 236 (F): "Which till to night/ I nere might say before"

MND, II, i, 161 (F and Q₁): "I might see young Cupids fiery shaft/ Quencht in the chast(e) beames of the watry Moone"

Jn., II, i, 325 (F): "Heralds, from off our towres we might behold/ From first to last, the on-set and retyre/ Of both yonr Armies"

Err., IV, ii, 2 (F): "Might'st thou percieve austeerely in his eie,/ That he did plead in earnest, yea or no"

3H6, V, ii, 45 (F): "Which sounded like a Cannon in a Vault,/ That mought not be distinguisht"

LLL, V, ii, 341 (F): "Construe my speeches better, if you may."

AWW, III, iv, 2 (F): "Might you not know she would do, as she has done"

LLL, I, i, 61 (F and Q₁): "to study where I well may dine,/ When I to fast expressly am forbid"

Cym., III, ii, 52-54 (F): "If one of meane affaires/ May plod it in a weeke, why may not I/ Glide thither in a day?"

LLL, V, ii, 92 (F): "When lo to interrupt my purpos'd rest,/ Toward that shade I might behold addrest,/ The King and his companions"

b) Possibility:

Jn., V, iv, 21 (F): "May this be possible? May this be true?"

Shr., III, ii, 32 (F): "Is it new and olde too? how may that be?"

H5, II, ii, 100-102 (F): "May it be possible, that forraigne hyer/ Could out of thee extract one sparke of evill/ That might annoy my finger?"

Shr., I, i, 198 (F): "May it be done?"

MV, II, ii, 113 (F): "You may tell everie finger I have with my ribs"

§ 123 Although may can still be used to express a possibility or permission dependent on the will of another, as well as possibility in general (may I go out? you may; it may happen), it is now used less frequently than formerly with a negative to show that permission is withheld. I may not has been replaced by I must not (I am not allowed to), especially in literary English. The basis of this older use of may is the original meaning 'to be able': 'not to be allowed to' is synonymous with 'not to be able to' if the execution of an action is called in question or becomes impossible because of moral objections or a decision taken by somebody else. May gained much ground in affirmative clauses in N.E. as an expression of a possible event ^(examples under b-)) because O.E. (M.E.) mót (Pres. of O.E. móste = N.E. must) was already obsolete before 1500 (see H. Sweet, NEGr, § 1482); this latter form does not occur in Shakespeare. Cf. Abbott, § 310; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1653-4, 1661, 1663.

- a) Err., I, i, 148 (F): "passed sentence may not be recal'd"
- Shr., III, ii, 200-202 (F): Tranio: "Let us intreat you
stay till after dinner."
Petruchio: "It may not be."
Gremio: "Let me intreat you."
Petruchio: "It cannot be."
- TGV, IV, iv, 130-131 (F): Silvia: "I pray thee let me looke
on that againe."
Julia: "It may not be: good Madam
pardon me."
- Wiv., I, i, 288 (F): "I may not goe in without your worship"
- 1H6, I, iii, 7 (F): "Who ere he be, you may not be let in"
- 1H6, II, ii, 47 (F): "You may not (my Lord) despise her
gentle suit"
- Rom., III, ii, 28-31 (F): "so tedious is this day,/ As is
the night before some Festivall,/ To an impatient child that hath
new robes/ And may not weare them"
- Lr., IV, v, (F): Regan: "stay with us:/ The wayes are dangerous."
Oswald: "I may not Madam"

LLL, V, ii, 712-714 (F): Dumain: "You may not denie it,
Pompey hath made the
challenge."

Armado: "Sweet bloods, I both may,
and will!"

Err., III, ii, 92 (F): "such a one, as a man may not speake
of, without he say sir reverence"

LLL, II, i, 24 (F): "No woman may approach his silent Court"

LLL, II, i, 172 (F): "You may not come faire Princesse in
my gates"

b)

LLL, II, i, 6 (F and Q₁): "all perfections that a man may
owe"

LLL, V, ii, 633 (F and Q₁): "it growes darke, he may stumble"

Ado, I, iii, 68 (F and Q₁): "let us thither, this may prove
food to my displeasure"

§ 124 May, and especially might, formerly expressed inclination and wish (A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 703). Nowadays it is usually replaced in this meaning by like (I should like).

MM, I, iii, 6 (F): "May your Grace speake of it?"

TGV, IV, i, 21 (F): "Some sixteene moneths, and longer
might have staid,/ If crooked fortune
had not thwarted me"

1H4, I, iii, 18 (F): "Maiestie might never yet endure/ The
moody Frontier of a servant brow"

Ham., I, i, 56 (F): "I might not this beleeeve/ Without the
sensible and true avouch/ Of mine owne
eyes"

§ 125 The form mought (=might) occurs only once. It derives from M.E. mahte under the influence of M.E. doughte (see OED under dow). It survived in vulgar speech until the end of the 17th century (H. Sweet, A New English Grammar (~~Oxford, 1892 and 1898~~), pp. 422, 423).

3H6, V, ii, 45 (F): "That mought not be distinguisht"

§ 126 Must used as a Pret. Indicative is rare in Shakespeare; but it has survived, especially when stressed, in the literary language until the present day, cf. C. Stoffel, "'Must' in Modern English," Englische Studien, XXVIII (1900), 294-309. It is also found in spoken English: 1) in actual oratio obliqua (O. Jespersen, A Modern English Grammar, IV, 11.6.1); 2) in virtual oratio obliqua (ibid, IV, 1.6.4). The Present meaning of must derives from the M.E. Pret. Subjunctive, moste, which, as a polite form of demand, has a Present meaning. Because of its formal connection with the 2nd Pers. Pres. Sing. most, which became possible from the 15th century onwards, when the "e" in moste was omitted, must has established itself as a form of the Present. The sense of compulsion or inevitability was not so common in Shakespeare as it is today. The predominant meaning in the 16th century and in Shakespeare is 'ought'. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 322. The original meaning of must survives in its use with the negative: I must not. Cf. H. Sweet, p. 423; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 323; F. T. Syntax, §§ 1698, 1701, 1705-6, 1708, 1710.

Cor., I, ii, 21 (F): "Nor did you thinke it folly,/ To keepe
your great pretences vayl'd, till when/
They needs must shew themselves"

Cym., II, i, 4 (F): "I had a hundred pound on't: and then a
whorson Iack-an-Apes, must take me up
for swearing"

Per., I, iv, 40 (Q₁): "Those pallats who not yet too savers
younger,/ Must have inventions to
delight the tast,/ Would now be
glad of bread"

Mac., IV, iii, 212 (F): "And I must be from thence?"

AYL, III, v, 40 (F): "Must you be therefore pround and
pitillesse?"

MND, III, ii, 150 (F and Q₁): "Can you not hate me(e), as I
know you doe,/ But you must
ioyne(,) in soules(,) to

mocke me(e) to?"

WT, IV, iv, 248 (F): "Is there not milking-time...but you
must be tittle-tatling, before all
our guests?"

PP, 105 (1612): "Then must the love be great twixt thee and
me"

Tmp., II, i, 41 (F): "It must needs be of subtle, tender,
and delicate temperance."

Ham., III, ii, 183 (F): "Faith I must leave thee Love"

Lr., I, i, 24 (F and Q₁): "the (w)hor(e)son must be
acknowledged"

R3, III, i, 106 (F and Q₁): "I must not say so"

Son. XL, 14 (1609): "we must not be foes"

Son. LXXXIX, 14 (1609): "I must nere love him whom thou dost
hate"

§ 127 Modern English does not permit the use of must as a Pret. Ind. in a clause which is fully independent in form and content. In Shakespeare's time there was greater freedom in this respect (see the quotations in § 126 from Coriolanus, Cymbeline, Pericles, and Macbeth).

§ 128

Must indicates any kind of necessity (examples under a)). In Shakespeare the negative use is not so common as it is today (examples under b)), since at that time may not could still be used instead to express a prohibition (see § ¹²³605). Occasionally must expresses the idea of future destiny and in this case it is more aptly paraphrased in the modern language by be + the infinitive with to (examples under c)). On must as a Preterite indicative and its development as a Present tense see § ¹²⁶179; on must as a subjunctive see § ¹⁷¹638. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 320-3; Abbott, § 314; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1698-1710.

a) Necessity:

Temp., III, iii, 4 (F): "I needes must rest me"

TGV, I, iii, 75 (F): "to morrow thou must goe"

Temp., V, i, 312 (F): "I long/ To heare the story of your
life; which must/ Take the eare
starngely"

b) Negative use:

Ven., 573 (1593): "Foule wordes, and frownes, must not repell
a lover"

Son. XL, 14 (1609): "we must not be foes"

c)

Tro., III, iii, 247 (F and Q₁): "He(e) must fight singly to
morrow with Hector"

~~MND~~, MV, II, vi, 40 (F and Q₁): "Descend, for you must be my
torch-bearer"

Tro., II, ii, 109 (F and Q₁): "Troy must not be(e), nor
goodly Il(l)ion stand"

§ 129

Besides its use with its modern meaning ought occurs once in the sense owed: "You ought him a thousand pound" (1H4, III, iii, 152, (F and Q₁)) - as spoken by Mistress Quickly. This use of ought has been displaced by the new formation owed. Owe means 'to be indebted' and O.E. *agan*, from which it is derived, 'to possess'. The question is how such a peculiar shift of meaning is to be explained. In early M.E. the verb was used as an auxiliary and so had the function of have as in N.~~Ex~~ E. you have to do this. It is also found in impersonal constructions and then means 'it is incumbent on him', which is closely related to 'it belongs to him'. The connection is even closer in the Pret. Subj., where 'he would have had to do this' is nearly the same as 'it would have belonged to him'. The specifically ethical sense became attached to ought, since here the personal and impersonal constructions both have the same meaning. The concept 'to be indebted' originated in general from this. The Pret. owed, alternative form of ought, was differentiated from the latter in that it acquired the meaning 'to be indebted' in the material sense, and the other forms followed from this. This explains the peculiar change from 'to possess' to 'to be indebted'. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 269-270. The approximation in meaning between ought and should is expressed in the omission of to before the Infinitive, which occurs once in Shakespeare: "you ought not walke/ Upon a labouring day, without the signe/ Of your Profession" (JC, I, i, 3, F). ^{Cf. F.T. Visser, *Syntax*, §§ 1712, 1724.} The notional independence which the form ought has acquired in popular speech is demonstrated by its periphrasis with do: "You doesn't ought to hear it" (Englische Studien, XII, 221). Owe in the sense of 'have, possess' is still very common in Shakespeare; it was later displaced by own. Cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, § 1711.

Err., III, i, 42 (F): "What art thou that keep'st mee from the howse I owe?"

Numerous examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 826.

§ 130 Dare with the meanings 'to risk, to hazard' and 'may, can' has two forms of the 3rd P. Sing. Pres., dares and dare, which enjoy equal status; with them is found the Pret. durst. Dare 'to challenge', on the other hand, has only dares in the 3rd P. Sing. Pres. The Pret. dared appears for the first time in 1590 in the form darde (OED under dare). Sometimes the Subj. form durst occurs with a Pres. meaning (cf. it would seem, and see also OED under dare). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 272; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1361, 1362.

Wiv., II, i, 25 (F): "that he dares In this manner assay me?"

Wiv., II, ii, 253 (F): "the folly of my soule dares not
present it selfe"

Mac., I, vii, 47 (F): "I dare do all that may become a man,
Who dares no more, is none"

Cym., IV, i, 27 (F): "the Fellow dares not deceive me"

Cym., III, iii, 34 (F): "a Debtor, that not dares/ To stride
a limit"

Ado., III, ii, 12 (F and Q₁): "the little hang-man dare not
shoot at him"

MV, III, i, 47 (F and Q₁): "a prodigall, who dare scarce
shew(e) his head on the Ryalto"

MM, V, i, 315-317 (F): "the Duke dare/ No more stretch this
finger of mine, then he/ Dare racke
his owne"

Mac., V, iii, 28 (F): "Curses, not lowd but deepe...Which
the poore heart would faine deny, and
dare not"

Ant., III, iii, 3 (F): "Herod of Iury dare not looke upon
you"

AYL, V, ii, 89-90 (F): "I durst go no further then the lye
circumstantial: nor he durst not
give me the lye direct"

AWW, III, vi, 96 (F): "(he) dares better be damnd then to
doo't" (= would rather)

Tro., V, x, 25 (F): "Let Titan rise as early as he dare"

MND, II, ii, 76 (F and Q₁): "she durst not lye(,)/ Neere
this lack(e)-love"

Ado, V, i, 99 (F and Q₁): "How they might hurt their
enemies, if they durst"
(= if they liked)

Ant., III, vii, 30 (F): "he dares us too't"

R2, I, iii, 109 (F and Q₁): "And dares him to set forwards
to the fight"

H8, V, i, 17 (F): "My Lord, I love you;/ And durst commend
a secret to your eare" (Present)

Oth., IV, ii, 12 (F): "I durst (my Lord) to wager, she is
honest"

Cym., I, iv, 122 (F): "I durst attempt it against any Lady
in the world"

Note. I dare say is found with its modern meaning in Shakespeare.
Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1357.

H5, IV, i, 129 (F): "I dare say, you love him not so ill,
to wish him here alone"

1H6, II, iv, 133 (F): "I dare say,/ This Quarrell will
drinke Blood another day"

§ 131

Wont occurs in Shakespeare mostly as a Predicate in connection with be; it is an old Participle and because it is rather unusual in the spoken language is now pronounced [wount], whereas formerly it had the etymologically correct pronunciation [wont] (Sweet, NEGr., p. 420). Sometimes wont has a Pres. function in Shakespeare. F. T. Visser suggests (English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 15-6) that the verb to wont arose from the frequent suppression of the copula to be in M.E.; ~~Thomas More (1510) wrote: "he woulde...holde it [seil. what he once heard read] in sure remembrance: which in other felkes wont commonly to happen contrary."~~ The Pret. form wonted developed from the earlier form wont: c.1400 Three Middle English Sermons (ed. Grisdale, 1939), 19, 54, "he wolde lay him in no place wher he wont for to walke, but in an old forsakin chirchezord." Wont in the 3rd P. Sing. Pres. dispenses with the inflexional ending, like hight, list. Cf. Skeat, Etymological Dictionary under wont; and Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 265; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1332, 1337.

Tit., I, i, 90 (F and Q₁): "greete in silence as the dead
are wont"

Cor., IV, i, 16 (F): "when you were wont to say"

Lr., I, iv, 64 (F and Q₁): "as you were wont"

MV, II, v, 8 (F and Q₁): "Your worship was wont to tell me"

Luc., 1621 (1594): "Where thou wast wont rest thy wearie
head"

H8, IV, ii, 102 (F): "her wonted Greatnesse"

1H6, V, iii, 21 (F): "your wonted furtherance"

Ham., III, i, 41 (F and Q₂): "his wonted way"

1H6, I, ii, 14 (F): "Talbot is taken, whom we wont to feare"

PP, 273 (1612): "My curtaile Dogge that wont to have plaid,/Plaies not at all"

Err., IV, iv, 40 (F): "I beare it on my shoulders, as a
begger woont her brat"

§ 132 The precise meaning of shall varies according to whether it is stressed or not, though probably not to the same extent in Elizabethan English that it does today. The same is also true of will. Sometimes the choice seems to be dictated entirely by considerations of metre, as in JC, V, i, 117 (F): "If we do meete againe, why we shall smile...If we do meete againe, wee'l smile indeede". Cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 21. The use of will where shall might otherwise be expected may have arisen from the contracted form 'll, which is widespread in spoken English. Cf. O. Jespersen, Essentials of English Grammar (London, 1933), p. 274; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 292; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1483-4.

§ 133 The uses of shall were formerly much wider and more precisely developed than they are today. Some of these still survive, especially in prophecies (examples under a), cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, § 1492) and prohibitions (you shall not go there!), cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1500. It was also used formerly to indicate that the future occurrence of an event was subjectively regarded as certain. In such cases the speaker either expressly promises his help (examples under b)), or simply expresses his opinion that the event will take place, cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1501-2. Shall is also used when the speaker expects something to occur against his wishes. This last idea is closely related to the future use of shall. The identification is complete if the subjective idea disappears entirely (examples under c)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1490, 1501-2.

If the speaker guarantees the realization of what he asserts about the future it naturally follows that he must also wish to confirm his assertion, and hence shall has also found its way into final clauses (examples under d)), Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1524-5.

When used subjectively in this way, shall often coincides with the modern meaning of may, and in this sense occurs chiefly in modal clauses and generalizing relative clauses (examples under e)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1517. 1520.
a)

2H6, II, ii, 81 (F): "Richard shall live to make the Earle
of Warwick/ The greatest man in
England, but the King"

Ven., 1135-1137 (1593): "Since thou art dead, lo here I
prophecie,/ Sorrow on love hereafter
shall attend:/ It shall be wayted
on with iealousie"

Tit., I, i, 255 (F and Q₁): "How proud(e) I am of thee(,) and of thy gifts/ Rome shall record"

R2, IV, i, 137 (F): "if you Crowne him, let me prophecie,
The blood of English shall manure the
ground"

b)

Ado, I, i, 312 (Q₁): "I wil breake with hir, and with her
father,/ And thou shalt have her"

Tmp., II, ii, 77 (F): "hee shall taste of my Bottle"

Ado, II, i, 379 (F and Q₁): "I warrant thee Claudio, the
time shall not go(e) dully by us"

Tit., IV, iv, 107 (F and Q₁): "Your bidding shall I do(e)
effectually"

LLL, V, ii, 155 (F and Q₁): "So shall we stay mocking
entended game"

MV, I, ii, 97 (F and Q₁): "I hope I shall make shift to goe
without him"

MV, III, iv, 11 (F): "I never did repent for doing good,
Nor shall not now"

MV, III, iv, 36 (F and Q₁): "I shall obey you"

c)

Jn., V, ii, 78 (F): "Your Grace shall pardon me"

Shr., III, ii, 155 (F): "'tis a groome indeed,/ A grumlling
groome, and that the girle shall
finde"

MV, II, viii, 26 (F): "Let good Anthonio looke he keepe his
day//Or he shall pay for this"

Tmp., I, ii, 476 (F): "One word more/ Shall make me chide
thee"

AYL, I, i, 134 (F): "hee that escapes me without some broken
limbe, shall acquit him well"

Lr., II, iv, 289 (F): "O Foole, I shall go mad"

d)

Ado, II, i, 396 (F and Q₁): "I will teach you how to humour
your cosin, that sne(e) shall
fal(l) in love with Benedicke"

Oth., I, i, 158 (F): "that you shal surely find him/ Lead to
the Sagitary the raised Search"

Lr., II, iv, 283 (F and Q₁): "I will have such revenges on
you both,/ That all the world
shall..."

3H6, III, i, 9 (F): "And for the time shall not seeme
tedious,/ Ile tell thee what befell me"

MND, III, i, 127 (F and Q₁): "(I) will sing that they shall
heare I am not afraid(e)"

MV, IV, i, 368 (F and Q₁): "That thou shalt see the difference
of our spirit(,)/ I pardon thee
thy life before thou aske it"

Wiv., IV, ii, 52-54 (F): "three of M^r. Fords brothers watch
the doore with Pistols, that none
shall issue out"

Cor., IV, vi, 51-55 (F): "reason with the fellow/ Before you
punish him, where he heard this,/ Least you shall chance to whip your
Information,/ And beate the
Messenger, who bids beware/ Of
what is to be dreaded"

e)

Tro., IV, v, 272-274 (F): "Afterwards,/ As Hectors leysure,
and your bounties shall/ Concurrere
together, severally intreat him"

MND, I, ii, 89 (F): "a proper man as one shall see in a
summers day"

Ham., I, v, 129 (F): "I hold it fit that we shake hands and
part:/ You, as your busines and desires
shall point you"

MV, II, viii, 45 (F): "imploy your chiefest thoughts/ To
courtship, and such faire ostents of
love/ As shall conveniently become
you there"

Tit., IV, ii, 157 (F): "And how by this their Childe shall be
advanc'd,/ And be received for the
Emperours heyre"

JC, III, i, 238 (F): "What Antony shall speake, I will
protest/ He speakes by leave, and by
permission"

§ 134

Future shall is especially common in temporal and conditional subordinate clauses. This use is still tolerated in the literary language, but it is no longer accepted in conversational speech. Cf. F. T. Visser, *Syntax*, §§ 1519-20.

a) In a temporal clause:

H5, III, v, 58 (F): "when he shall see our Army,/ Hee'll
drop his heart into the sinck of feare"

3H6, IV, vii, 80 (F): "And when the Morning Sunne shall
rayse his Carre/ Above the Border of
th̄s Horizon"

Lr., I, iv, 329 (F): "When she shall heare this of thee,
with her nailes/ Shee'll flea thy
Wolvish visage"

Cor., IV, v, 224 (F): "when they shall see sir, this Crest
up againe, and the man in blood,
they will out of their Burroughes"

JC, II, ii, 11 (F): "When they shall see/ The face of
Caesar, they are vanished"

MV, II, vi, 23 (F): "When you shall please to play the
theeves for wives/ Ile watch as long

MV, III, iv, 40 (F and Q): "for you well till we shall meete againe"

b) In a conditional clause:

JC, II, ii, 95 (F): "If you shall send them word you will
not come,/ Their mindes may change"

WT, I, i, 1 (F): "If you shall chance (Camillo) to visit
Bohemia...you shall see"

Lr., III, i, 46 (F): "If you shall see Cordelia...shew her
this Ring"

Cor., II, i, 94 (F): "Our very Priests must become Mockers,
if they shall encounter such ridiculous
Subiects as you are"

§ 135

Shall can be used in the future for all persons. The alternation of shall and will that now characterizes the various persons, both in the interrogative and non-interrogative forms, first developed after Shakespeare. It has been shown above (¹³² § ~~608~~) that the use of shall sometimes shows a subjective view of the future on the part of the speaker; but it can also be used to express objective futurity (She gives it out that you shall marry her). The only sure guide to a correct interpretation in any given example is the context or situation in question, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 21. I shall was the most common form of the future in the first person, largely because I will is an expression of will, whereas shall can be used objectively. On the other hand will was already in use as a future in the second and third persons in M.E. and had the advantage that it excludes any intervention by the speaker. This resulted in the sequence usual today I (we) shall, you will, he (they) will. Shall, which had become very common, was retained for the second person in questions, since here the speaker cannot assert his point of view, ~~may~~ except by means of stress, and will would enquire directly into the will of the person questioned; this idea is less clearly felt when will is used for the third person.

The shall form was still very common in Early New English. But Thomas More uses will objectively in the second and third persons to such an extent that it is difficult to say which form predominated, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 21. Shall is used almost exclusively in the Wyclif-Purvey translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and Tyndale (1525) employs it almost as frequently. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 290-3; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1483-4.

The future formed with shall:

Jn., III, iv, 78 (F): "If that be true, I shall see my boy againe"

Lr., I, v, 14 (F): "Shalt see thy other Daughter will use thee kindly"

Oth., IV, i, 118 (F): "She gives it out, ^{and O,} that you shall marry her"

Tro., II, iii, 131 (F and Q₁): "you shall not sinne,/ If
you do(e) say, we thinke
him over(-)proud"

1H6, I, i, 18 (F): "Henry is dead, and never shall revive"

Tro., II, i, 110 (F): "Hector shall have a great catch, if
he knocke out either of your braines"

TGV, II, v, 15 (F): "But shall she marry him?"

2H4, III, ii, 39 (F): "Wee shall all follow (Cousin.)"

~~MS~~ H5, I, ii, 141 (F): "They of those Marches, gracious
Soveraign,/ Shall be a Wall sufficient
to defend/ Our in-land from the
pilfering Borderers"

2H4, III, ii, 42 (F): "all shall dye"

After what has been said on the nature of shall in § 608a¹³³ it
is obvious that the examples given there cannot be rigidly
separated from those above: they are, indeed, connected.

§ 136 Corresponding to the use of shall in the formation of the 2nd and 3rd persons of the Future, should was formerly used in the 2nd and 3rd persons of the Conditional. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 314, 316; Richard Flatter, "Bühnensprachliche und andere Eigenheiten der Diktion Shakespeares," in Wiener Beiträge zur englischen Philologie, LXII (1955), 45-6; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1532, 1552.

Should used in the formation of the Conditional:

MV, I, ii, 142 (F): "If I could bid the fift welcome with
so good heart as I can bid the other
foure farewell, I should be glad of
his approach"

Ham., I, v, 32 (F): "duller should'st thou be then the fat
weede/ That rots it selfe in ease; on
Lethe Wharfe,/ Would'st thou not stirre
in this"

AYL, I, ii, 239 (F): "Thou should'st have better pleas'd me
with this deede,/ Hadst thou descended
from another house"

R2, III, iv, 20 (F and Q₁): "thou should(')st please me
better, would(')st thou weepe"

MV, I, ii, 100 (F): "If he should offer to choose, and
choose the right Casket, you should
refuse to performe your Fathers will,
if you should refuse to accept him"

Son. XI, 7 (1609): "If all were minded so, the times should
cease,/ And threescoore yeare would
make the world away"

Cor., I, iii, 10 (F): "when for a day of Kings entreaties,
a Mother should not sel him an houre
from her beholding"

Oth., III, iii, 222 (F): "Should you do so (my Lord)/ My
speech should fall into such
vilde successe,/ Which my Thoughts
aym'd not"

Cor., II, iii, 25 (F): "if all our wittes were to issue out

of one Scull, they would flye East,
West, North, South, and their
consent of one direct way, should
be at once to all the points o'th
Compassse"

Cor., II, i, 47 (F): "Why then you should discover a brace
of unmeriting, proud, violent, testie
Magistrates"

Tro., I, iii, 111-114 (F): "The bounded Waters,/ Should lift
their bosomes higher then the
Shores,/ And make a soppe of all
this solid Globe:/ Strength
should be Lord of imbecility"

JC, II, ii, 42 (F): "Caesar should be a Beast without a
heart/ If he should stay at home"

Wiv., II, i, 52 (F): "these Knights will hacke, and so thou
shouldst not alter the article of thy
Gentry"

Wiv., V, v, 207 (F): "Did not I tell you how you should know
my daughter, By her garments?"

Tro., II, ii, 48 (F): "Manhood and Honor/ Should have hard
hearts, wold they but fat their
thoghts/ With this cramm'd reason"

R2, IV, i, 233 (F): "There should'st thou finde one heynous
Article,/ Contayning the deposing of a
King"

Ham., II, ii, 205 (F): "your selfe Sir, should be old as I
am, if like a Crab you could go
backward"

(Q₁): "your selfe shalbe olde as I am,/ If
like Crabbe, you could goe backward"

(Q₂): "your selfe sir shall growe old as
I am: if like a Crab you could goe
backward"

Ham., V, i, 27 (F): "if this had not beene a Gentlewoman,
shee should have beene buried out of

Christian Buriall"

Ham., III, ii, 316 (F): "Your wisdom should shew it selfe
more richer, to signifie this to
his Doctor"

Mac., I, ii, 46 (F): "So should he looke, that seemes to
speake things strange"

Mac., III, vi, 19 (F): "I do thinke,/ That had he Duncans
Sonnes under his Key...they should
finde/ What 'twere to kill a Father"

Mac., V, v, 17 (F): "She should have dy'de heereafter"

Jn., IV, i, 68-70 (F): "And if an Angell should have come to
me,/ And told me Hubert should put
out mine eyes,/ I would not have
beleev'd him"

TGV, III, i, 15 (F): "And should she thus be stolne away from
you,/ It would be much vexation to
your age"

Note. A person who makes a statement about the future as it
concerns himself uses the shall form (or the should form in
the Conditional) since here the speaker and the protagonist
are identical.

JC, V, iii, 49-50 (F): "Farre from this Country Pindarus
shall run,/ Where never Roman shall
take note of him"

(Pindarus is speaking)

JC, III, i, 21 (F): "If this be knowne,/ Cassius or Caesar
never shall turne backe,/ For I will
slay my selfe" (Cassius is speaking)

JC, II, ii, 42-48 (F): "Caesar should be a Beast without a
heart/ If he should stay at home to
day for feare:/ No Caesar shall not
...Caesar shall go forth"

(Caesar is speaking)

§ 137 If shall is used to express not a definite personal wish, order, or command, but an action that is only generally intended; and if the subject acts or suffers something not because he feels a moral duty but because the future action is dependent on some arrangement or agreement, or is determined by the circumstances, then it is now usually replaced by be with the infinitive. The same is true of should. The force of should is very much weakened in the set phrase (now obsolete): as who should say 'as if he were going to say'. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1488, 1528, 1559.

Ado, II, ii, 1 (F and Q₁): "the Count(e) Claudio shal(l)
marry the daughter of Leonato"

AYL, II, iv, 88 (F): "What is he that shall buy his flocke
and pasture?"

WT, IV, iv, 795-796 (F): "the Curses he shall have, the
Tortures he shall feele, will
breake the back of Man"

Wiv., IV, iv, 45 (F): "What shall be done with him? What is
your plot?"

Wiv., III, i, 70 (F): "I warrant you, hee's the man should
fight with him"

Ado, I, iii, 64 (F): "there heard it agreed upon, that the
Prince should wooe Hero"

Shr., III, ii, 161 (F): "when the Priest/ Should aske if
Katherine should be his wife"

MM, I, ii, 182 (F): "This day, my sister should the
Cloyster enter"

R2, V, iv, 8 (F): "And speaking it, he wistly look'd on me,
As who should say, I would thou wer't the
man,/ That would divorce this terror from
my heart"

1H6, I, iv, 93 (F): "He beckens with his hand, and smiles
on me:/ As who should say, When I am
dead and gone,/ Remember to avenge me
on the French"

Tit., IV, ii, 121 (F): "Looke how the blacke slave smiles
upon the father;/ As who should say,
old Lad I am thine owne"

§ 138 A subjective doubt that arises because there are factors that contradict a judgment formed in accordance with the observation of the facts, or an uncertainty connected with inadequate or incomplete observation was formerly expressed, as it occasionally is today, by the hypothetical should. It should seem (appear) is now replaced by it would seem (appear). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1530, 1535.

MND, III, ii, 57 (Q₁): "So should a murtherer looke; so
dead, so grimme"

Mac., I, iii, 45 (F): "you should be Women,/ And yet your
Beards forbid me to interprete/ That
you are so"

H8, I, iv, 78 (F): "There should be one amongst'em by his
person/ More worthy this place then my
selfe"

Tim., V, iii, 1 (F): "By all description this should be the
place"

Rom., V, ii, 2 (F): "This same should be the voice of Frier
Iohn"

Tmp., II, ii, 90 (F): "I should know that voyce: It should
be, But hee is dround"

Oth., IV, i, 164 (F): "By Heaven, that should be my
Handkerchiefe."

Rom., V, i, 55 (F and Q₂): "As I remember(,) this should be
the house"

H8, IV, i, 40 (F): "That should bee/ The Duke of Suffolke"

H8, IV, ii, 109 (F): "You should be Lord Ambassador from
the Emperor"

H8, V, iv, 42 (F): "he should be a Brasier by his face"

MV, II, ii, 102 (F and Q₁): "It should seeme then that
Dobbins taile growes back(e)ward"

Tro., III, i, 39 (F): "It should seeme fellow, that thou
hast not seen the Lady Cressida"

MV, III, ii, 275 (F): "Besides, it should appeare, that if
he had/ The present money to discharge
the Iew,/ He would not take it"

WT, IV, iv, 372 (F): "this ancient Sir, whom (it should
seeme)/ Hath sometime lov'd"

Note. In questions, should with the meaning discussed above
is connected with can and could, since here a question is
asked about a possibility in the widest sense. Should in this
sense is found as early as the beginning of the 16th century.
Cf. F. T. Visser; Syntax, § 1536.

Tmp., II, ii, 69 (F): "where the diuill should he learne
our language?"

Wiv., IV, iii, 5 (F): "What Duke should that be comes so
secretly?"

Tmp., I, ii, 387 (F): "Where shold this Musick be?"

JC, I, ii, 142 (F): "What should be in that Caesar?"

TN, II, v, 105 (F): "To whom should this be?"

H8, III, ii, 203 (F): "What should this meane?"

139

Should is used in a subject or object clause when the verb of the main clause contains an element of intellectual concern. In early M.E. shall with the infinitive was used where the sequence of tenses demanded it, but this was disregarded from about the middle of the 14th century and sholde (should) was used invariably. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 315; F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 21; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1539, 1541.

Lr., II, iv, 1 (F): "'Tis strange that they should so depart
from home,/ And not send backe my
Messengers"

JC, I, ii, 129 (F): "it doth amaze me,/ A man of such a
feeble temper should/ So get the start
of the Maiesticke world"

JC, II, ii, 35 (F): "It seemes to me most strange that men
should feare"

TGV, I, ii, 19 (F): "'tis a passing shame,/ That I...Should
censure thus on lovely Gentlemen"

Wiv., II, ii, 134 (F): "'tis not good that children should
know any wickednes"

Tim., III, v, 2 (F): "'Tis necessary he should dye"

AYL, III, v, 14 (F): "'Tis pretty sure, and very probable,/ That eyes... Should be called tyrants"

Err., IV, iv, 6 (F): "That I should be attach'd in Ephesus,
...'twill sound harshly in her eares"

§ 140 The use of should to indicate a statement originating with somebody other than the speaker, for which the latter takes no responsibility, has become extremely rare, probably because of its ambiguity. It is now usually replaced by was said to. Cf. F. T. Visser, *Syntax*, § 1549.

AYL, III, ii, 182 (F): "But didst thou heare without wondering, how thy name should be hang'd and carved upon these trees?"

WT, IV, iv, 794 (F): "So 'tis said (Sir:) about his Sonne, that should have marryed a Shepheards Daughter."

Cym., V, v, 51 (F): "She did confesse she had/ For you a mortall Minerall, which being tooke,/ Should by the minute feede on life"

§ 141 Shakespeare sometimes uses shall in the sense of 'will have to' to refer to a necessary condition (examples under a)), cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1487. Shall is also used to indicate that something in the future has been arranged, and here it has the meaning 'is to' (example under b)), cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1488. It is found in relative clauses to show the result that is intended from an action (examples under c)), cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1516-7. In questions it sometimes means 'will be able to' (examples under d)), cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1509.

a)

MV, I, i, 116 (F and Q₁): "you shall seeke all day ere you
finde them"

Lr., V, iii, 22 (F): "He that parts us, shall bring a Brand
from Heaven"

b)

AYL, II, iv, 88 (F): "What is he that shall buy his flocke
and pasture?"

c)

H5, II, iv, 40 (F): "As Gardeners doe with Ordure hide those
Roots/ That shall first spring"

MV, II, viii, 45 (F): "imploy your chiefest thoughts/ To
courtship, and such faire ostents of
love/ As shall conveniently become
you there"

d)

Son. LXV, 3 (1609): "How with this rage shall beautie hold
a plea"

§ 142 Thou'se is used once instead of thou shalt, and I'se (ice) appears once instead of I shall. Both contractions are particularly characteristic of Northern dialects (cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, ~~3rd ed. (Berlin, 1880-1885)~~, I, 416) and result from the reduction of O.E. sceal to the "s" sound.

Rom., I, iii, 9 (F): "thou'se heare our counsell"
(Lady Capulet is speaking)

Lr., IV, vi, 246 (F): "ice try" (Q₁): "ile trie"
(in Edgar's dialect speech)

§ 143 Will is certainly used to a lesser extent than shall in the formation of the Future tense, but it occurs even in the first person (examples under a)). It evidently infiltrated into the first person from the second and third persons, where it was already quite usual in Chaucer. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 290-3; ^{F.T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1581, 1588.} The corresponding form in the Conditional is would, and this occurs frequently, especially in the first person singular, but it is often difficult to differentiate this clearly from the optative use (examples under b)). In modern times the use of would has further increased at the ^{expense} ~~use~~ of should, even in literature. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 315-7; F.T. Visser, Syntax, §§ ~~1581, 1588~~, 1608, 1612.

a) The Future formed with will:

MV, II, v, 52 (F): "Perhaps I will returne immediately"

Oth., V, ii, 197 (F): "Perchance Iago, I will ne're go home"

Err., IV, i, 39 (F): "Perchance I will be there as soone as
you"

Cor., IV, i, 21 (F): "Ile do well yet"

2H4, I, ii, 24 (F): "I will sooner have a beard grow in the
Palme of my hand, then he shall get
one on his cheeke"

1H6, IV, v, 30 (F): "There is no hope that ever I will stay,
If the first howre I shrinke and run
away"

R2, II, iii, 168 (F and Q₁): "It may be I will go with you"

Ado, I, i, 258 (F and Q₁): "thou wilt pro(o)ve a notable
argument"

Tmp., II, ii, 82 (F): "Thou do'st me yet but little hurt;
thou wilt anon"

Wiv., II, ii, 146 (F): "wilt thou after the expence of so
much money, be now a gainer?"

MM, I, ii, 115 (F): "you will bee considered"

Wiv., IV, iii, 2 (F): "the Duke himselfe will be to morrow
at Court"

Jn., III, iii, 5 (F): "this will make my mother die with
griefe"

R2, II, i, 212 (F): "What will ensue heereof, there's none
can tell"

TN, II, ii, 37 (F): "What will become of this?"

Jn., V, vi, 44 (F): "I doubt he will be dead, or ere I come"

JC, III, ii, 116 (F): "I feare there will a worse come in
his place"

JC, II, i, 194 (F): "it is doubtfull yet, / Whether Caesar
will come forth to day, or no"

JC, II, iv, 32 (F): Portia: "Why know'st thou any harme's
intended towards him?"

Soothsayer: "None that I know will be, /
Much that I feare may chance"

Wiv., I, iii, 82 (F): "we will thrive (Lads) we will thrive"

Ant., III, xiii, 188 (F): "We will yet do well"

Cor., I, i, 10 (F): "Let us kill him, and wee'l have Corne
at our owne price"

b) Would in the formation of the Conditional:

AYL, I, i, 136 (F): "for your love I would bee loth to
foyle him"

AYL, III, ii, 445-446 (F): Orlando: "I would not be cured,
youth."

Rosalind: "I would cure you, if
you would but call me
Rosalind"

Ado, II, iii, 118⁹ (F and Q₁): "I would have thought her
spirit(e) had been(e) beene
invincible against all
assaults of affection"

TGV, III, i, 110 (F): "I would resort to her by night"

TN, II, v, 4 (F): "Wouldst thou not be glad to have the
niggardly Rascally sheepe-biter, come by
some notable shame?"

Wiv., V, v, 40 (F): "He would never else crosse me thus"

Wiv., IV, v, 101 (F): "I warrant they would whip me with
their fine wits, till I were as
crest-falne as a dride-peare"

- § 144 Will (2nd pers. sing. wilt) is used in Shakespeare throughout the Present tense to express a person's will. He uses would 'wanted to' very seldom in affirmative statements. It has now been replaced in main clauses by wanted to, intended to, wished to, except when strongly stressed; but it is still very common in connection with not. Cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1565, 1572, 1574, 158
- Cym., I, i, 80 (F): "I will from hence to day"
- Tro., II, iii, 222 (F): "Ile let his humours bloud"
- 1H4, IV, ii, 11 (F): Falstaff: "Bid my Lieutenant Peto meete
me at the Townes end."
Bardolph: "I will Captaine: farewell."
- Ven., 232 (1593): "Feed where thou wilt"
- Tro., II, iii, 223 (F): "He will be the Physitian that
should be the patient"
- 1H4, I, iii, 140 (F): "He will (forsooth) have all my
Prisoners"
- Cym., I, iv, 187 (F): "wee will have these things set downe
by lawfull Counsell"
- 1H4, II, iv, 332 (F): "you will not touch the true Prince"
- Tit., IV, ii, 88 (F and Q₁): "will you kill your brother?"
- R2, III, ii, 80 (F): "All Soules that will be safe, flye
from my side"
- Tit., V, i, 44 (F): "whether would'st thou convay/ This
growing Image of thy fiend-like face?"
- 2H6, III, ii, 95 (F): "Knowing that thou wouldst have me
drown'd on shore"
- MM, V, i, 395-398 (F): "you may marvaile, why I...would not
rather/ Make rash remonstrance of
my hidden powre,/ Then let him be
so lost"
- Cym., I, i, 170 (F): "he would not suffer mee/ To bring him
to the Haven"

Note 1. The use of will and would with the meaning 'should wish, wish, want' in connection with a direct object is now obsolete. Cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 559, 561-2.

Ham., V, ii, 258 (F, Q₁, and Q₂): "I...will no reconcilement"

Jn., IV, ii, 39 (F): "what your Highnesse will"

WT, I, ii, 19⁴(F): "Ile no gaine-saying"

H5, IV, i, 32 (F): "I would no other company"

TN, I, v, 229 (F): "What would you?"

Lr., I, iv, 12 (F): "What would'st thou with us?"

TGV, II, i, 133 (F): "I will none of them"

Note 2. Will is found in Shakespeare as a weakened principal verb with various meanings.

a) Wish:

Tit., IV, ii, 82 (F and Q₁): "the mother wils it so"

Per., V, ii, 16 (Q₁): "wishes fall out as they'r wild"

LLL, II, i, 18 (F and Q₁): "much wil(l)ing to be counted wise"

b) Bid:

1H6, I, ii, 80 (F): "Gods Mother...Will'd me to leave my
base Vocation"

c) Invite:

Tit., V, i, 160 (F): "He craves a parly at your Fathers
house/ Willing you to demand your
Hostages"

See also A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon under will, p. 1370.

Note 3. The set phrase it will not be 'all is in vain' requires an explanation. In older English will ~~be~~ could be approximately equivalent to can 'to have the capacity'. ~~It is used thus in the Paston Letters and in Thomas More, of F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 21-2. Hence it~~ will not be originally means 'it will not come about', that is to say that what is aimed at will not be achieved - 'All (all effort) is in vain'.

1H6, I, v, 33 (F): "It will not be, retyre into your Trenches"

Ven., 607 (1593): "good Queene, it will not bee,/ She hath
assai'd as much as may be prov'd"

Jn., III, i, 298 (F): "Wil't not be?/ Will not a Calves-skin
stop that mouth of thine?"

Note 4. To express personal indifference towards a possible state or event the speaker may transpose the latter so that it appears to be dependent on another's will, whether this is represented by a person or a personified object or is quite

indefinite. In this way will sometimes takes on the meaning of may and expresses possibility in a wide sense (come what will).

H8, II, i, 65 (F): "(Be what they will) I heartily forgive'em"

Cor., V, i, 61 (F): "Speed how it will"

Rom., I, v, 38 (F and Q₂): "Come Pentycost as quick(e)ly as
it will"

Ham., IV, vii, 189 (F and Q₂): "Let shame say what it will"

Other examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1372.

§ 145 Will could formerly be used to indicate that the speaker did not necessarily share the view expressed or held by the person of whom it was used. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1573.

1H6, II, iii, 58 (F): "This is a Riddling Merchant for the nonce, / He will be here, and yet he is not here"

3H6, I, i, 230 (F): "Art thou King, and wilt be forc't?"

§ 146

Will as an expression not so much of will but of inclination or a wish is very common in Shakespeare in the optative form of the Preterite: would - (he would be above the clouds). Its use is now very limited, except in conditional complex sentences. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 317; ^{F.T. Visser, Syntax, §1604}

LLL, I, i, 185 (F and Q₁): "I would see his own(e) person
in flesh and blood"

AYL, II, i, 18 (F): "I would not change it"

Oth., III, iii, 393 (F): Iago: "You would be satisfied?"

Othello: "Would? Nay, and I will."

TGV, III, i, 123 (F): "When would you use it?"

Mac., I, v, 22-23 (F): "would'st not play false,/ And yet
would'st wrongly winne"

2H6, II, i, 15 (F): "hee would be above the Clouds"

R3, III, i, 122 (F): "would you have my Weapon, little Lord?"

Ham., IV, vii, 119-120 (Q₂): "that we would doe/ We should
doe when we would"

Err., I, i, 145 (F): "Which Princes would they may not
disanull"

Note 1. Will in the above sense sometimes has only a weak force or none at all, particularly in set forms like XX I'll tell you, I'll warrant, I'll be sworn, I'll assure you, I will be (make) bold to. Cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, §1585.

Ham., II, ii, 21 (F): "If it will please you/ To shew us so
much Gentry, and good will"

Cym., I, v, 72 (F): "Ile move the King/ To any shape of thy
Preferment, such/ As thou'lt desire"

Wiv., V, i, 21 (F): "I will tell you, he beate me greivously"

AYL, IV, i, 221 (F): "Ile tell thee Aliena, I cannot be out
of the sight of Orlando"

Wiv., IV, ii, 235 (F): "Ile warrant, they'l have him
publiquely sham'd"

MV, II, ii, 96 (F): "Ile be sworne if thou be Lancelet,
thou art mine owne flesh and blood"

Cor., II, i, 106 (F): "I will be bold to take my leave of you"

Cym., I, vi, 197 (F): "I will make bold/ To send them to you"

Tmp., V, i, 197 (F): "O, how odly will it sound, that I/
Must aske my childe forgivenessse?"
(= how strange it seems)

Note 2. The status of I would 'I should like', which seems to have been especially common in the first person in the literary language, may have been strengthened by set expressions like I would rather, I would fain, I would have with the accusative and the infinitive.

Ado, II, i, 335 (F and Q₁): "I would rather have one of
your fathers getting"

Ado, II, i, 383 (F and Q₁): "I would faine have it a match"

Ado, I, i, 212 (F and Q₁): "I would(e) have you thinke so"

MV, II, iii, 8 (F and Q₁): "I would not have my Father/ See
me (in) talke with thee"

Note 3. (I) would 'I should like' followed by a subjunctive clause is very common in Shakespeare. The use of would in the expressions I would to God, I would to heaven is noteworthy. The original form of the first expression is wold(e) god. After it was no longer customary to place the subject after the verb it seems that this developed into the modern formula I would to God, after the pattern of I wish to God, I pray to God, and wold(e) was interpreted as the first person and God was seen as a dative (O. Jespersen, Progress in Language, p. 240). Dr. Johnson (see A Dictionary of the English Language (1755) under would 8) recognized that would to God is a misunderstood form of would God. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 562.

TGV, I, ii, 50 (F): "I would I had ore-look'd the Letter"

Wiv., IV, v, 40 (F): "I would I could have spoken with the
Woman her selfe"

MM, IV, iv, 35 (F): "would yet he had lived"

Tim., IV, iii, 373 (F): "Would thou would'st burst"

AWW, I, ii, 52 (F): "Would I were with him"

R3, I, iii, 140 (F): "I would to God my Heart were Flint"

§ 147 A tendency or disposition in any direction usually reveals itself in a definite course of action if certain conditions exist. This is often expressed by a stressed will (children will play), showing the definite nature of the character and emotion, and indicating independence, obstinacy, or pertinacity. Similarly, will can be used with a lesser stress to express a routine action which arises from this characteristic temperament and which is only to be expected in the circumstances. Will and would in the third person meaning 'to be accustomed to' are common in Shakespeare, and still survive in this use today. ^{cf. F. T. Visser, *Syntax*, §§ 1570, 1594.}

Ham., I, ii, 257 (F): "foule deeds will rise,/ Though all
the earth orewhelm them to mens eies"

Ado., III, v, 36 (F and Q₁): "A good old man sir, he(e) will
be talking"

Tmp., II, ii, 35-36 (F): "when they will not give a doitt to
relieve a lame Begger, they will
lay out ten to see a dead Indian"

Shr., II, i, 250 (F): "Nor bite the lip, as angry wenches
will"

Mac., V, i, 81 (F): "infected mindes/ To their deafe pillowes
will discharge their Secrets"

Ham., V, i, 178 (F): "How long will a man lie'ith'earth ere
he rot?"

R3, III, i, 126 (F): "My Lord of Yorke will still be crosse
in talke"

2H6, III, i, 14 (F): "When every one will give the time of
day,/ He knits his Brow, and shewes
an angry Eye"

Ven., 1095-1097 (1593): "when he hath song,/ The Tygre would
be tame...If he had spoke, the
wolfe would leave his praie"

Note 4x. I should 'I was accustomed to' occurs once in Shakespeare. This use goes back to Old English.

2H6, III, i, 126 (F): "Pittie was all the fault that was in
me:/ For I should melt at an
Offenders teares"

§ 148 The expression will you nill you means 'whether you are willing or not': "will you, nill you, I will marry you" (Shr., II, i, 273 (F)).

§ 149

Would can be used as an optative referring to the present time with the meaning 'desire, wish for, want' (examples under a)). It is also found with the meaning 'ought to' (example under b)). (cf. F.T. Visser, Syntax, § 562.

a)

LLL, V, ii, 174 (F and Q₁): "What would these strange(r)s?"

MV, I, iii, 66 (Q₁): Antonio: "is hee yet possest/ How much
ye would?"

Shylock: "I, I, three thousand ducats."

b)

Ham., III, iii, 75 (F): "that would be scann'd"

§ 150

The forms wot, wo't, woo't (=wilt), and wooll (=will) occur only occasionally. They correspond to M.E. wolt and wol; the "l" is suppressed, as in N.E. would. Will, wilt, would, wouldst are sometimes contracted with the Personal Pronoun: I'll, thou'lt, thou'ldst, etc. ~~Still~~ Chill, chud for I will, Iwould are Southern dialect forms. Although they are now characteristic of Somerset (Prince L. L. Bonaparte in Phil. Soc. Trans. (1875-6⁽¹⁸⁷⁷⁾, 580) they were originally used all over the South (see H. Kökeritz, Shakespeare's Pronunciation (New Haven, 1953), p. 38). The initial sound of the contractions represents the form ich for I, characteristic of Southern M.E. For a discussion of Edgar's dialect see H. Kökeritz, Shakespeare's Pronunciation, pp. 38-39.

2H4, II, i, 63 (F): "Thou wilt not? thou wilt not?"

~~xxx~~ (Q₁): "thou wot, wot thou, thou wot,
wot ta"

Ham., V, i, 298 (F): "Woo't weepe? Woo't fight?"

(Q₁): "Wilt fight, wilt fast"

(Q₂): "Woo't weepe, woo't fight, woo't fast"

Ant., IV, ii, 7 (F): "Woo't thou fight well"

Ant., IV, ~~xxv~~, 59 (F): "woo't dye?"

2H4, III, ii, 308 (F): "These fellowes will doe well"

(Q₁): "These fellowes wooll doe well"

Ado, II, iii, 32 (F): "Ile none" (Q₁): "ile none"

MND, I, ii, 54 (F and Q₁): "Ile speake"

Mac., I, iii, 10 (F): "Ile doe, Ile doe, and Ile doe"

Lr., II, iv, 138 (F): "thou'lt not beleewe"

(Q₁): "thout not beleewe"

JC, III, iii, 20 (F): "you'l beare"

Ado, II, iii, 186 (F): "hee'l scorne it"

(Q₁): "heele scorne it"

Ado, II, iii, 136 (F): "shee'll be up "

(Q₁): "sheel be up"

Ado, I, iii, 77 (F): "Wee'll wait" (Q₁): "Weele wait"

Lr., III, iv, 9 (F): "Thou'dst shun" (Q₁): "thoud'st shun"

Lr., IV, vi, 240 (F): "Chill not let go Zir"

(Q₁): "Chill not let goe sir"

Lr., IV, vi, 250 (F): "Chill picke your teeth Zir"

(Q₁): "Chill pick your teeth sir"

Lr., IV, vi, 243 (F): "and 'chud ha'bin zwaggerd out of my
life"

(Q₁): "and chud have beene swaggar'd out
of my life"

§ 151

Stand with the function of an auxiliary verb in the sense of be was formerly quite common.

Jn., III, i, 173 (F): "Thou shalt stand curst, and excommunicate"

TGV, I, iii, 60 (F): "how stand you affected to his wish?"

Err., IV, i, 31 (F): "more/ Then I stand debted to this Gentleman"

R2, II, ii, 132 (F): "Wherein the king stands generally condemn'd"

MV, IV, i, 8 (F and Q₁): "since he stands obdurate"

§ 152 The Present tense of use with the prepositional infinitive, which has now been replaced by I am in the habit of, I am accustomed to, or by certain adverbs (usually, commonly, habitually), or is rendered in some other way, was still current as late as the 17th and 18th centuries. ~~It~~ It is found with periphrastic do in emphatic and negative statements. The Perfect I have used and the form I was used are also obsolete, but I have (had) been used, I used are still in use. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1333-4, 1336-7, 1339, 1341.

Tmp., II, i, 175 (F): "they alwayes use to laugh at nothing"

AYL, II, iii, 23 (F): "the lodging where you use to lye"

Ant., II, v, 32-33 (F): "we use/ To say, the dead are well"

TN, II, iv, 47 (F): "the free maides that weave their thred
with bones,/ Do use to chaunt it"

Rom., III, v, 191 (F and Q₂): "I do not use to iest"

(The earliest instance of this construction according to
F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1336)

Ham., II, ii, 48 (F): "or else this braine of mine/ Hunts
not the traile of Policie, so sure/
As I have us'd to do"

(Q₁): "or else this braine of mine/ Hunts
not the traine of policie so well/
As it had wont to doe"

(Q₂): "or els this braine of mine/ Hunts
not the trayle of policie so sure/
As it hath usd to doe"

2H4, V, ii, 114 (F): "Th'unstained Sword that you have us'd
to beare"

Ant., III, vii, 66 (F): "wee/ Have us'd to conquer"

Tro., III, iii, 71 (F and Q₁): "they were us'd to bend"

Cor., III, iii, 25-26 (F): "he hath bene us'd/ Ever to
conquer"

§ 153

After will, shall, must, let, be accompanied by an adverb or prepositional phrase the underlying idea of motion is very often not explicitly stated. This freedom, which is no longer acceptable in written English, can be observed throughout the whole of the 17th century and is found as early as Old English.

Jn., V, ii, 78 (F): "I will not backe"

Cym., I, ii, 37 (F): "Ile to my Chamber"

JC, III, i, 236 (F): "I will my selfe into the Pulpit first"

2H4, III, i, 108 (F): "Wee would (deare Lords) unto the
Holy-Land"

MND, II, i, 146 (F): "thou shalt not from this grove"

3H6, IV, v, 20 (F): "whether shall we then?"

AYL, I, ii, 227 (F): "If I had a thunderbolt in mine eie, I
can tell who should downe"

WT, IV, iv, 847 (F): "We must to the King"

Cym., I, vi, 199 (F): "I must aboard to morrow"

2H4, III, ii, 310 (F): "I must a dozen mile to night"

Jn., V, ii, 95 (F): "now it is halfe conquer'd, must I backe"

2H4, III, ii, 232 (F): "Come, let's to Dinner"

WT, IV, iv, 859 (F): "Let's before, as he bids us"

Wiv., V, ii, 16 (F): "Lets away"

AWW, III, ii, 71 (F): "Towards Florence is he?"

Note. This failure to express the concept of motion also occurs elsewhere: either because this is understood from the predicative verb and is clearly indicated in what follows, or because in a vivid description it is indicated only cursorily by a personal pronoun followed by an adverb.

Ant., III, i, 35 (F): "He purposeth to Athens"

Cor., IV, ii, 5 (F): "Bid them home"

H5, IV, i, 27 (F): "Desire them all to my Pavillion"

§ 154

Wot, an old Pret-Pres. is connected inflexionally with an ordinary Pres. (wot'st, wots) and also forms a new Pres. Part. wotting. Apart from the phrase to wit and the adverbs wittingly, unwittingly, all three of which are still found in the literary language, the form wit is rare in Shakespeare, though witting and wit do occur.

Rom., III, ii, 139 (F₁ and Q₂): "I wot well where he is"

R2, II, i, 250 (F and Q₁): "benevolences, and I wot not what"

Ant., I, v, 22 (F): "wot'st thou whom thou moov'st"

Cor., IV, i, 27 (F): "you wot well/ My hazards still have
beene your solace"

H8, III, ii, 122 (F): "wot you what I found"

Wiv., II, ii, 90 (F): "you may come and see the picture
(she sayes) that you wot of"

H5, IV, i, 299 (F): "in grosse braine little wots,/ What
watch the King keepes, to maintaine
(Q. the peace"

1H6, IV, vii, 55 (F): "We English Warriours wot not what it
meanes"

Luc., 1345 (1594): "(God wot) it was defect/ Of spirite"

WT, III, ii, 77 (F): "the Gods themselves/ (Wotting no
more then I) are ignorant"

1H6, II, v, 16 (F): "Swift-winged with desire to get a
Grave,/ As witting I no other comfort
have" (once)

Per., IV, iv, 31 (Q₁): "Nowe please you wit:/ The Epitaph
is for Marina writ" (once; Gower
is speaking)

AYL, V, i, 58 (F): "(to wit) I kill thee"

Ham., V, i, 11 (F): "If I drowne my selfe wittingly"

R3, II, i, 56 (Q₁): "if I unwittingly or in my rage,/ Have
ought committed"

(F): "If I unwillingly, or in my rage,/ Have
ought committed"

Note. The M.E. forms iwis (adjective) and iwisse (adverb), the first of which was used primarily as an adverbial neuter

E. Wörterbuch zu den altenglischen Sprachproben (Berlin, 1872)
 (Mätzner, ~~Spencer. Wtb.~~ under iwis, pp. 110, 111), were combined after the final "e" became silent in the 15th century in the single form iwis. Since there was no other adverb with the same initial sound, this isolated form, which, judging by the infrequency of its appearances in Shakespeare (only four examples), was very rare in his time, underwent various changes in meaning. The spelling I wis seems to indicate one such change. There was evidently a vague idea that the adverbial neuter iwis concealed a Pres. derived from the Pret. wist(ē) and it was therefore written I wis; but there is no other evidence for the existence of such a verb. (~~cf. A. Wright, The Merchant of Venice (Cambridge Ed.), p. 449, n. 6b).~~

MV, II, ix, 68 (F and Q₁): "There be fooles alive Iwis"

Shr., I, i, 62 (F): "I wis it is not halfe way to her heart"

R3, I, iii, 102 (F): "I wis your Grandam had a worser match"

(Q₁): "Iwis your Grandam had a worser match"

Per., II, Prol., 2 (Q₁): "Heere have you seene a mightie King,/ His child ~~ixix~~ I'wis to incest bring" (Gower is speaking)

§ 155

Quoth, followed by its subject, is used by Shakespeare as Pres. and Pret. and occurs most frequently in the 3rd P. Sing. Pret. (quoth you? once only, quoth I about a dozen times). It is used to quote someone else's words either ironically or jocularly (A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 934) and is particularly common as a Pret. in conjunction with a pronoun: quoth he (quoth-a, quoth a'), quoth she. Its position in the sentence varies: it usually follows the passage quoted, but sometimes it precedes it or is interpolated in the middle. It is an old Pret. derived from M.E. quath. The subject was often strongly accented (quath he), so that quath had only a slight sentence accent with the result that the rounding of the lips in the "w" sound was transferred to the vowel, which then became "o". Since it is now obsolete the pronunciation now corresponds to the spelling; hence it is normally spoken [kwouθ] with a long diphthong (see Sweet, NEGr, p. 420), but [kwɔθ] also occurs. The use of ~~NEGrxx~~ quoth in the Pres., as found in Shakespeare, was the result of the final "th" sound and the new Pret. formation quod (not found in Shakespeare).

Present:

1H4, II, i, 44 (F): "Lend mee thy Lanthorne (quoth-a)
marry Ile see thee hang'd first"
(Q₁): "lend me thy lanterne (quoth he)
marry ile see thee hangd first"

Tro., V, i, 83 (F): "sweet quoth-a?" (Q₁): "sweet quoth a"

Tmp., III, ii, 36 (F): "Lord, quoth he?"

LLL, IV, iii, 221 (F and Q₁): "Did they(,) quoth you?"

LLL, V, ii, 247 (F and Q₁): "Veale quoth the Dutch-man"

Preterite:

TGV, IV, iv, 28-31 (F): "friend (quoth I) you meane to
whip the dog: I marry doe I (quoth
he) you doe him the more wrong
(quoth I)"

Luc., 652 (1594): "Thou art, quoth shee, a sea, a soveraigne
King"

R3, II, iv, 12 (F): "I, quoth my Unkle Glouster"

Rom., I, iii, 55 (F and Q₂): "Yea quoth my husband,
fall(')st upon thy face"

Occasionally precedes the quotation:

Luc., 253 (1594): "Quoth he, shee tooke me kindlie by the
hand"

Luc., 575 (1594): "Quoth shee, reward not Hospitalitie"

§ 156

Hight 'is called' occurs four times in Shakespeare as a characteristic archaism, always as a Present, never as a ¹⁸¹Preterite, see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 359. For details of the origin of this form see ^{B.}ten Brink, Chaucers Sprache ^{und Verskunst (Leipzig, 1920),} pp. 98, 99, § 157; ~~Bülbring, Ablaut st. Zeitw., p. 109;~~ Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II (Tübingen, 1962); 249-250.

LLL, I, i, 171 (F): "This childe of fancie that Armado
hight"

LLL, I, i, 258 (F): "which as I remember, hight Costard"

MND, V, i, 140 (F and Q₁): "This grizly beast (which Lyon
hight by name)"

Per., IV, Prol., 18 (Q₁): "this Maid/ Hight Philoten"
(Gower is speaking)

§ 157 The form methoughts, used in the 17th century and the first half of the 18th century (see OED), occurs several times in Shakespeare. It has been explained as an imitation of methinks. The basis of this seems to be the M.E. Participle ȝepūht. (See Bosworth-Toller under ȝerþyncan.) Methoughts survived (as a parallel to methought) partly because methink and methinks existed in Early New English as parallel forms of the Pres. Indicative. Cf. F. T. Visser, An historical syntax of the English language, § 32.

WT, I, ii, 154 (F): "Looking on the Lynes/ Of my Boyes face,
me thoughts I did requoyle/ Twentie
three yeeres"

R3, I, iv, 9 (F): "Me thoughts that I had broken from the
Tower"

R3, I, iv, 24 (F): "Me thoughts, I saw a thousand fearfull
wrackes"

(Q₁): "Me thought I sawe a thousand fearefull
wracks"

MV, I, iii, 70 (F and Q₁): "Me thoughts you said, you
neither lend nor borrow/ Upon
advantage"

Impersonal verbs and constructions

§ 158

A number of impersonal verbs have become obsolete or archaic since Shakespeare's time (examples under a)), or else they are no longer current in an impersonal construction (examples under b)). In New English there is a remarkably strong preference for personal constructions, which had in some instances progressed so far by Shakespeare's time that older impersonal constructions had either been completely abandoned or are no longer recognizable as such with any certainty. Thus Shakespeare uses both I like and it likes me, but only the form he list is found, and not him list, as formerly. Similarly I were better go is found, but not the older form me were better go. The transition to personal constructions has various causes, the main factors being the decline of inflexions and the restrictions imposed by word-order. Since the 15th century the inflexional difference between the nominative and dative of the noun had gradually disappeared, so that very often an originally impersonal construction could not be distinguished from a personal one: "The better, that your Lordship please to aske" (R3, III, ii, 99 (F)); "The better that it please your Lo: to aske" (ibid. (Q₁)). Further development in this direction resulted from the fact that you was the same in the nominative and the dative and the pronoun it was frequently suppressed, so that "If you shall please so" (AWW, III, v, 46 (F)) can be understood as being derived from if you it shall please so, especially if you is stressed. Another factor may have been the fact that both personal and impersonal verbs were sometimes juxtaposed in the same construction: "This aunswer Alexander both lyked and rewarded" (Lyly, Euphues and his England); "What so thy minde affectes or fancie likes" (Marlowe, Edward II, 170 (Q₁)). But the phonetic similarity between personal and impersonal verbs that are related in meaning is of much greater importance in this matter. For example there can be no doubt that the progress of the personal construction of like was influenced by love. Cf. O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (London, 1894), p. 216 ff.; H. Spies, Studien zur Geschichte des englischen

a)

TN, II, i, 15 (F): "it charges me in manners, the rather to
expresse my selfe"

(= it is incumbent upon me)

Oth., II, iii, 49 (F): "Ile do't, but it dislikes me!"

H8, II, iii, 103 (F): "it faints me/ To thinke what followes"

H5, II, iv, 11 (F): "It fit us then to be as provident,/ As
feare may teach us"

Tro., IV, ii, 52 (F and Q₁): "It doth import him much to
speake with me"

(= it is of importance to him)

AYL, II, i, 22-25 (F): "it irkes me the poore dapled fooles
...Should in their owne confines
with forked heads/ Have their round
hanches goard"

R3, I, ii, 220 (F): "much it ioyes me too,/ To see you are
become so penitent"

~~it~~

TN, V, i, 295 (F): "it skilles not much when they are
deliver'd"

(= it matters not greatly, cf. W. W. Skeat, Etymological
Dictionary under skill).

2H6, III, i, 281 (F): "It skills not greatly who impugnes
our doome"

Cym., V, v, 80 (F): "Sufficeth,/ A Roman, with a Romans
heart can suffer"

H5, IV, iii, 26 (F): "It yernes me not, if men my Garments
weare" (= it grieves me not)

b) Like:

Tro., V, ii, 101-102 (Q₁): Diomedes: "I doe not like this
fooling"

Thersites: "Nor I by Pluto; but
that that likes not
you, pleases me best."

Jn., II, i, 533 (F): "It likes us well young Princes: close
your hands"

MM, II, i, 33 (F): Angelo: "Where is the Provost?"

Provost: "Here if it like your honour."

Like is found in personal constructions as early as the middle of the 14th century. See W. van der Gaaf, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English, ^{linguistische Forschungen, 14} (Heidelberg, 1904), p. 68.

Please is often used personally by Shakespeare:

Shr., V, ii, 178 (F): "if he please, / My hand is readie"

AWW, II, iii, 164 (F): "We please to have it grow"

The impersonal construction also occurs:

Ado, III, v, 21 (F and Q₁): "It pleases your worship to say so"

Shr., Ind., i, 77 (F): "An't please your Honor"

List, originally used impersonally (see H. Spies, Studien zur Geschichte des englischen Pronomens im 15. und 16. Jahrhundert (~~Halle, 1897~~), p. 263 f.), occurs in Shakespeare only in personal constructions:

Wiv., II, ii, 124-125 (F): "goe to bed when she list, rise
when she list, all is as she will"

H8, II, ii, 22 (F): "Turnes what he list"

1H6, I, v, 22 (F): "conquers as she lists"

Ven., 564 (1593): "While she takes all she can, not all she
listeth"

The uninflected form of the third person singular of the Present indicative, in which the verb usually appears, is explained from the corresponding ~~form~~ O.E. form lyst (for lyst(e)~~þ~~, by the assimilation of "þ" to "t").

Ail. The personal construction of ail (found as early as 1425), which is the only form used by Shakespeare (twice), failed to survive, in the opinion of O. Jespersen (Progress in Language (~~London, 1894~~), p. 223 f.), because of the popularity of the formula "what ails him?".

AWW, II, iv, 6 (F): "what do's she ayle"

WT, III, iii, 83 (F): "what ayl'st thou, man?"

There are also traces of the impersonal thinks 'seems' (surviving in methinks, Preterite methought): "Dooes it not thinke thee stand me now uppon?" (Ham., V, ii, 63 (Q₂)),

"Does it not, think'st thee, stand me now upon" (ibid. (F)); this seems to indicate a confusion between thinks thee, me thinks, thinkst thou, and I think (O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (London, 1894)³, p. 222). A similar case occurs in: "Where it think'st best unto your Royall selfe" (R3, III, i, 63 (F)) - but Q₁ has: "Where it seemes best unto your royall selfe".

The form methoughts, which occurs occasionally, is derived from the O.E. form is me ȝefūht (see Bosworth-Toller under ge-pyncean), which, under the influence of methinks and methought, later developed into methoughts.

WT, I, ii, 154 (F): "me thoughts I did requoyle/ Twentie
three yeeres"

R3, I, iv, 9 (F): "Me thoughts that I had broken from the
Tower"

R3, I, iv, 24 (F): "Me thoughts, I saw a thousand fearful
wrackes"

(Q₁): "Me thought I sawe a thousand fearefull
wracks"

R3, I, iv, 58 (F): "With that (me thought) a Legion of foule
Fiends/ Inviron'd me"

(Q₁): "With that me thoughts a legion of foule
fiends/ Environd me about"

MV, I, iii, 70 (F and Q₁): "Me thoughts you said, you
neither lend nor borrow"

(The only examples of methoughts)

Another factor in the change from the type methinketh to I think is the fact that formerly myself, yourself, etc. could be either the subject or the object, so that in myself think(e)th the function of myself was uncertain, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 24. Cf. also § 157¹⁵⁷ and F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 43.

Chance is found in a personal construction as early as 1400 (OED under chance). In the second half of the 16th century the personal use definitely prevailed over the impersonal (H. Spies, Studien zur Geschichte des englischen Pronomens in 15. und 16. Jahrhundert (Halle, 1897), p. 259. In Shakespeare

the verb is used both personally and impersonally.

MM, III, ii, 271 (F): "if he chance to faile"

1H6, II, i, 31 (F): "if it chance the one of us do faile"

Happen is used by Shakespeare both personally and impersonally:

R2, IV, i, 330 (F and Q₁): "What ever I shall happen to
devise"

Tim., III, ii, 52 (F): "How unluckily it hapned, that I
shold Purchase"

AWW, III, ii, 1 (F): "It hath happen'd all, as I would have
had it"

Traces of the transition to the personal construction can be observed from the first half of the 14th century (W. van der Gaaf, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English (Heidelberg, 1904), p. 122).

c) Impersonal and personal constructions.

The following sentence: "Me rather had my Heart might feele your Love,/ Then my unpleas'd Eye see your Courtesie" (R2, III, iii, 192 (F)) is notable because it shows the remains of an impersonal construction which gave rise to I had rather because of the confusion of forms; apart from this Shakespeare uses the personal construction:

Wiv., III, iii, 130 (F): "I had rather then a thousand
pound he were out of the house"

MV, I, ii, 144 (F and Q₁): "I had rather he(e) should
shrive me(e) then wive me(e)"

Wiv., III, iv, 90 (F): "I had rather be set quick i'th earth"

Cym., II, i, 20 (F): "I had rather not be so Noble as I am"

Oth., II, iii, 221 (F): "I had rather have this tongue cut
from my mouth,/ Then it should do
offence to Michael Cassio"

Oth., I, iii, 191 (F): "I had rather to adopt a Child, then
get it"

The origin of this is an impersonal construction in which lever (liever) (comparative of N.E. lief) takes the place of rather: Me were lever go; it was very common in the 14th and 15th centuries. About 1300 another construction appeared of

the type: I had lever go, which expressed approximately the same idea in a personal form; it is the predecessor of the modern type: I had rather go. Here have is a principal verb. In M.E. the sentence: I have him lief had the sense of 'I hold him dear'; hence I hadde it liever must have had the meaning 'I should prefer it'. If it is replaced by an object clause the result is ~~the~~ a construction of the type: I hadde lever that he were ~~lief~~ ded. If the subject is the same in the main clause and the subordinate clause the latter can be replaced by an infinitive. About 1530 lever (liever), by then obsolete, was replaced by rather, and this gave rise to the modern constructions, which by Shakespeare's time had become very common. The example ~~above~~ taken from R2, III, iii, 192 represents a mixture of the personal and impersonal constructions

Although the comparative liever is no longer found in Shakespeare, he still quite commonly uses I had as lief (liever), which is now obsolete in the literary language:

JC, I, ii, 95 (F): "I had as lief not be, as live"

Rom., II, iv, 215 (Q₂): "she good soule had as leewe see a
tode, a very tode as see him"

AYL, III, ii, 269 (F): "I had as lief have beene my selfe
alone"

The form I had rather, which first appeared in the middle of the 15th century, completely replaced the older I had lever in the 16th and encroached upon I would rather, a construction found about two centuries earlier, so that it came to be believed that the latter had derived from the former (W. van der Gaaf, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English (Heidelberg, 1904), pp. 47, 51) and that it was an erroneous expansion of I'd rather. But would in would rather is the Preterite subjunctive of will, so that I would rather originally meant: 'I would rather wish to'. Would occurs eight times in conjunction with rather in the First Folio (W. van der Gaaf, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English (Heidelberg, 1904), p. 50). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 40.

R3, III, vii, 161 (F): "I would rather hide me from my
Greatnesse"

(Q₁): "I had rather hide me from my
greatnes"

2H6, III, i, 297 (F): "I would rather have lost my Life
betimes,/ Then bring a burthen of
dis-honour home"

Err., II, ii, 36 (F): "Sconce call you it?...I had rather have
it a head"

Attention may be drawn here to a closely related impersonal construction, which is already found in O.E. and M.E., and from which there developed later a personal construction: from me were better go there arose I were better go (~~see also § 293b~~). The latter form was common in Shakespeare but is now obsolete:

2H4, I, ii, 103 (F): "thou wer't better be hang'd"

Jn., IV, iii, 95 (F): "Thou wer't better gaul the divell"

2H4, I, ii, 246 (Q₁): "I were better to be eaten to death"

AYL, IV, i, 73 (F): "you were better speake first"

AYL, III, iii, 92 (F): "I were better to bee married of him"

TN, II, ii, 27 (F): "she were better love a dreame"

A form like you were better go allows of both personal and impersonal interpretations and encourages the former. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 41. A similar development is responsible for the construction I were best..., he were as good...:

Cym., III, vi, 19 (F): "I were best not call"

TGV, I, iii, 24 (F): "whether were I best to send him?"

MM, III, ii, 38 (F): "he were as good go a mile on his
errand"

Cf. also:

Cym., III, ii, 79 (F): "Madam, you're best consider"

Cf. O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (London, 1894), § 180;

F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 42.

Reflexive Verbs

§ 159 A number of verbs that were used reflexively in Elizabethan English can no longer be used in this way, and are often obsolete in their original reflexive sense altogether. The modern language much prefers the intransitive form: I retire has taken the place of I retire me and I retire myself. Cf. § 307; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 123-5.

Luc., 598 (1594): "To all the Host of Heaven I complaine me"

R2, I, ii, 42 (Q₁): "Where then may I complaine my selfe?"

H5, III, vi, 180 (F): "Beyond the River wee'le encampe our selves"

TN, IV, ii, 104 (F): "endeavour thy selfe to sleepe"

R3, I, iv, 123 (F): "How do'st thou feele thy selfe now?"

TN, V, i, 286 (F): "now I remember me"

Oth., V, ii, 10 (F_{and Q₁}): "Should I repent me"

Ant., III, iii, 42 (F): "I repent me much/ That I so harried him"

Cor., III, iii, 44 (F): "If you submit you to the peoples voices"

Temp., V, i, 310 (F): "And thence retire me to my Millaine"

Cor., I, iii, 30 (F): "give me leave to retire my selfe"

Tim., I, ii, 159 (F): "I doubt me"

R2, III, ii, 67 (F): "I feare (my Noble Lord)" (~~see here § 307c~~)

H5, III, vi, 168 (F): "bid thy Master well advise himselfe"

Mac., III, i, 138 (F): "resolve your selves apart"

AYL, I, ii, 196 (F): "I confesse me much guiltie"

1H6, IV, ii, 8 (F): "Ile withdraw me, and my bloody power"

Oth., IV, i, 57 (F_{and Q₁}): "Do(you) withdraw your selfe a little while"

Per., I, iv, 1 (Q₁): "shall wee rest us heere"

AYL, II, vii, 15 (F): "I met a foole,/ Who laid him downe, and bask'd him in the Sun"

The sentence type "The book sells well"
(Cf. here K. F. Sundén, A category of predicational change in English, (Uppsala, 1916))

§ 160 The use of a transitive predicative verb that has developed an intransitive meaning (the book sells well), which is very common in the present-day language, is also found in Shakespeare. Depending on the original sense of the transitive verb and the possible meaning it can have in relation to the subject in a particular clause, it can indicate a state, a condition of development, an ability or attribute, permission of an action or the result of one. The construction, which has its roots in Old English, appears in various forms. Its development was furthered by the decline of inflexions, the coincidence of forms (O.E. sencan and sincan both became N.E. sink), and by the operation of analogies connected with this. Other factors were parallel phenomena taken over from French, the influence on the verb of other verbs that were related in meaning, and various associations of a subjective nature. Allowance must also be made for the disappearance in M.E. of weorþan and for the lack of a satisfactory substitute. Get first became extensively used as an inchoative auxiliary verb in New English; become belongs chiefly to the literary language and is not common in everyday conversation. This very useful construction has a long and complex history of development.

The intransitive sense of the verb becomes especially clear when the transitive predicative verb can also be regarded as a causative. The reason for this is that many verbs that were originally causative later developed in such a way that they coincided in form with denominatives with the same stem, so that now, for example, the verb harden can mean either 'to make hard' or 'to become hard', and the participle hardened can mean 'made hard' or 'become hard'. The ideas of being and becoming, of state and action, have been closely related in the Past participle of intransitive verbs since Old English. Hence the meaning of the corresponding active form of the verb can also fluctuate according to the circumstances of the case, so

that a passive and inchoative (or reflexive) interpretation is possible. In a sentence like the following: "gluttonlike she feeds, yet never filleth" (Ven., 548 (1593)) the Present tense form can be understood to mean 'is filled' or 'is full'. The development of modern usage was also helped by the connection in Early New English of the old gerund: the bucket is a-filling with the Present participle: the bucket is filling, which provided a link with the Present tense form: the bucket fills.

The reflexive interpretation of the predicative verb depends very much on the nature of the subject and of the action. In a sentence like the mists divided the reflexive idea prevails, but on the other hand in the window opened it depends entirely on the specific interpretation of the event and the attendant circumstances whether the verb means 'was opened' or 'opened of its own accord'. Nowadays the predicative verb often involves the idea of it being possible to do something. This is usually more exactly defined: "colours that do not wash well"; "this rule reads both ways"; "this test applies to every supposition" (cf. K. F. Sundén, A-category-of-predicational-change-in-English (Uppsala, 1916), p. 478 ff.).

Causative and inchoative meanings of the verb are now found chiefly in words in "-ify": beautify 'make beautiful, become beautiful'; gasify 'make gaseous, become gaseous', cf. also words like magnify, mollify.

As well as Germanic verbs, verbs of Latin-Romance origin like dissolve, resolve, consume are found in this class. Although in the case of some French loan-words, as for example arrange and join, both transitive and intransitive uses existed in Old French (K. F. Sundén, A-category-of-change-in-predicational-change-in-English (Uppsala, 1916), p. 260), the original mode of use of such verbs is of less importance than the fact that at the end of the M.E. period there were many verbs with both transitive and intransitive meanings, as a result of coincidence of forms and new formations, and these were imitated by the Romance words. The association of meaning

and use played an important role, especially when the verbs were phonetically similar. Thus blanch (from Fr. blanchir) imitated bleach ~~xx~~ 'make white, become white' and acquired the secondary meaning 'become white'.

Some causative verbs like to bold, to bolden are found in two forms. Shakespeare is inconsistent in his use, using sometimes the one form sometimes the other. Cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 24.

a) Passive:

AWW, I, i, 172 (F): "like the brooch & the toothpick, which
were not now"

b) Inchoative or passive:

Mac., V, iii, 3 (F): "Till Byrnane wood remove to Dunsinane,/
I cannot taint with Feare"

Rom., I, ii, 49 (F): "One desparate greefe, cures with an
others languish"

Son. XXXIII, 14 (1609): "Suns of the world may staine, whē
heavens sun staineth"

LLL, II, i, 48 (F): "If vertues glosse will staine with any
soile"

1H4, II, iv, 84 (F): "your white Canvas doublet will sulley"

c) Inchoative or reflexive:

Ven., 565 (1593): "What waxe so frozen but dissolves with
tempring"

Jn., V, iv, 25 (F): "even as a forme of waxe/ Resolveth
from his figure 'gainst the fire?"

1H6, I, ii, 133-135 (F): "Glory is like a Circle in the
Water,/ Which never ceaseth to
enlarge it selfe,/ Till by broad
spreading, it disperse to naught"

1H6, V, iv, 92 (F): "Breake thou in peeces, and consume to
ashes"

Luc., 560 (1594): "though marble were with rayning"

Ven., 548 (1593): "gluttonlike she feeds, yet never filleth"

c) Reflexive:

Ant., III, xiii, 171 (F): "our sever'd Navie too/ Have knit
again"

Pers., II, iv, 58 (Q₁): "When Peeres thus knit, a Kingdome
ever stands"

Cym., V, v, 345-347 (F): "Their deere losse,/ The more of
you 'twas felt, the more it shap'd/
Unto my end of stealing them"

Luc., 1737 (1594): "it doth devide/ In two slow rivers"

Ven., 451 (1593): "Once more the rubi-colour'd portall opend"

Cor., I, iv, 19 (F): "They'le open of themselves"

Tmp., III, ii, 150 (F): "The clouds methought would open"

d) Reflexive with admissive sense:

Tro., I, iii, 360 (F): "Let us (like Merchants) shew our
fowlest Wares,/ And thinke perchance
they'l sell"

Wiv., I, iii, 18 (F): "an old Cloake, makes a new Ierkin"

e) Causative:

Lr., V, i, 26 (Q₁): "It touches us, as France invades our
land/ Not bolds the King"

AYL, II, vii, 91 (F): "Art thou thus bolden'd man by thy
distress?"

Tro., V, viii, 7 (F ~~and Q₁~~): "Even with the vaile and darkning
of the Sunne"

(Q₁): "Even with the vaile and darkning
of the Sunne"

Ado., II, i, 24 (F and Q₁): "I shall lessen Gods sending that
way"

Lr., V, i, 19 (Q₁): "I had rather loose the battaile, then
that sister should loosen him and mee"

Tit., II, iii, 243 (F and Q₁): "I will not loose againe"

R2, III, ii, 38 (F): "the Globe, that lights the lower World"

Tit., II, iii, 227 (F): "A precious Ring, that lightens all
the Hole"

Cym., I, vi, 201 (F): "I shall short my word/ By length'ning
my returne"

PP, 210 (1612): "Short night to night, and length thy selfe
to morrow"

Ado., III, ii, 106 (F and Q₁): "circumstances shortned"

Tit., I, i, 166 (F): "Kind Rome,/ That hast thus lovingly
reserv'd/ The Cordiall of mine age to
glad my hart"

Oth., III, iii, 430 (F): "this may helpe to thicken other
proofes"

WT, I, ii, 171 (F): "Thoughts, that would thicke my blood"

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

- § 161 Shakespeare uses many verbs transitively that are now intransitive (see § ¹⁶²630), but there are comparatively few instances where he uses a verb intransitively that is now regarded as transitive.
- Lr., I, ii, 179 (F): "it would scarsely alay" (= abate)
- 3H6, I, iv, 146 (F): "when the Rage allayes, the Raine begins"
- Ant., I, iii, 97 (F): "Since my becommings kill me, when
they do not/ Eye well to you" (= look)
- TGV, V, iv, 7 (F): "O thou that dost inhabit in my brest"
- Err., IV, iii, 11 (F): "lapland Sorcerers inhabite here"
- Ham., I, v, 187 (F and Q₂): "what so poore a man as Hamlet
is,/ May doe t'expresse his
love and fr(i)ending to you(,)/
God willing shall not lack(e)"
- Mac., III, ii, 53 (F): "Whiles Nights black Agents to their
Prey's doe rowse"
- Cor., V, iii, 13 (F): "Though I shew'd sowrely to him"
(= appeared)
- Lr., I, iv, 265 (F): "this our Courte infected with their
manners,/ Shewes like a riotous Inne"
- Lr., I, iv, 248 (F): "his Notion weakens"
- Lr., II, iv, 212 (F): "No, rather I abiure all roofes, and
chuse/ To wage against the enmity
oth'ayre"

§ 162

In contrast to modern usage many verbs in Shakespeare are combined directly with a noun even when this cannot be the direct object of a verbal action (examples under a)). Today in such cases either a preposition is used, or the verb in question is now obsolete in a transitive use (examples under b)). Furthermore, the number of verbs that can be used causatively is much smaller than it was formerly (examples under c)).

a)

JC, I, ii, 110 (F): "ere we could arrive the Point propos'd"

Cor., II, iii, 189 (F): "arriving/ A place of Potencie"

Tit., V, iii, 169 (F): "Friends, should associate Friends,
in Greefe and Wo"

Cor., II, i, 224 (F): "she chats him" (= of him)

3H6, II, ii, 73 (F): "I would your Highnesse would depart
the field"

Mac., V, viii, 13 (F): "Dispaire thy Charme" (= despair of)

AYL, II, v, 34 (F): "he hath bin all this day to looke you"
(= look for)

Lr., III, iii, 15 (F): "I will looke him, and privily
relieve him"

(Q₁): "I will seeke him, and/ Privily
releeve him"

R2, III, i, 3 (F and Q₁): "your soules must part your bodies"

Per., V, iii, 37 (Q₁): "when wee with teares parted
Pentapolis"

H5, II, ii, 159 (F): "Which in sufferance heartily will
reioyce"

R2, III, ii, 163 (F): "Scoffing his State, and grinning at
his Pompe" (rare)

Lr., II, ii, 88 (F): "Smoile you my speeches, as I were a
Foole?" (isolated case)

H8, IV, ii, 32 (F): "give me leave to speake him" (= describe)

Ham., V, ii, 24 (F and Q₂): "to stay the grinding of the
Axe" (= wait for)

TGV, II, ii, 13 (F): "My father staies my coming"

R3, III, ii, 122 (F): "I stay Dinner there"

R2, V, i, 46 (F): "the sencelesse Brands will sympathize/
The heavie accent of thy moving Tongue"

Dative not indicated:

Tmp., I, ii, 122 (F): "This King of Naples...hearkens my
Brothers suit"

JC, IV, i, 41 (F): "and now Octavius,/ Listen great things"

Ado, III, i, 12 (F): "To listen our purpose"

(Q₁): "To listen our propose"

Ham., I, iii, 30 (F): "you list his Songs"

Lr., V, iii, 181 (F): "List a breefe tale"

b)

Lr., II, iv, 144 (F): "I cannot thinke my Sister in the
least/ Would faile her Obligation"
(= fail to fulfill)

Ado, V, i, 291 (F and Q₁): "if your love/ Can labour aught
in sad invention" (= work)

R3, I, iv, 253 (F and Q₁): "That he would labour my
delivery" (= effect)

R3, III, i, 83 (F and Q₁): "I morallize two meanings in one
word"

AYL, II, i, 44 (F): "Did he not moralize this spectacle"
(= expound)

MV, IV, i, 35 (F and Q₁): "I have possest your grace of
what I purpose"

TN, II, iii, 149 (F): "possesse us, tell us something of
him"

Lr., II, iv, 25 (F and Q₁): "Resolve me with all modest hast(e)"

Lr., I, i, 163 (F): "Thou swear.st thy Gods in vainé"

2H4, III, ii, 204 (F): "I cannot tarry dinner" (= wait for)

Wiv., IV, v, 21 (F): "a Bohemian-Tartar taries the comming
downe of thy fat-woman"

c) Causative use:

Cym., V, v, 255 (F): "which being tane, would cease/ The
present powre of life"

Tim., II, i, 16 (F): "be not ceast/ With slight deniall"

Luc., 507 (1594): "Which like a Faulcon towring in the skies,
Cowcheth the fowle below with his wings
shade"

Rom., I, iv, 107-110 (F and Q₂): "Some consequence...Shall...
expire the te(a)rme/ Of a
despised life"

MV, II, i, 9 (F and Q₁): "this aspect of mine/ Hath feared
the valiant"

MND, V, i, 143 (F and Q₁): "as she fled, her mantle she did
fall" (= dropped)

Ant., III, xi, 69 (F): "Fall not a teare I say"

AYL, I, i, 124 (F): "many yong Gentlemen...fleet the time
carelesly"

Ado, IV, i, 31 (F and Q₁): "you learn(e) me noble thankfulnes"

MND, I, i, 4 (F and Q₁): "She lingers my desires"
(= protracts)

Tro., V, x, 9 (F and Q₁): "linger not our sure destructions on"

Lr., I, i, 236 (F and Q₁): "not to have it,/ Hath lost me
in your liking"
(= caused me to lose)

Cor., V, i, 18 (F): "I minded him, how Royall 'twas to
pardon" (= reminded)

H5, IV, iii, 13 (F): "I doe thee wrong, to mind thee of it"

R3, III, iv, 25 (F): "I trust,/ My absence doth neglect no
great designe" (= cause to be neglected)

2H6, III, ii, 100 (F): "thy flinty heart...Might in thy
Pallace, perish Elianor" (= destroy)

Ant., V, ii, 85 (F): "when he meant to quaille, and shake
the Orbe" (= make to quail)

Cor., I, ix, 6 (F): "where Ladies shall be frightened,/ And
gladly quak'd" (= made to quake)

Tmp., II, ii, 71 (and 79)(F): "if I can recover him"
(= restore)

AWW, III, ii, 22 (F): "shee hath recovered the king"

Jn., III, iv, 96 (F): "Remembets me of all his gracious parts"
(= remembers = reminds)

Tmp., I, ii, 243 (F): "Let me remember thee what thou hast
promis'd"

R2, II, ii, 46 (F): "That he our hope, might have retyr'd
his power"

Lr., III, iv, 122 (F): "Hee...squints the eye"
(Q₁): "he...squemes the eye"

Cym., V, v, 398 (F): "Let's...smoake the Temple with our
Sacrifices"

R2, IV, i, 94 (F): "Streaming the Ensigne of the Christian
Crosse"

Related cases:

MV, III, ii, 269 (F): "a gaping wound/ Issuing life blood"

Wiv., II, ii, 157 (F): "such Broomes...that ore'flowes such
liquor"

2H6, IV, vi, 4 (F): "I charge and command, that of the Cities
cost/ The pissing Conduit run nothing
but Clarret Wine"

JC, III, ii, 193 (F): "at the Base of Pompeyes Statue/
(Which all the while ran blood)"

Luc., 472 (1594): "Who ore the white sheet peers her whiter
chin" (= lets appear)

Note 1. The chief causative verbs in N.E. are have, make,
order, cause (literary language) and verbs formed from
adjectives with the suffix "-en" (lighten).

TGV, I, ii, 25 (F): "would'st thou have me cast my love on him?"

TN, V, i, 49 (F): "I would not have you to thinke"

Son. CXXXVIII, 12 (1609): "age in love, loves not t'have
yeares told"

Err., II, ii, 10 (F): "Your Mistresse sent to have me home
to dinner?"

MM, Err., V, i, 74 (F): "Unquiet meales make ill digestions"

MM, II, ii, 122 (F): "As makes the Angels weepe"

Luc., 68 (1594): "their ambition makes them still to fight"

Tmp., I, ii, 26-29 (F): "The direfull spectacle of the
wracke...I have...So safely ordered"

MM, III, ii, 21 (F): "The evill that thou causest to be done"

1H6, I, i, 67 (F): "These news would cause him once more
yeeld the Ghost"

Ado, V, iv, 121 (F and Q₁): "we may lighten our own hearts,
and our wives heeles"

Note 2. In the present-day language flee and banish sometimes take the object without the preposition from. This construction also occurs in Shakespeare; he also very often uses fly (= flee) in the same way. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 697.

Cor., III, iii, 101 (F): "wee/ (Ev'n from this instant)
banish him our Citie"

1H4, II, iv, 525 (F): "banish not him thy Harryes companie"
(Common)

2H4, I, i, 18 (F): "Yong Prince Iohn,/ And Westmerland, and
Stafford, fled the Field"

3H6, II, i, 19 (F): "So fled his Enemies my Warlike Father"

MND, I, i, 203 (F): "Lysander and my selfe will flie this
place"

1H6, IV, v, 37 (F): "To fight I will, but not to flye the Foe"

Note 3. The direct combination of a verb of motion with the object on or about which the motion takes place is common both to Shakespeare and the modern language.

H5, II, ii, 122 (F): "If that same Daemon that hath gull'd
thee thus,/ Should with his Lyon-gate
walke the whole world"

Tit., II, i, 7 (F and Q₁): "Gallops the Zodiacke in his
glistering Coach"

TGV, I, i, 26 (F): "you never swom the Hellespont"

Rom., II, i, 5 (F and Q₂): "He ran this way and leapt this
Orchard wall"

Note 4. The causative use of verbs of motion like run, march, walk, pace, dance still occurs today and is found as early as Malory, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 25. Bound instead of make bound is now obsolete. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 133.

H5, II, i, 127 (F): "The King hath run bad humors on the
Knight"

3H6, I, iv, 127 (F): "Beggars mounted, runne their Horse to death"

Jn., III, i, 246 (F): "on the marriage bed/ Of smiling peace to march a bloody hoast"

Wiv., II, ii, 316-320 (F): "I will rather trust...a Theefe to walke my ambling gelding"

H8, V, iii, 22 (F): "those that tame wild Horses,/ Pace 'em not in their hands to make 'em gentle"

Tit., V, iii, 162 (F): "he danc'd thee on his knee"

H5, V, ii, 146 (F): "if I might...bound my Horse for her favours"

Note 5. "He could not sit his Mule" (H8, IV, ii, 16 (F)); this use of sit still survives in the modern language. To sit a horse is perhaps derived from M.E. to sitte on horse ("Wel koude he sitte on hors and faire ryde", Chaucer, Canterbury Tales, Prol., 94) by the weakening of the preposition, which in the form a was regarded as an indefinite article. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 133.

§ 163

In Shakespeare intransitive verbs often form the Preterite and Pluperfect with be instead of have (they were arrived for they had arrived). The latter, found already in O.E., now predominates in the contemporary spoken language and is a characteristic feature of the development of N.E. From the beginning the two forms he is come and he has come had different meanings and applications, and this difference is often found in Shakespeare. A comparison between "Malcolme, and Donalbaine...Are stolne away and fled" (Mac., II, iv, 26 (F)) and "the Volces with two severall Powers/ Are entred in the Roman Territories" (Cor., IV, vi, 40 (F)) on the one hand and "He...hath stolne him home to bed" (Rom., II, i, 4 (F and Q₂)) and "I have not yet/ Entred my house" (MV, V, i, 272-273 (F)) on the other shows that in the first two examples a resulting state is referred to and in the others a completed action. Cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 25. It should also be noted that with a number of verbs the use of the reflexive pronoun became obsolete (see § ¹⁵⁹628): I have retired, derived from I have retired me, thus became equivalent to I am retired. It also seems likely that there was interaction between synonymous verbs: for example, he has retired (he has returned) may well have encouraged the construction ~~he has returned~~ he has come back (he has gone back). He has come across them may be connected with he has met (with) them. Once he has come back, he has come across them were in use it was relatively easy for he has come to become generally common. Come in he is come also has the force of an adverb, just like gone in he is gone (= away). It was easier to regard it as a participle when it appeared in combination with have (he has come). The use of be in this connection has now been completely abandoned in conversational speech. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 297-9.

Cor., III, i, 11 (F): "he is retyred to Antium"

Tim., II, ii, 171 (F): "I have retyr'd me"

Mac., II, iv, 26 (F): "Malcolme, and Donalbaine...Are stolne away and fled"

Rom., II, i, 4 (F and Q₂): "He...hath stolne him home to bed"

Cor., IV, vi, 40 (F): "the Volces with two severall Powers/
Are entred in the Roman Territories"

MV, V, i, 272-273 (F): "I have not yet/ Entred my house"

Err., V, i, 361 (F): "Which accidentally are met together"

Tmp., V, i, 136 (F): "How thou hast met us heere"

Rom., II, v, 19 (F and Q₂): "Hast thou met with him?"

Tmp., IV, i, 166 (F): "We must prepare to meet with Caliban"

Mac., V, viii, 35 (F): "I would the Friends we misse, were
safe arriv'd"

H5, I, i, 67 (F): "Miracles are ceast"

JC, V, iv, 32 (F): "How every thing is chanc'd"

AYL, I, ii, 165 (F): "Are you crept hither to see the
wrastling?"

Cym., III, vi, 64 (F): "I am falne in this offence"

TGV, V, ii, 47 (F): "whether they are fled"

AWW, III, v, 8 (F): "They are gone a contrarie way"

H8, III, i, 86 (F): "Though he be growne so desperate to be
honest"

JC, III, ii, 274 (F): "Brutus and Cassius/ Are rid like
Madmen through the Gates of Rome"

H8, I, ii, 110 (F): "I am sorry, that the Duke of Buckingham/
Is run in your displeasure"

Oth., V, i, 113 (F): "Fellowes that are scap'd"

1H4, IV, i, 91 (F): "The King himselfe in person hath set
forth"

(Q₁): "The King himselfe in person is set
forth"

1H4, II, iv, 392-394 (F): "Worcester is stolne away by Night:
thy Fathers Beard is turn'd white
with the Newes"

Mac., I, iii, 80 (F): "whither are they vanish'd?"

1H4, II, ii, 8 (F): "He is walk'd up to the top of the hill"

Note. The following observations should be made concerning
the four examples especially included and objected to by A.

Schmidt (Shakespeare-Lexicon at the end of the article on be,
p. 85):

- 3H6, IV, iii, 2 (F): "The King by this, is set him downe to sleepe" - him is an old dative reflexive, and set is the participle of sit, therefore the sentence must pass as grammatically correct.
- 3H6, IV, iv, 3 (F): "What late misfortune is befallne King Edward?" - befall is intransitive here, as elsewhere in Shakespeare (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 94), and King Edward is a dative, but because it is a proper name this is not indicated by the preposition to.
- JQ, V, iii, 25 (F): "My life is run his compasse" - this is similar to he is run a great distance; compass, like great distance, has the force of an adverb modifying the verb run and hence is not a direct object in the usual sense.
- Cym., V, iv, 120 (F): "he is enter'd/ His radiant Roofe" - this may be derived from the contracted form he's enter'd.

Constructions in the Passive.

§ 164 The passive construction of the type he was given to understand, in which the subject corresponds to the indirect object of the corresponding active construction, and which is characteristic of modern English, is also found in Shakespeare. The same is true of the type he was sent for, where the subject corresponds to the prepositional ~~indirect~~ object of the equivalent active construction. The latter has an almost unlimited use in modern English and can be used even when the subject is not a living creature. Such instances also occur in Shakespeare: "Is Lechery so look'd after?" (MM, I, ii, 148 (F)); "There are more things in Heaven and Earth, Horatio, / Than are dream't of in our Philosophy" (Ham., I, v, 167 (F)); ~~and examples can be found at least as early as 1548 (Hall's Chronicles)~~. The construction was also common in late M.E. Cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 25. The development was furthered by the final disappearance of the dative inflexion of the noun in the 15th century. In a sentence like "the Duke was given to understand / That - " (MV, II, viii, 7 (F and Q₁)), the present-day subject may originally have been a dative which could only be interpreted as a nominative once there was no longer any difference in form between the two. The modern interpretation is all the more acceptable since the speaker has a lively interest in the indirect object of the person, which in the active is also shown in the word-order: they gave him a hint (him precedes the direct object of the thing). In the passive construction, therefore, the indirect object moves to the beginning of the clause and, since it occupies the usual position of the subject, it is interpreted as such. A further result was that pronoun subjects too were introduced into the construction; he was given to understand (from the older him was given to understand) was formed in imitation of the duke was given to understand. But this development was not necessary at a time when there was a general tendency to anticipate the psychological subject

when this was a person (see § 627). Even an object dependent on a preposition was separated from it and placed at the beginning of the clause as the subject of a passive construction; hence he was sent for appeared alongside they sent for him.

The new construction became very common in conversational speech because at the beginning of the N.E. period there was no generally popular means of expressing 'one', and even now it is regarded as stilted. Hence he was sent for was preferred to one sent for him. The passive form also had the advantage that in it the psychological subject coincided with the grammatical. Cf. O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (London, 1894), § 181f.; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 287-8.

R2, II, iii, 129 (F): "I am denyde to sue my Liverie here"

Ham., V, i, 255 (F): "she is allowed her Virgin Rites"

Q₂: "she is allow'd her virgin Crants"

Rom., I, v, 13 (F): "You are lookt for, and cal'd for,
askt for, & sought for"

TGV, II, ii, 19 (F): "you are staid for"

2H4, II, ii, 69 (F): "I am well spoken of"

Q₁: "I am well spoke on"

2H4, II, iv, 405 (F): "men of Merit are sought after"

Wiv., II, ii, 254 (F): "shee is too bright to be look'd
against"

3H6, V, vii, 22 (F): "I am not look'd on in the world"

1H4, III, ii, 47 (F and Q₁): "like a Comet(,) I was wondred at"

1H4, I, iii, 154 (F and Q₁): "we...Live scandaliz'd(,) and
fouly spoken of"

MV, II, vi, 48 (F and Q₁): "we are staid for"

Ham., IV, v, 130 (F): "Ile not be Iuggel'd with"

R2, I, iii, 155 (F): "A heavy sentence... And all unlook'd
for from your Highnesse mouth"

WT, IV, iv, 548 (F): "th'unthought-on accident"

Rom., I, v, 31 (F and Q₂): "this unlookt for sport"

3H6, V, iv, 35 (F): "there's no hop'd-for Mercy"

1H4, I, ii, 229 (F and Q₁): "But when they seldome come, they
wisht(-)for come"

Interrogative Forms

§ 165 In Elizabethan times there were two ~~forms~~ interrogative forms, the old form and the newer form with periphrastic do. Although the choice may depend on rhythm and prosody, it is nevertheless true that the older form, either with or without an interrogative particle (what, how, whither), survives chiefly in tragedy, and is found especially in more formal and serious modes of address. On the other hand the periphrastic form is more congenial to everyday speech. As can be seen from the prose sections of The Merry Wives of Windsor (Acts I and II) it was used in ordinary conversation at all levels, whether the sentence was introduced by an interrogative particle or not. Often the periphrastic form expresses emotion: it is used not only in enquiries but also to show astonishment, fear, and similar feelings. It has the advantage that it offers the voice greater freedom of modulation than the shorter form. (F. E. T. Visser, §§ 1450-60.

a)

Mac., III, i, 19 (F): "Ride you this afternoone?"

Mac., II, iv, 21 (F): "How goes the world Sir, now?"

Mac., IV, i, 106 (F): "Why sinkes that Caldron?"

R3, I, iii, 30 (F): "Saw you the King to day my Lord of Derby?"

R3, I, iii, 113 (F): "What? threat you me with telling of the King?"

Mac., II, iii, 58 (F): "Goes the King hence today?"

Mac., II, iii, 75 (F): "Meane you his Maiestie?"

R3, I, i, 42 (F): "What meanes this armed guard?"

R3, I, i, 96 (F): "How say you sir?"

Wiv., II, i, 213 (F): "What saist thou, my Bully-Rooke?"

Wiv., II, i, 153 (F): "Whether goe you (George?) harke you."

Wiv., I, iv, 142 (F): "How now (good woman) how dost thou?"

b)

Mac., II, ii, 15 (F): "I have done the deed:/ Didst thou not heare a noyse?"

R3, I, ii, 43 (F): "What do you tremble?"

R3, I, ii, 101 (F): "Did'st thou not kill this King?"

R3, I, iii, 295 (F): "What doth she say, my Lord of
Buckingham."

Wiv., I, i, 154 (F): "Pistoll, did you picke M. Slenders
purse?"

Wiv., II, i, 69-70 (F): "Did you ever heare the like?"

Wiv., II, ii, 279-280 (F): "do you know Ford Sir?"

Wiv., I, i, 298 (F): "Why doe your dogs barke so?"

Wiv., I, i, 210 (F): "why did you not lend it to Alice
Short-cake"

Note. The modern \mathcal{R} construction whereby the speaker seeks confirmation of an assertion by repeating the verbal idea as a question is also found in Shakespeare, together with the modern form of reply.

JC, II, iv, 27-28 (F): Portia: "Thou hast some suite to
Caesar, hast thou not?"

Soothsayer: "That I have Lady"

§ 166

Shakespeare often uses the Present tense to refer to an event or state in the future. This phenomenon is still common in modern usage. Where the subject is a pronoun in the second person singular the sentence can have the force of a command (example under a)). Sometimes the Present tense indicates a degree of certainty as regards the realization of the event or state (examples under b)). Very often it refers to an action for which plans or arrangements have already been made (examples under c)). Occasionally a threat is implied (examples under d)). When used in a hypothetical statement it indicates that if a certain condition is fulfilled the event will follow inevitably or automatically (examples under e)). The Present tense is normal after verbs of betting (example under f)). The Present tense is also used by Shakespeare ~~in~~ in subordinate clauses to refer to the future, as is still the custom in modern English. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 288-9; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 719-758.

a)

Ham., III, iv, 19 (F and Q₂): "You go(e) not till I set you
up a glasse"

b)

Err., I, i, 20 (F): "if any Siracusan borne/ Come to the
Bay of Ephesus, he dies"

Err., I, ii, 7 (F): "This very day a Syracusan Marchant...
Dies ere the wearie sunne set in the
West"

R3, V, iii, 18 (F and Q₁): "For Lord(e)s, to morrow is a
busie day"

H5, II, iv, 96 (F): "Or else what followes?"

Per., III, ii, 110 (Q₁): "this matter must be lookt to for
her relapse/ Is mortall"

H8, II, i, 97 (F): "I must...give my Charge up to Sir
Nicholas Vaux,/ Who undertakes you to
your end"

c)

MND, I, ii, 113 (F and Q₁): Bottom: "We(e) will meete..."

Quince: "At the Dukes o(a)ke
we(e) meete."

Ado, III, i, 100 (F): "When are you married Madame?"

Ado, I, i, 2 (F): "I Learne in this Letter, that Don Peter
...comes this night to Messina"

LLL, IV, ii, 159 (F): "I do dine to day at the fathers of a
certaine Pupill of mine"

R3, III, i, 183 (F): "tell him...His ancient Knot of
dangerous Adversaries/'To morrow are
let blood at Pomfret Castle"

AYL, I, i, 126 (F): "What, you wrastle to morrow before the
new Duke."

AYL, I, i, 133 (F): "to morrow sir I wrastle for my credit"

AWW, III, ii, 75 (F): Countess: "Returne you thither."

First Gent.: "I Madam, with the
swiftest wing of speed."

WT, IV, iv, 675 (F): "What I doe next, shall be to tell the
King"

d)

AYL, I, iii, 47 (F): "if that thou beest found...Thou diest
for it"

Cym., V, iv, 91-92 (F): "Helpe (Iupiter) or we appeale,/
and from thy iustice flye"

Cym., III, v, 83 (F): "Where is thy Lady? In a word, or else/
Thou art straightway with the Fiends"

e)

JC, I, ii, 111 (F): "Helpe me Cassius, or I sinke"

Ham., III, iii, 73-75 (F): "now he is praying,/ And now Ile
doo't, and so he goes to Heaven,/
And so am I reveng'd"

Ado, II, ii, 54 (F and Q₁): "be cunning in the working this,
and thy fee is a thousand
ducates"

f)

2H4, V, v, 112 (F): "I will lay oddes, that ere this yeere
expire,/ We beare our Civill Swords...
As farre as France"

The Historic Present.

§ 167 The use of the Present tense to depict an action in the past brings it into the purview of the present and makes it more interesting to the listener. It also expresses the speaker's vital concern in the event described. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 779. This is quite different from the use of the Present in alternation with the Preterite, which, apart from the Bible of 1611, is found in N.E. only in verse, where its employment is governed by considerations of rhythm, metre, euphony and style. Cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., II, 74; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 775, 777, 778.

Ham., II, i, 77-91 (F):

Ophelia: "My Lord, as I was sowing in my Chamber,
Lord Hamlet with his doublet all unbrac'd
...he comes before me."

...

Polonius: "What said he?"

Ophelia: "He tooke me by the wrist, and held me
hard;/ Then goes he to the length of all
his arme;/ And with his other hand thus
o're his brow,/ He fals to such perusall
of my face,/ As he would draw it. Long
staid he so."

Wiv., III, v, 82-88 (F):

Ford: "And did he search for you, & could not find
you?"

Falstaff: "You shall heare. As good lucke would have
it, comes in one Mist. Page, gives
intelligence of Fords approch: and in her
invention, and Fords wives distraction,
they convey'd me into a bucke basket."

Rom., III, i, 160-169 (F):

"all this uttered,/ With gentle breath...Could not
take truce with the unruly spleene/ Of Tybalts
deafe to peace, but that he Tilts/ With Peircing
steele at bold Mercutio's breast,/ Who all as hot,

turnes deadly point to point,/ And with a Martiall
scorne, with one hand beates/ Cold death aside, and
with the other sends/ It back to Tybalt, whose
dexterity/ Retorts it."

§ 168 The use of the Continuous tenses was not so fully developed in Shakespeare as it is today. It is found only with principal verbs. For further details see § 622.¹⁰⁵

Wiv., II, i, 33-34 (F): "I was going to your house"

Wiv., II, i, 35 (F): "I was comming to you"

Wiv., III, i, 27 (F): "Yonder he is comming"

Wiv., III, ii, 36 (F): "now she's going to my wife"

Wiv., III, iii, 113 (F): "Your husband's comming hether
(Woman)"

Wiv., III, iii, 121 (F): "'tis most certaine your husband's
comming"

Wiv., III, iii, 139 (F): "as if it were going to bucking"

Wiv., III, iv, 36 (F): "Shee's comming"

Wiv., IV, ii, 91 (F): Mistress Ford: "But~~x~~ is my husband
comming?" Mistress Page: "I in good
sadnesse is he"

Wiv., IV, iii, 3 (F): "they are going to meet him"

Wiv., IV, vi, 30 (F): "While other sports are tasking of
their mindes"

1H4, I, ii, 140-141 (F): "there are Pilgrimes going to
Canterbury with rich Offerings,
and Traders riding to London
with fat Purses"

1H4, II, ii, 56-59 (F): "there's many of the Kings comming
downe the hill, 'tis going to the
Kings Exchequer." Falstaff: "You
lie you rogue, 'tis going to the
Kings Tavern"

1H4, II, iv, 199 (F and Q₁): "As we were sharing"

1H4, III, i, 44 (F): "Where is the Living"
(Q₁): "Where is he living"

1H4, III, iii, 226 (F): "The Land is burning"

1H4, IV, i, 89 (F): "The Earle of Westmerland, seven
thousand strong,/ Is marching
hither-wards"

1H4, V, iv, 165 (F): "To see what Friends are living"

H8, IV, i, 56 (F): "Where have you bin broiling?"

TGV, I, iii, 18 (F): "Whereon, this month I have bin
hamering"

H8, III, ii, 178 (F): "Which ~~xxxx~~ ever ha's, and ever
shall be growing"

Ham., II, i, 77 (F): "as I was sowing in my Chamber,/ Lord
Hamlet...he comes before me"

2H4, II, ii, 81 (F): "and Q₁): "must you be blushing"

Cym., III, vi, 63 (F): "To whom being going, almost spent
with hunger,/ I am falne in this
offence"

The Two Past Tenses.

§ 169 The Perfect tense indicates ~~an~~ an action that begins in the past and extends up to the time of speaking (examples under a)) or even goes beyond it (examples under b)). This form is also sometimes used in the sense of a futurum exactum (~~under a~~ (examples under c)). It is also used when the effect of the action extends into the present or future or the action has an after-effect in the present or future (under d)). It thus has a very wide field of use.

On the other hand an action actually completed or imagined as completed in the past is usually expressed by the Preterite if a repetition is ~~ex~~ excluded or is impossible (examples under e)). If a process extends to the present or if an assertion is also valid for this, then adverbs (even now, ever) are normally used to express this (examples under f)). Such expressions frequently have the nature of a general truth or a proverb, cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 802. Neither in Old English nor in early New English are the two tenses rigidly differentiated from each other in their manner of use. Shakespeare's usage normally conforms to the modern rules, though not always (examples under g)). The Perfect tense, although it has a wide field of use, cannot now be used when a definition of time marks the action as one definitely completed in the past. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, ~~301~~ 300-301; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 805.

~~---f---~~

A. a) An event in the past has (just) finished at the time of speaking:

2H4, III, ii, 327 (F): "This same starv'd Iustice hath
done nothing but prate to me of
the wildenesse of his Youth"

(Falstaff says this of Shallow, who has just gone away)

2H4, V, v, 62 (F): "For heaven doth know...That I have
turn'd away my former Selfe"

(Henry, now King, is speaking to Falstaff)

Wiv., III, iii, 171 (F): "I have dream'd to night, Ile
tell you my dreame"

b) The statement is valid for both past and present:

2H4, III, i, 104 (F): "Your Maiestie hath beene this
fort-night ill"

2H4, II, iv, 412 (F): "I have knowne thee these twentie
nine yeeres"

2H4, V, i, 51 (F): "I have serv'd your Worshippe truely
sir, these eight yeares"

2H4, V, iii, 144 (F): "Happie are they, which have beene
my Friendes"

Wiv., III, i, 56 (F): "I have lived foure-score yeeres,
and upward"

c) An event begins only in the future:

Wiv., II, i, 99-100 (F): "lead him on with a fine baited
delay, till hee hath pawn'd his
horses"

Wiv., II, ii, 229-230 (F): "When I have told you that, I
have told you all"

d) The effect of an action in the past extends ~~him~~ to the
time of speaking and beyond:

2H4, IV, i, 215 (F): "the King hath wasted all his Rods,/
On late Offenders, that he now doth
lacke/ The very Instruments of
Chastisement"

2H4, II, iv, 29 (F): "your Colour (I warrant you) is as
red as any Rose...you have drunke
too much Canaries"

Wiv., II, ii, 83 (F): "she hath receiv'd your Letter...
and she gives you to notifie"

Wiv., II, ii, 303 (F): "my wife hath sent to him, the
howre is fixt"

Wiv., III, iii, 136 (F): "Oh, how have you deceiv'd me?"

B. e) An event is completed in the past:

Wiv., III, v, 101-110 (F): "they tooke me on their shoulders:

met the iealous knave their
Master in the doore; who ask'd
them once or twice what they
had in their Basket? I quak'd
for feare...well, on went hee,
for a search, and away went I
for foule Cloathes: But marke
the sequell (Master Broome) I
suffered the pangs of three
severall deaths"

2H4, III, i, 60-63 (F): "It is but eight yeeres since,/
This Percie was the man, neerest
my Soule...And layd his Love and
Life under my foot"

2H4, III, ii, 17 (F): "You were call'd lustie Shallow then
(Cousin)"

Wiv., IV, v, 104 (F): "I never prosper'd, since I forswore
my selfe at Primero"

Wiv., II, i, 28 (F): "I was then Frugall of my mirth"

Wiv., II, ii, 63 (F): "when the Court lay at Windsor"

Wiv., III, ii, 2 (F): "you were wont to be a follower, but
now you are a Leader"

Wiv., III, iii, 9 (F): "as I told you before"

f) An event in the past extends into the present:

Wiv., I, iii, 67 (F): "I have writ me here a letter to her:
& here another to Pages wife, who
even now gave me good eyes too"

2H4, II, iv, 327 (F): "how vildly did you speake of me even
now, before this honest...Gentlewoman?"

H5, II, ii, 105 (F): "Treason, and murther, ever kept
together"

Ado, II, iii, 65 (F): "Men were deceivers ever,/ One foote
in Sea, and one on shore,/ To one
thing constant never"

Ant., IV, xv, 37 (F): "Wishers were ever Fooles"

g) Not in accordance with modern usage:

Lr., IV, iii, 37 (Q₁): "you spoke not with her since"

2H6, II, i, 2 (F): "I saw not better sport these seven
yeeres day"

Err., II, ii, 15 (F): "I did not see you since you sent me
hence"

MND, III, ii, 307-308 (F and Q₁): "I evermore did love you
Hermia,/ Did ever keepe
your counsels, never
wrong(e)d you"

1H6, IV, iii, 37 (F): "This seven yeeres did not Talbot
see his sonne"

Cym., IV, iii, 36 (F): "I heard no Letter from my Master,
since/ I wrote him Imogen was slaine"

. h) Characteristic alternation of both tenses:

Wiv., III, v, 36-37 (F): "I have had Ford enough: I was
thrown into the Ford"

(Q₁): "I have had Ford inough, I have
bene throwne into the Ford"

H5, II, ii, 29-31 (F): "those that were your Fathers
enemies,/ Have steep'd their gauls
in hony, and do serve you/ With
hearts create of duty, and of zeale"

Wiv., III, v, 96-110 (F): "you shall heare (Master Broome)
what I have sufferd...Being
thus cram'd in the Basket, a
couple of Fords knaves, his
Hindes were cald forth...they
tooke me on their shoulders...I
suffered the pangs of three
severall deaths"

The Subjunctive.

§ 170

The field of use of the subjunctive was much smaller in Shakespeare's time than it was earlier because of the growing use of periphrastic forms and of the indicative. It occurs very often in Shakespeare in main and conditional clauses, and it is still very common here in the literary language. But he rarely uses it in negative final clauses, where the periphrastic form predominates. In contrast to modern usage it often occurs in a temporal clause introduced by before or ere; it is also more widely used in concessive clauses than today. The Elizabethans had a greater sensitivity towards the subjunctive than is now the case, but its use was nevertheless uncertain and not rigidly bound by set rules. As the indicative and subjunctive forms became indistinguishable the feeling for the subjunctive gradually declined. In the Preterite were is the only specifically subjunctive form. Whether be in the Present singular is always felt as a subjunctive sometimes seems doubtful in individual cases (see § ¹⁰³~~171~~). The modern spoken language can, apart from conventional formulae (God bless you), dispense with the subjunctive entirely, even in hypothetical conditional clauses. Indeed its use here is very limited and is governed more by principles of style than of grammar. However, it is still fairly common in the written language.

§ 171

In a main clause the subjunctive serves to express a wish or strong determination, especially in the 3rd P. Pres. (Singular and Plural). It is often used in this way in blessings, curses and execrations, sometimes of a stereotype character. The subjunctive can also indicate a command, a defiant challenge or threat, or alternatively indifference and imperturbability towards the progress and outcome of an affair. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 309; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 841, 846.

a) Wish:

Oth., III, iii, 226 (F): "Long live she so;/ And long live
you to thinke so"

Mac., III, iv, 120 (F): "Good night, and better health/
Attend his Maiesty"

JC, IV, iii, 235 (F): "Never come division 'twene our
soules"

1H6, III, ii, 31 (F): "Now shine it like a Commet of
Revenge,/ A Prophet to the fall of
all our Foes"

Tro., II, iii, 243 (F and Q₁): "Know the whole world(,) .
he(e) is as valiant"

2H6, IV, viii, 62 (F): "My sword make way for me, for heere
is no staying"

WT, II, i, 20 (F): "good time encounter her"

TGV, I, i, 61 (F): "All happinesse bechance to thee in
Millaine"

1H4, III, iii, 54 (F): "Heaven reward me for it"
(Q₁): "God reward me for it"

AYL, I, i, 168 (F): "God keepe your worship"

Wiv., I, iv, 33 (F): "heaven send Anne Page, no worse
fortune"

Wiv., II, i, 29 (F): "heaven forgive mee"

WT, II, iii, 186 (F): "Come on (poore Babe)/ Some powerfull
Spirit instruct the Kytes and Ravens/
To be thy Nurses"

H5, IV, iii, 5 (F): "Gods Arme strike with us, 'tis a
fearefull oddes"

JC., II, iv, 41 (F): "O Brutus,/ The Heavens speede thee in
thine enterprize"

Jn., I, i, 256 (F): "Heaven lay not my transgression to my
charge"

Tro., III, iii, 281 ~~(F): "Iove blesse"~~
(F and Q₁): "Iove blesse great Ajax"

Rom., III, ii, 137 (F): "And death not Romeo, take my
Maiden head" (But this may be a
plural form)

AWW., V, iii, 67 (F): "Be this sweet Helens knell"

Oth., III, iv, 126 (F): "So helpe me every spirit sanctified,
As I have spoken for you all my best"

Per., V, iii, 102 (Q₁): "New ioy wayte on you"

Oth., V, ii, 250 (F): "So come my Soule to blisse, as I
whospeake true"

Imp., V, i, 105 (F): "some heavenly power guide us/ Out of
this fearefull Country"

Err., III, ii, 10 (F): "Be not thy tongue thy owne shames
Orator"

b) Curse, execration:

Tro., V, ii, 197 (F and Q₁): "A burning divell take them"

Wiv., IV, v, 108 (F): "The Divell take one partie, and his
Dam the other"

1H6., III, ii, 109 (F): "Cowardly Knight, ill fortune
follow thee"

1H6., V, ii, 7 (F): "Peace be amongst them if they turne to
us,/ Else ruine combate with their
Pallaces"

1H6., IV, vi, 47 (F): "Before young Talbot from old Talbot
flye,/ The Coward Horse that beares
me, fall and dye"

Tit., V, i, 58 (F and Q₁): "but vengeance rot(te) you all"

Per., IV, vi, 121 (Q₁): "a curse upon him, die he like a
theefe"

R3., I, ii, 131 (F): "Blacke night ore-shade thy day, &
death thy life"

c) Command:

R3, IV, iv, 440 (F): "Some light-foot friend ~~praxia~~ post to
y Duke of Norfolk"

2H6, IV, viii, 18 (F): "Who hateth him, and honors not his
Father... Shake he his weapon at us,
and passe by"

Per., III, ii, 72 (Q₁): "Who finds her, give her burying"

MV, IV, i, 14 (F and Q₁): ~~XXXXXX~~ "Go(e) one and cal(l) the
Iew into the Court"

Per., II, i, ~~58~~ 59 (Q₁): "Search out of the Kalender, and
no body looke after it"

Per., II, iii, 115 (Q₁): "each one betake him to his rest"

d) Defiant challenge, threat:

3H6, I, i, 48 (F): "Ile ~~at~~ plant Plantaganet, root him up
who dares"

Mac., IV, i, 105 (F): "Deny me this,/ And an eternall
Curse fall on you"

Rom., I, i, 110 (F and Q₂): "on paine of death, all men
depart"

e) Resignation:

Cor., V, i, 61 (F): "Speed how it will"

2H6, III, ii, 402 (F): "Oh let me stay, befall what may
befall"

Ado., II, ii, 52 (F and Q₁): "Grow this to what adverse
issue it can"

f) The periphrastic form of the subjunctive occurs alongside
the simple form:

R2, IV, i, 218-219 (F): "Long may'st thou live in Richards
Seat to sit,/ And soone lye
Richard in an Earthie Pit"

R3, I, iii, 204 (F): "Long may'st thou live, to ~~wyle thy~~
wayle thy Childrens death"

R3, I, iii, 207 (F): "Long dye thy happie dayes, before thy
death"

Note 1. The following example is different in character from

those mentioned above: Cressida: "O heavens, you love me not!" Troilus: "Dye I a villaine then:" (Tro., IV, iv, 85 (F)); the exclamation can be regarded as dependent on the condition If I do not, which is present in the mind of the speaker.

Note 2. The periphrasis with let is very common in an optative clause. The old subjunctive of summons which functions as the first person plural imperative (go we!), has been replaced in the spoken language by the periphrastic form (let us go!). For further details on this see under the Imperative, § ¹⁸⁴~~649~~. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 323.

JC., III, i, 184 (F): "Let each man render me his bloody hand"

Oth., IV, ii, 16 (F): "If any wretch have put this in your head,/ Let Heaven requit it with the Serpents curse"

Oth., III, iv, 131 (F): "Let that suffice you"

Cor., I, iv, 64 (F): "Let's fetch him off"

Wiv., II, i, 111 (F): "Let's consult together"

Mac., II, iii, 150 (F): "let us not be daintie of leave-taking"

Cor., I, ix, 92 (F): "Goe we to our Tent"

2H6, I, i, 199 (F): "Ioyne we together"

§ 172

The Preterite or Pluperfect subjunctive is used in a main clause to express a subjective statement involving a condition, reservation, or limitation. Often it indicates nothing more than caution, timidity, or polite consideration on the part of the speaker, who thus avoids expressing an opinion or wish in the more positive and abrupt form of the Present. In the case of be and have the spoken language now generally uses only the periphrastic forms (he were = he would be, I had been = I should have been; I had peopled = I should have peopled), but the old subjunctive still survives in certain set phrases: I had rather -; I had as lief - (archaic and popular). Could, might, would (chiefly in the first person) have, like should, ought, survived to a limited extent with a subjunctive meaning in a main clause because they lack the infinitive necessary for periphrasis (cf. H. Sweet, NEGr., II, § 2282); durst, on the other hand, is now obsolete, and must is usually replaced in the spoken language by some equivalent phrase: "under such circumstances I should be compelled to acknowledge defeat". The Present I wish is found in Shakespeare alongside the Preterite subjunctive I wish(e)d: the latter form yielded in an independent clause to the former since in the modern language it is seen only as a Preterite indicative. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 812, 814.

Oth., III, iii, 152 (F^{and Q₁}): "It were not for your quiet, nor your good...To let you know my thoughts"

Ado, II, i, 7 (F and Q₁): "He(e) were an excellent man that were made iust in the mid-way between(e) him and Benedick(e)"

Ado, II, i, 366 (F and Q₁): "She were an excellent wife for Benedick"

Ado, II, i, 234 (F): "Yet it had not beene amisse the rod had beene made, and the garland too"

TGV, IV, i, 35 (F): "My youthfull travaile, therein made me happy,/ Or else I often had beene often"

AWW, II, iv, 31 (F): "You should have said sir...before me
th'art a knave: this had beene truth
sir"

Tmp., I, ii, 350 (F): "I had peopel'd else/ This Isle with
Calibans"

MM, II, ii, 148 (F): "You had mar'd all else"

TGV, V, ii, 14 (F): "I had rather winke, then looke on them"

JC, I, ii, 95 (F): "I had as lief not be, as live to be/
I awe of such a Thing, as I my selfe"

Oth., IV, ii, 121 (F): "a Begger in his drinke:/ Could not
have laid such termes upon his
Callet"

Ado, II, iii, 213 (F and Q₁): "I could wish he would
modestly examine himselfe"

Ado, II, i, 31 (F and Q₁): "I could not endure a husband
with a beard on his face"

Ado, II, i, 237 (F and Q₁): "the rod(de) he(e) might have
bestowed on you"

Ham., I, i, 56 (F): "I might not this beleieve/ Without the
sensible and true avouch/ Of mine owne
eyes" (= 'I could not...' - obsolete)

Oth., III, iii, 199 (F): "I would not have you free, and
Noble Nature,/ Out of selfe-Bounty,
be abus'd"

Ado, I, i, 142 (F and Q₁): "I would my horse had the speed
of your tongue"

R3, I, iii, 140 (F): "I would to God my heart were Flint,
like Edwards"

1H4, V, iv, 69 (F): "and would to heaven,/ Thy name in
Armes, were now as great as mine"

1H4, i, ii, 92 (F): "I wold thou and I knew, where a
Commodity of good names were to be bought"

(Q₁): "I woulde to God thou and I knewe
where a commodity of good names were
to be bought"

Ham., III, ii, 188 (F): "Such Love, must needs be Treason
in my brest" (but perhaps must is
here a Present indicative)

Lr., I, iv, 261 (F): "As you are Old, and Reverend, should
be Wise"

Ado, III, iii, 87 (F and Q₁): "the watch ought to offend
no man"

H8, V, i, 17 (F): "My Lord, I love you;/ And durst commend
a secret to your eare"

Oth., IV, ii, 12 (F): "I durst (my Lord) to wager, she is
honest:/ Lay downe my Soule at stake"

Cor., IV, vi, 24 (F): "We wisht Coriolanus had lov'd you
as we did"

1H6, V, iv, 31 (F): "I wish some ravenous Wolfe had eaten
thee"

§ 173 Shakespeare uses O and the Preterite subjunctive to express a wish that is unfulfilled, or unlikely to be fulfilled. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 812, 813.

Luc., 379 (1594): "O ~~that~~ had they in that darkesome prison
died"

Oth., III, iii, 442 (F): "O that the Slave had forty
thousand lives"

Tmp., II, i, 266 (F): "O, that you bore/ The minde that I
do"

§ 174 The Preterite subjunctive of a principal verb is occasionally found in a main clause when the condition is not merely implied from the situation but is explicitly stated. The subjunctive meaning of the Preterite is quite clear from the form and character of the sentence (see examples under a)). This use of the subjunctive is no longer possible. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 815. The same rule also holds for auxiliary and modal verbs in hypothetical complex sentences (see examples under b)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 861.

a)

Cor., IV, vi, 111-114 (F): "his best Friends, if they/
Should say be good to Rome,
they charg'd him, even/ As
those should do that had
deserv'd his hate,/ And therein
shew'd like Enemies"

Oth., I, i, 38 (F): "Preferment goes by Letter, and
affection,/ And not by old gradation,
where each second/ Stood Heire
to 'th'first"

MV, II, i, 20 (F and Q₁): "if my Father had not scanted me
...Your selfe (renowned Prince)
than stood(e) as faire/ As any
commer I have look'd on yet/
For my affection"

Ven., 246 (1593): "if there he came to lie,/ Why there
love liv'd"

Son. II, 9 (1609): "How much more praise deserv'd thy
beauties use,/ If thou couldst answere"

Oth., V, ii, 75 (F): "Had all his haires bin lives, my
great Revenge/ Had stomacke for them
all."

b)

Oth., V, ii, 137 (F): "I were damn'd beneath all depth in
hell:/ But that I did proceed upon
iust grounds/ To this extremity"

Tro., I, iii, 75-77 (F): "Troy yet upon his basis had bene
downe,/ And the great Hectors
sword had lack'd a Master/ But
for these instances"

Mac., II, ii, 14 (F): "Had he not resembled/ My Father as
he slept, I had don't"

JC, III, i, 58 (F): "I could be well mov'd, if I were as
you"

Ven., 137 (1593): "Were I hard-favourd, foule, or wrinckled
old...Thē mightst thou pause, for thē I
were not for thee"

AWW, III, v, 83 (F): "if he were honestier/ He were much
goodlier"

§ 175

The subjunctive is occasionally found after think, hope, wonder if the content of the dependent clause is regarded as being the thought of the speaker so that there is some doubt about its objective validity. In Shakespeare, however, the usual mood after these verbs is the indicative, and this is now the only one possible. See examples under a). Formerly the subjunctive was more widely used than now in indirect questions. See examples under b). The subjunctive is possible in a dependent clause after a concept of fear even when it is not governed by a conjunction. See examples under c). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 872, 875.

a)

Cym., I, i, 9-10 (F): "I thinke the King/ Be touch'd at
very heart"

Rom., I, v, 133 (F): Juliet: "What's he that now is going
out of doore?"

Nurse: "Marrie that I thinke be young
Petruchio"

Ado., III, ii, 17 (F and Q₁): "I hope he be in love"

JC., II, i, 217 (F): "I wonder none of you have thought of
him"

Wiv., II, i, 113 (F): "Well: I hope, it be not so"

Indicative:

Luc., 451 (1594): "That thinkes shee hath beheld some
gastlie sprite"

Oth., IV, ii, 65 (F): "I hope my Noble Lord esteemes me
honest!"

The two moods are contrasted in Oth., III, iii, 384-385 (F):
"I thinke my Wife be honest, and thinke she is not:/ I
thinke thou art iust, and thinke thou art not".

It should be noted that the occurrence of the form be is not
conclusive evidence of the use of the subjunctive.

b)

Ham., V, ii, 206 (Q₂): "he sends to know if your pleasure
hold to play with Laertes"

Ham., III, ii, 213 (F): "'tis a question left us yet to prove/

Whether Love lead Fortune, or else
Fortune Love"

JC, V, iii, 97 (F): "Looke where he have not crown'd dead
Cassius"

R2, I, iv, 22 (F and Q₁): "(^{nd Q₁})tis doubt...Whether our
kinsman come to see his friends"

Oth., I, iii, 394 (F): "I know not(^{nd Q₁})if't be true"

Oth., II, iii, 250 (F): "Looke if my gentle Love be not
rais'd up"

Lr., V, 1, 1 (F and Q₁): "Know of the Duke if his last
purpose hold"

c)

Ven., Ded. (1593): "for feare it yeeld me still so bad a
harvest"

Tro., I, ii, 302 (F and Q₁): "I doubt he be(e) hurt"

Indicative:

R3, I, iii, 41 (F): "I feare our happinesse is at the height"

Mac., IV, ii, 67 (F): "I doubt some danger do's approach
you neerely"

§ 176

The subjunctive is very often found in the dependent clause, which is the logical subject, after impersonal expressions like it is best (better), it is meet (just, fit), it is necessary: it were best he speak. By the use of this mood the speaker defines his attitude to the content of the sentence. The impersonal clause either contains a subjective statement of opinion concerning the idea expressed in the dependent clause, or else reflects on the relevance or possibility of the assertion made there. The subjectivity of the judgment is made especially clear when the periphrastic form with should is used, which is now the usual form in conversational speech. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 859, 866.

JC, III, ii, 73 (F): "'Twere best he speake no harme of Brutus heere?"

JC, IV, iii, 199 (F): "'Tis better that the Enemie seeke us"

AWW, III, ii, 121-123 (F): "better 'twere,/ That all the miseries which nature owes/
Were mine at once"

Wiv., I, i, 36 (F): "It is not meet the Councell heare a Riot"

Tro., I, iii, 358 (F) and Q₁): "~~(')tis meet~~
"'tis meet, Achilles meet not Hector"

Tim., IV, iii, 216-217 (F): "'Tis most iust/ That thou turne Rascall"

H5, IV, vii, 138 (F): "is it fit this souldier keepe his oath"

H5, IV, vii, 145 (F): "it is necessary...that he keepe his vow and his oath"

2H6, IV, i, 110 (F): "It is impossible that I should dye/
By such a lowly Vassall as thy selfe"

1H4, V, ii, 4-5 (F): "It is not possible, it cannot be,/ The King would keepe his word in loving us"

AYL, I, iii, 27 (F): "Is it possible on such a sodaine, you should fall into so strong a liking with old Sir Roulands yongest sonne?"

Yen., 155-156: "may it be,/ That thou should thinke it
heavie unto thee?"

AYL., II, i, 22-25 (F): "it irkes me the poore dapled fooles/
Being native Burger of this desert
City,/ Should in their owne confines
with forked heads/ Have their round
hanches goard"

WT, V, i, 114-115 (F): "'tis strange,/ He thus should
steale upon us"

JC, II, i, 155-157 (F): "it is not meet,/ Marke Antony, so
well belov'd of Caesar,/ Should
out-live Caesar"

2H4, III, ii, 98-99 (F): "it well befits you should be of
the peace"

Wiv., II, ii, 134-135 (F): "'tis not good that children
should know any wickednes"

Tro., II, ii, 72-73 (F): "It was thought meete/ Paris
should do some vengeance on the
Greekes"

Note. "'tis hie time that I were hence" (Err., III, ii, 162
(F)); "'tis more then time that ~~Iwere~~ I were there" (1H4, IV,
ii, 60-61 (F)); "Tis time I were choak'd with a peece of
toasted Cheese" (Wiv., V, v, 146-147 (F)). The Preterite
subjunctive, still used in this way, is here simply the
expression of an unfulfilled wish. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax,
§ 816.

§ 177 In final and consecutive clauses periphrasis by shall, should, may, and might is very common, but the use of the subjunctive is rarer. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 317; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 878, 1524-5, 1556-7, 1676.

Mac., I, v, 53 (F): "Come thick Night,/ And pall thee in
the dunnest smoake of Hell,/ That my
keene Knife see not the Wound it makes"

WT, IV, iv, 215 (F): "Forewarne him, that he use no
scurrilous words in's tunes"

Tro., II, iii, 87 (F): "so perchance he thinke/ We dare
not move the question of our place"
(Q₁): "least perchance he thinke,/ We dare
not move the question of our place"

R3, IV, iv, 253-254 (F): "Be breefe, least that the
processe of thy kindnesse/ Last
longer telling then thy kindnesse
date"

R2, V, iii, 36-37 (F): "Then give me leave, that I may
turne the key,/ That no man enter,
till my tale be done"

TGV, V, iv, 8-10 (F): "Leave not the Mansion so long
Tenant-lesse,/ Lest growing ruinous,
the building fall,/ And leave no
memory of what it was"

TN, III, iv, 145 (F): "Nay pursue him now, least the device
take ayre, and taint"

Lr., IV, vi, 237 (F): "Hence,/ Least that th'infection of
his fortune take/ Like hold on thee.
Let go his arme"

Wiv., IV, ii, 54 (F): "three of M^r. Fords brothers watch
the doore with Pistols, that none
shall issue out"

Tro., V, ii, 37 (F): "let us depart I pray you,/ Lest your
displeasure should enlarge it selfe/
To wrathfull tearmes"

Tro., III, ii, 217 (F): "which bed, because it shall not

speake of your prettie encounters,
presse it to death: away"

1H6, V, iii, 12 (F): "Helpe me this once, that France may
get the field"

R3, IV, iv, 78 (F): "Cancell his bond of life, deere God I
pray,/ That I may live and say, The
Dogge is dead"

(Q₁): "Cancell his bond of life, deare God I
pray,/ That I may live to say, the
dog is dead"

2H6, IV, i, 133 (F): "shew what cruelty ye can,/ That this
my death may never be forgot"

1H6, IV, v, 3 (F): "I did send for thee...That Talbots
name might be in thee reviv'd"

A conjunction is not absolutely necessary:

1H6, II, v, 37 (F): "Direct mine Armes, I may embrace his
Neck"

§178

Temporal clauses introduced by before generally require the subjunctive in the Present tense, the indicative being found much more rarely. The indicative also occurs alongside the subjunctive with ere (or ere). Till (until) introducing a clause that limits the action of the main clause in time can be combined with the Present indicative even when it is obvious that the action is intentional. Both moods can be used with against. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 746, 879.

a) Subjunctive:

MV, IV, i, 369 (F) and Q₁): "I pardon thee thy life before
thou aske it"

1H6, V, iii, 76 (F): "How canst thou tell she will deny
thy suite,/ Before thou make a triall
of her love?"

Shr., III, ii, 192 (F): "I must away to day before night
come"

1H6, V, iii, 23 (F): "take my soule; my body, soule, and
all,/ Before that England give the
French the foyle"

R3, I, iv, 192 (F): "Before I be convict by course of Law?/
To threaten me with death, is most
unlawfull"

Rom., III, iii, 167 (F and Q₂): "be gone before the watch
be set"

Wiv., IV, ii, 51 (F): "May I not go out ere he come?"

TGV, I, i, 46 (F): "the most forward Bud/ Is eaten by the
Canker ere it blow"

1H6, IV, vii, 24 (F): "Speake to the father, ere thou
yeeld thy breath"

R3, IV, iv, 184 (F): "Ere from this warre thou turne a
Conqueror"

Tmp., V, i, 103 (F): "returne/ Or ere your pulse twice beate"

Per., IV, i, 27 (Q₁): "give me your flowers, ere the sea
marre it"

Wiv., IV, v, 14 (F): "be so bold as stay Sir till she come
downe"

Tro., IV, v, 102 (F and Q₁): "Yet gives he(e) not till
iudgement guide his bounty"

Wiv., II, i, 68-69 (F): "till the wicked fire of lust have
melted him in his own greace"

R3, IV, iv, 510 (F): "take thou that, till thou bring
better newes"

(Q₁): "Take that untill thou bring me
better newes"

Err., III, ii, 156 (F): "Where I will walke till thou
returne to me"

Rom., III, iii, 148 (F and Q₂): "stay not till the watch
be set"

Rom., II, ii, 172 (F and Q₂): "Let me stand here till thou
remember it"

JC, V, i, 54-55 (F): "till another Caesar/ Have added
slaughter to the Sword of Traitors"

Per., I, i, 170 (Q₁): "till Pericles be dead,/ My heart
can lend no succour to my head"

Per., I, iv, 12 (Q₁): "Or can conceale his hunger till hee
famish?"

MND, III, ii, 99 (F): "Ile charme his eyes against she doth
appeare"

b) Indicative:

2H6, IV, ii, 188 (F): "those which flye before the
battell ends"

AWW, I, ii, 12 (F): "Florence is deni'de before he ~~xam~~ comes"

Oth., III, iii, 119 (F): "thou...weigh'st thy words before
thou giv'st them breath"

(Q₁): "thou...weigh'st thy words, before y^e thou give em breath"
Tro., IV, v, 59 (F and Q₁): "these encounterers so glib of
tongue,/ That give a coasting
welcome ere it comes"

Tro., IV, ii, 57 (F): "youle doe him wrong, ere y'are ware"

Jn., I, i, 200 (F): "ere answer knowes what question would"

Wiv., II, i, 99 (F): "let's...lead him on with a fine baited
delay, till hee hath pawn'd his horses
to mine Host of the Garter"

Temp., IV, i, 50 (F): "doe not ~~ex~~ approach/ Till thou do'st
heare me call"

Temp., I, ii, 465-466 (F): "I will resist such entertainment,
till/ Mine enemy ha's more pow'r"

Err., II, ii, 187 (F): "Untill I know this sure uncertaintie,/
Ile entertaine the free'd fallacie"

Tit., V, ii, 206 (F): "see them ready, gainst their Mother
comes"

Note. The arbitrariness and fortuitousness involved in the realization of an event that makes possible what is asserted in the main clause is occasionally expressed by the subjunctive in a temporal clause introduced by when (cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., II, 128): "And when he please to make Commotion,/ 'Tis to be fear'd they all will follow him" (2H6, III, i, 29 (F)); "Now quiet Soule, depart when Heaven please,/ For I have seene our Enemies overthrow" (1H6, III, ii, 110^(F)) - the form please is to be understood here as a subjunctive. In the following example the subjunctive can be explained from the dependence of the temporal clause on the conditional clause: "If they would yeelde us but the superfluitie while it were wholesome, wee might guesse they releevd us humanely" (Cor., I, i, 18 (F)), see L. Claus, Die einfache Form des Coniunctiv bei Shakespeare (1878), pp. 189-9. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 879.

The Present indicative is found alongside the subjunctive in conditional clauses introduced by if (an(d), an(d) if). In general the latter indicates the condition as one that is merely stated, and whose realization is uncertain, whereas the former represents it as actual; however there is no rigid differentiation in the use of the moods. The indicative is found even in unreal conditional clauses: "If she lives till doomesday, she'll burne a weeke longer then the whole world" (Err., III, ii, 101 (F)). So 'provided that' and say 'suppose' (now obsolete) both generally take the subjunctive; the indicative occurs only rarely with so. With unless the normal mood is the subjunctive, and the indicative occurs here much more rarely. On the other hand but and but that meaning 'if not' are usually followed by the indicative, though but is occasionally found with the subjunctive. Except and without, both meaning 'if not', take the subjunctive. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 311-2; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 747, 880, 881.

1) Subjunctive:

Wiv., IV, ii, 110 (F): "if hee bid you set it downe, obey him"

Wiv., III, ii, 77 (F): "if he take her, let him take her simply"

Tro., II, i, 110 (F): "Hector shall have a great catch, if he knocke out either of your braines"

Luc., 526 (1594): "if thou yeeld, I rest thy secret friend"

Tro., I, ii, 93 (F and Q₁): "He shall not neede it if he have his owne"

Wiv., II, ii, 175 (F): "if money goe before, all waies doe lye open"

(Q₁): "if mony goes before, all waies lie open"

Err., I, i, 19-20 (F): "if any Siracusian borne/ Come to the Bay of Ephesus, he dies"

R2, V, v, 96 (F): "If thou love me, 'tis time thou wer't away"

1H4, III, i, 212 (F): "if thou melt, then will she runne
madde"

(Q₁): "if you melt, then will she run mad"

Tit., III, i, 151 (F and Q₁): "if thou love thy sonnes,
Let Marcus, Lucius, or thy
selfe...chop off your hand"

Indicative and subjunctive side by side:

AYL, I, i, 156-158 (F): "if thou dost him any slight disgrace,
or if hee doe not mightilie grace
himselpe on thee, hee will practise
against thee by poyson"

Tro., I, ii, 227-228 (F and Q₁): "and the divell come to him,
it(')s all one"

2H6, II, i, 9 (F): "and it like your Maiestie"

MV, V, i, 159 (F and Q₁): "He wil(l), and if he live to be
a man"

TGV, I, i, 75 (F): "Indeede a Sheepe doth very often stray,
And if the Shepheard be awhile away"

Ado, I, i, 80 (F): Messenger: "...the Gentleman is not in
your bookes."

Beatrice: "No, and he were, I would
burne my study"

Ado, I, i, 138 (F and Q₁): "Scratching could not make it worse
and (')twere such a face as
yours were."

Tmp., II, ii, 119-120 (F): "These be fine things, and if
they be not sprights"

Tmp., V, i, 117 (F): "this must crave/ (And if this be at
all) a most strange story"

AYL, IV, ii, 10 (F): "'tis no matter how it bee in tune, so
it make noyse enough"

MV, IV, i, 380 (F): "So please my Lord the Duke, and all
the Court/ To quit the fine for one
halfe of his goods,/ I am content"

Jn., IV, i, 17 (F): "So I were out of prison, and kept
Sheepe/ I should be merry as the day
is long"

TGV, III, i, 334 (F): "It's no matter for that; so shee
sleepe not in her talke"

3H6, II, vi, 98 (F): "Ile crosse the Sea,/ To effect this
marriage, so it please my Lord"

Son. CXXXVI, 11 (1609): "For nothing hold me, so it please
thee hold"

2H6, III, i, 379 (F): "Say that he thrive, as 'tis great
like he will"

2H6, III, i, 376 (F): "Say he be taken, rackt, and tortured"

Ven., 439 (1593): "Say that the sence of feeling were
bereft me"

Shr., II, i, 171 (F): "Say that she raile"

TGV, III, ii, 49 (F): "But say this weede her love from
Valentine,/ It followes not that
she will love sir Thurio"

R3, III, i, 75 (F): "But say, my Lord, it were not registred"
Indicative:

JC, IV, iii, 271 (F): "If thou do'st nod, thou break'st
thy Instrument"

2H6, III, ii, 291 (F): "if thou do'st pleade for him,/
Thou wilt but adde encrease unto
my Wrath"

Tro., IV, iv, 129 (F and Q₁): "if thou do(')st not...Ile
cut thy throate"

TGV, III, i, 257 (F): "and if thou seest my Boy/ Bid him
make haste"

Jn., II, i, 401 (F): "And if thou hast the mettle of a
king...Turne thou the mouth of thy
Artillerie...against these sawcie
walles"

LLL, V, ii, 232 (F and Q₁): "Nay then two treyes, an if
you grow so nice"

Shr., I, ii, 82-83 (F): "nothing comes amisse, so monie
comes withall"

b) Subjunctive:

Wiv., II, i, 90-91 (F): "unlesse hee know some straine in
mee...hee would never have boorded
me in this furie"

Jn., III, i, 194 (F): "raise the power of France upon his
head,/ Unlesse he doe submit himselfe
to Rome"

Tro., V, iii, 106 (F and Q₁): "unlesse a man were curst"

TGV, I, ii, 78 (F): "Unlesse it have a false Interpreter"

Ado, III, ii, 37 (F): "unlesse hee have a fancy to this
foolery"

Rom., II, ii, 76 (F and Q₂) : "but thou love me, let them
finde me here"

Cym., I, v, 81 (F): "Except she bend her humor"

1H6, II, v, 111 (F): "Mourne not, except thou sorrow for
my good"

2H6, V, i, 9 (F): "I cannot give due action to my words,/
Except a Sword or Scepter ballance it"

H5, IV, iv, 10 (F): "thou dyest on point of Fox, except O
Signieur thou doe give to me egregious
Ransome"

Err., V, i, 55 (F): Abbess: "...Which of these sorrowes is
he subiect too?"

Adriana: "To none of these, except it
be the last"

TGV, II, iv, 140 (F): "Now, no discourse, except it be of
love"

TGV, III, i, 178 (F): "Except I be by Silvia in the night,/
There is no musicke in the Nightingale"

1H6, I, i, 43 (F): "And ne're throughout the yeere to
Church thou go'st,/ Except it be to
pray against thy foes"

Err., III, ii, 92 (F): "such a one, as a man may not speake
of, without he say sir reverence"

Indicative:

Tro., I, ii, 17 (F): "So do all men, unlesse they are

drunke, sicke, or have no legges"

Cym., I, v, 16 (F): "Unlesse thou think'st me divellish"

AWW, V, iii, 284 (F): "Unlesse thou telst me where thou
hadst this Ring,/ Thou diest
within this houre"

Err., V, i, 211 (F): "Nere may I looke on day, nor sleepe
on night,/ But she tels to your
Highnesse simple truth"

Ant., III, xi, 47-48 (F): "death will cease her, but/. Your
comfort makes the rescue"

Wiv., III, v, 15 (F): "I had beene drown'd, but that the
shore was shelvy and shallow"

Err., IV, i, 3 (F): "Nor now I had not, but that I am
bound/ To Persia, and want Gilders
for my voyage"

Tmp., I, ii, 4-5 (F): "The skye it seemes would powre down
stinking pitch,/ But that the Sea...
Dashes the fire out"

Tro., IV, ii, 8-9 (134): "but that the busie day/ Wak't by
the Larke, hath rouz'd the ribald
Crowes,/ And dreaming night will
hide our ioyes no longer,/ I
would not from thee"

Note 1. When the condition lies in the future (or is regarded as being in the future), the doubt concerning its fulfilment is sometimes expressed in Shakespeare, as it still is in the literary language, by shall, which was formerly applicable in the future to all persons (§ 614¹³⁵) and was very common in temporal clauses (§ 610¹³⁴). (Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1519.

MM, III, i, 209-210 (F): "and much please the absent Duke,
if peradventure he shall ever
returne"

But: MM, III, i, 197-198 (F): "if ever he returne, and I can
speake to him"

Luc., 655 (1594): "If all these pettie ils shall change thy
good,/ The sea within a puddels wombe
is hersed"

AWW, V, iii, 124 (F): "If you shall prove/ This Ring was ever
hers, you shall as easie/ Prove that
I husbanded her bed in Florence"

WT, I, i, 1 (F): "If you shall chance...to visit Bohemia...
you shall see...great difference"

Note 2. The Preterite subjunctive (which has a distinctive form only in were) is never replaced by the indicative in Shakespeare.

TGV, IV, ii, 127 (F): "If 'twere a substance you would sure
deceive it"

TGV, IV, i, 30 (F): "nere repent it, if it were done so"

Note 3. Sentences that contain a comparison with a supposed condition require the subjunctive for the latter (in so far as it can be recognized as a subjunctive). As if, as (sometimes with the inversion of the subject), as though (also like as) are the conjunctions used in such sentences. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 890.

Oth., III, iii, 4 (F): "I warrant it grieves my Husband, //
As if the cause were his"

Ham., II, i, 83 (F): "with a looke so pitious in purport, //
As if he had been loosed out of hell, //
To speake of horrors: he comes before
me"

Lr., V, iii, 201 (F and Q₁) : "You looke as you had something
more to say"

Shr., V, i, 17 (F): "What's he that knockes as he would
beat downe the gate?"

Inversion of the subject:

Shr., II, i, 160 (F): "with twentie such vilde tearmes, //
As had she studied to misuse me so"

Shr., II, i, 179 (F): "If she do bid me packe, Ile give
her thanks, / As though she bid me
stay by her a weeke"

Tro., I, ii, 7 (F): "like as there were husbandry in Warre/
Before the Sunne rose, hee was harnest
lyte"

Note 4. The inversion of the subject in order to show a conditional clause is used extensively in Shakespeare. In the modern language it is much less common than formerly and is possible with modal verbs only in the Preterite and Pluperfect (were he = if he were; had he been; could he but do this; should he ever come), and although it is used with principal verbs in the Pluperfect, in the Preterite it is found only to a limited extent in the periphrastic form with do (did he but go there), apart from the verbs be and have (were you my true friend, had you the feelings of a gentleman). Inverted clauses like meet I, sat they for if I meet, if they sat are no longer accepted. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 882.

Shr., III, ii, 127 (F): "We will perswade him be it possible,
To put on better ere he goe to Church"

Shr., II, i, 125 (F): "Ile assure her of/ Her widdow-hood,
be it that she survive me"

Tro., II, ii, 195 (F): "Were it not glory that we more
affected,/ Then the performance of
our heaving spleenes,/ I would not
wish a drop of Troian blood,/ Spent more in her defence"

~~XXX~~ Tro., II, ii, 139 (F and Q₁): "Were I alone to passe the
difficulties...Paris
should ne(')re retract(,) what he hath done"

2H6, III, i, 305 (F): "Thy fortune, Yorke, hadst thou beene
Regent there,/ Might happily have
prov'd farre worse then his"

JC, III, i, 200 (F): "Had I as many eyes, as thou hast
wounds,/ Weeping as fast as they
streame forth thy blood,/ It would
become me better"

TGV, V, iv, 110 (F): "were man/ But Constant, he were
perfect"

2H6, III, i, 22 (F): "And should you fall, he is the next
will mount"

AYL, V, iv, 12 (F): "That will I, should I die the houre
after"

2H6, V, i, 201 (F): "And that Ile write upon thy Burgonet,/
Might I but know thee by thy housed
Badge"

2H6, III, ii, 60-61 (F): "Might liquid teares, or heart-
offending groanes,/ Or blood-
consuming sighes recall his Life;/
I would be blinde with weeping,
sicke with grones"

2H6, V, ii, 57 (F): "Meet I an infant of the house of Yorke,/
Into as many gobbits will I cut it"

Ant., IV, vi, 6 (F): "Prove this a prosp'rous day, the
three nook'd world/ Shall beare the
Olive freely"

MV, III, ii, 61 (F and Q₁): "Live thou, I live"

Cym., IV, iii, 30 (F): "Come more, for more you're ready"

MV, III, ii, 20 (F and Q₁): "(prove it so)/ Let Fortune
goe to hell for it, not I"

Err., I, ii, 27 (F): "soone at five a clocke,/ Please you,
Ile meete with you upon the Mart"

Acco, II, ii, 52 (F and Q₁): "Grow this to what adverse
issue it can, I will put it
in practise"

Oth., V, i, 14 (F): "Live Rodorigo,/ He calles me to a
restitution large/ Of Gold, and Iewels,
that I bob'd from him"

Mac., III, i, 26 (F): "Goe not my Horse the better,/ I
must become a borrower of the Night"

Indicative (once):

Err., IV, i, 12 (F): "Pleaseth you walke with me downe to
his house,/ I will discharge my bond,
and thanke you too" (it is suppressed)

Cor., III, iii, 70 (F): "Within thine eyes sate twenty
thousand deaths...I would say/ Thou
lyest"

A concessive clause introduced by though (although) usually requires the indicative (which in Shakespeare is also found after albeit, for all) if what is conceded is regarded by the speaker as a fact. Uncertainty and doubt as regards the latter can be expressed by the use of the subjunctive. In this respect Shakespeare is simply following the usage that existed before him. In clauses introduced by a generalizing pronoun or adverb (whoever, whatever, however), as well as in disjunctive concessive clauses (whether...or), both moods are possible. The subjunctive is more common in concessive clauses characterized by the inversion of the subject. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 750, 883-886.

Subjunctive:

Wiv., II, ii, 230 (F): "Some say, that though she appeare honest to mee, yet in other places shee enlargeth her mirth so farre, that there is shrewd construction made of her"

1H6, V, v, 38 (F): "Her Father is no better than an Earle,/
Although in glorious Titles he excell"

Err., IV, ii, 28 (F): "My heart praies for him, though my tongue doe curse"

MV, I, i, 56 (F): "they'll not shew their teeth in way of smile,/
Though Nestor sweare the iest be laughable"

Son. XXXIV, 10 (1609): "Though thou repent, yet I have still the losse"

AWW, III, iv, 33 (F): "my greatest greefe,/
Though little he do feelee it, set downe sharpely"

Oth., II, i, 31 (F^{and p.}): "this same Cassio, tho(ugh) he speake of comfort,...yet he lookes sadly"

Luc., 560 (1594): "Tears harden lust though marble were with rayning" (Here the concessive clause contains a factual experience)

Inversion:

Jn., III, iii, 31 (F): "creepe time nere so slow,/
Yet it shall come, for me to doe thee

good"

Ham., III, ii, 345 (F): "We shall obey, were she ten times
our Mother"

Ven., 575 (1593): "Were beautie under twentie locks kept
fast,/ Yet love breaks through"

R2, I, iii, 85 (F): "How ever heaven or fortune cast my lot"
(But cast may be plural here)

AWW, V, iii, 121 (F): "how ere the matter fall"

1H4, V, iv, 37 (F): "mine I am sure thou art, whoere thou be"

1H6, I, iii, 7 (F): "Who ere he be, you may not be let in"

Shr., III, ii, 235 (F): "heere she stands, touch her who
ever dare"

Cf. Tim., V, i, 212 (F): "who so please/ To stop Affliction,
let him take his haste"

Cym., III, vi, 80-81 (F): "what ere it be,/ What paine it
cost"

Tit., V, i, 82 (F and Q₁): "By that same God, what God so
ere it be"

TN, I, iii, 123-124 (F): "As any man in Illyria, whatsoever
he be, under the degree of my
betters"

Ven., 304 (1593): "And where he runne, or flie, they know
not whether"

Jn., I, i, 75 (F): "But once he slanderd me with bastardy:/
But where I be as true begot or no,/
That still I lay upon my mothers head"

Indicative:

Wiv., II, i, 241-243 (F): "Though Page...stands so firmly
on his wives frailty: yet, I
put-off my opinion so easily"

Wiv., II, iii, 48 (F): "though wee are Iustices, and
Doctors...wee have some salt of
our youth in us"

2H6, II, iv, 101 (F): "Sherife farewell, and better then I
fare,/ Although thou hast beene
Conduct of my shame"

Tro., I, ii, 320 (F): "though my hearts Contents firme love
doth beare,/ Nothing of that shall
from mine eyes appeare"

2H6, III, ii, 57 (F): "Although the Duke was enemie to him,/
Yet he most Christian-like laments
his death"

AYL, I, i, 52-54 (F): "I have as much of my father in mee,
as you, albeit I confesse your
comming before me is neerer to his
reverence"

Cym., II, iii, 61 (F): "A worthy Fellow,/ Albeit he comes
on angry purpose now"

Wiv., I, i, 281 (F): "for all you are my man, goe wait
upon my Cosen Shallow"

Wiv., V, v, 204 (F): "(for all he was in womans apparrell)
I would not have had him"

AWW, III, ii, 115-117 (F): "Who ever shoots at him, I set
him there./ Who ever charges
on his forward brest/ I am the
Caitiffe that do hold him too't"

1H6, V, iii, 52 (F): "Margaret my name...who so ere thou art"

Mac., IV, i, 47 (F): "Open Lockes, who ever knockes"

Son. CXXXIII, 11 (1609): "Who ere keepes me, let my heart
be his garde"

TN, III, iv, 161-162 (F): "whatsoever thou art, thou art
but a scurvy fellow"

AWW, V, i, 37 (F): "you shall finde your selfe to be well
thankt what e're falles more"

AYL, II, vii, 109 (F): "what ere you are"

TGV, III, i, 100 (F): "Take no repulse, what ever she doth
say"

AYL, III, i, ~~105~~ 5 (F): "Finde out thy brother wheresoere
he is"

MM, I, ii, 44 (F): "that thou hast; whether thou art
tainted, or free"

§ 181 If a consecutive clause containing the idea of a logical result simultaneously expresses a wish or intention, or if the latter can be understood from the nature of the action (cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., II, 137), then the subjunctive is used (examples under a)), or, in the Present tense, a periphrastic form with shall (examples under b)). However the indicative (now used almost exclusively in consecutive clauses) is used in other cases when only the succession or simultaneity of two causally connected facts is asserted. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 891.

a) Subjunctive:

Oth., III, iii, 364-365 (F): "Make me to see't: or (at the least) so prove it,/ That the probation beare no Hindge, nor Loope,/ To hang a doubt on"

Ant., IV, xv, 43-44 (F): "let me rayle so hye,/ That the false Huswife Fortune, breake her Wheele"

TGV, III, i, 44-45 (F): "doe it so cunningly/ That my discovery be not aimed at"

Indicative:

TGV, III, i, 109 (F): "kept severely from resort of men,/ That no man hath accesse by day to her"

TGV, III, i, 112 (F): "the doores be lockt, and keyes kept safe,/ That no man hath recourse to her by night"

TGV, III, ii, 5 (F): "Since his exile she hath despis'd me most...That I am desperate of obtaining her"

Jn., III, iv, 111 (F): "And bitter shame hath spoyl'd the sweet words taste,/ That it yeelds nought but shame and bitterness"

Mac., III, vi, 38-39 (F): "this report/ Hath so exasperate their King, that hee/ Prepares for some attempt of warre"

b)

AWW, III, vi, 26 (F): "wee will binde and hoodwinke him so,
that he shall suppose no other but
that he is carried into the Leager
of the adversaries"

JC, II, ii, 124-125 (F): "so neere will I be,/ That your
best Friends shall wish I had
beene further"

After main clauses that contain a statement of volition, whether it is expressed directly by an appropriate verb or indirectly, there is a subjunctive in the object clause (examples under a)). After verbs of asking and wishing the periphrasis with may is very common (examples under b)). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 310; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 869.

a)

2H6, V, i, 80 (F): "We give thee for reward a thousand
Markes,/ And will, that thou henceforth
attend on us"

2H6, IV, vi, 2-4 (F): "I charge and command, that of the
Cities cost/ The pissing Conduit
run nothing but Clarret Wine"

WT, II, iii, 173-175 (F): "We enioyne thee,/ As thou art
Liege-man to us, that thou
carry/ This female Bastard hence"

WT, II, iii, 180-181 (F): "I doe in Iustice charge thee ...
That thou commend it strangely
to some place"

AYL, II, iv, 64 (F): "I pray you, one of you question
yon'd man"

1H4, III, iii, 171 (Q₁): "I pray God my girdle breake"

Mac., II, i, 31-32 (F): "Goe bid thy Mistresse, when my
drinke is ready,/ She strike upon
the Bell"

Cym., IV, ii, 108 (F): "I wish my Brother make good time
with him"

WT, I, ii, 400-402 (F): "I coniure thee...that thou declare"

Oth., III, iii, 359 (F): "Villaine, be sure thou prove my
Love a Whore"

H8, II, ii, 78-79 (F): "have great care,/ I be not found a
Talker"

Tmp., I, ii, 452-453 (F): "I charge thee/ That thou attend
me"

MM, V, i, 48-50 (F): "I coniure thee...That thou neglect me not"

JC, III, ii, 65 (F): "I do intreat you, not a man depart"
Temp., V, i, 118-119 (F): "I resigne, and doe entreat/ Thou
pardon me my wrongs"

TN, II, ii, 19 (F): "Fortune forbid my out-side have not
charm'd her"

WT, IV, iv, 215 (F): "Forewarne him, that he use no
scurrilous words"

R3, II, i, 91-94 (F): "God grant, that some lesse Noble...
Deserve not worse then wretched
Clarence did,/ And yet go currant
from Suspition"

MM, I, ii, 185 (F): "Implore her...that she make friends/
To the strict deputie"

Rom., III, iii, 148 (F and Q₂): "But looke thou stay not
till the watch be set"

R3, III, iv, 80 (F): "Lovell and Ratcliffe, looke that it
be done"

MM, II, ii, 125 (F): "Pray heaven she win him"

H8, II, ii, 64 (F): "Pray God he be not angry"

Rom., V, iii, 24 (F): "and Q₂): "See thou deliver it"

Ham., I, iii, 59 (F): "And these few Precepts in thy
memory,/ See thou Character"

(Q₂): "And these few precepts in thy
memory/ Looke thou character"

Shr., III, i, 44 (F): "take heede he heare us not"

R3, I, iii, 140 (F): "I would to God my heart were Flint"

Jn., III, iv, 48 (F): "I am not mad, I would to heaven I
were"

JC, II, i, 4 (F): "I would it were my fault to sleepe so
soundly"

MV, II, viii, 32 (F): "I thought upon Anthonio when he told
me,/ And wisht in silence that it
were not his"

Ham., III, i, 38-40 (F): "I do wish/ That your good Beauties
be the happy cause/ Of Hamlets
wildenesse"

AWW, I, iii, 70 (F): "May it please you Madam, that hee
bid Hellen come to you"

2H6, IV, i, 140 (F): "It is our pleasure one of them depart"

WT, III, ii, 9-10 (F): "It is his Highnesse pleasure, that
the Queene/ Appeare in person,
here in Court"

b)

JC, III, i, 13 (F): "I wish your enterprize to day may thrive"

JC, III, i, 52-54 (F): "I kisse thy hand, but not in
flattery Caesar:/ Desiring thee,
that Publius Cymber may/ Have an
immediate freedome of repeale"

1H6, III, i, 200-201 (F): "Exeter doth wish,/ His dayes
may finish, ere that haplesse
time"

Jn., III, i, 90 (F): "let wives with childe/ Pray that
their burthens may not fall this day"

Ado, I, i, 151 (F) and Q₁): "he heartily praies some
occasion may detain us longer"

Note. The use of the Preterite subjunctive after a Present (or Preterite subjunctive) in the main clause (which may also be elliptical) formerly indicated, as it still does, that some difficulty stands in the way of the realization of a wish or that this is impossible in the circumstances or inherently.

Err., IV, iv, 154 (F): "I long that we were safe and sound
aboord"

Mac., V, v, 50 (F): "I...wish th'estate o'th'world were
now undon"

AYL, II, iv, 75-77 (F): "I pittie her,/ And wish...My
fortunes were more able to releve
her"

AYL, II, vii, 42 (F): "O that I were a foole"

JC, V, i, 123 (F): "O that a man might know/ The end of
this dayes businesse, ere it come"

AYL, I, ii, 223 (F): "I would I were invisible"

AWW, I, i, 24 (F): "Would for the Kings sake hee were living"

§ 183. The subjunctive is also possible in relative clauses that express a wish (examples under a)), an assumption (subjective statement of opinion or rhetorical question)(examples under b)), or that belong to a hypothetical complex sentence E (examples under c)); however this use is not common. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 876.

a)

R3, I, iii, 59 (F): "His Royall Grace/ (Whom God preserve better then you would wish)/ Cannot be quiet scarce a breathing while"

R3, IV, iv, 188 (F): "Therefore take with thee my most greevous Curse,/ Which in the day of Battell tyre thee more/ Then all the compleat Armour that thou wear'st"

Shr., I, i, 251 (F): "One thing more rests, that thy selfe execute"

b)

Tim., IV, iii, 346 (F): "What Beast could'st thou bee, that were not subiect to a Beast"

MM, I, ii, 16 (F): "There's not a Souldier of us all, that in the thanks-giving before meate, do rallish the petition well, that praies for peace"

Cym., V, iv, 178 (F): "a man that were to sleepe your sleepe"

c)

Ham., I, i, 91 (F): "a Moity...which had return'd/ To the Inheritance of Fortinbras,/ Had he bin Vanquisher"

(Q₂): "a moitie...which had retorne/ To the inheritance of Fortinbrasse,/ Had he bin vanquisher"

The Imperative

§ 184 Two forms are found for the first person plural: the old subjunctive (go we!) and the periphrastic form with let (let (u)s go!). The latter form was more common in the conversational speech of Shakespeare's time, as it still is today; in The Merry Wives of Windsor, which is almost entirely in prose, it is the only form that is used. The second person singular and plural are often followed by a non-emphatic pronoun. Traces of this are still found in lookee!, harkee! (dialect) and mind you!, mark you! Apart from this the pronoun now precedes the imperative (you tell him!) and is stressed. In spoken English there is a slight pause between the pronoun and the imperative, and this differentiates it from the second person of the Present indicative. This construction, though common in O.E. and M.E., became rarer in later M.E. and gradually disappeared; but it reappeared about the end of the 17th century. F. T. Visser (Syntax, § 25) has been unable to find a single example between 1475 and 1695. On the subject of the pronoun with the imperative see Celia Millward, "Pronominal case in Shakespearean imperatives," Language, XLII (1966), 10-17. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 23-5.

Wiv., I, i, 67 (F): "let us see honest M^r Page"

Wiv., II, i, 96-97 (F): "Let's bee reveng'd on him: let's
appoint him a meeting"

Wiv., II, i, 111 (F): "Let's consult together against this
greasie Knight"

Wiv., II, iii, 101 (F): "Let us wag then"

Wiv., III, iii, 244 (F): "Let's go in Gentlemen"

Wiv., IV, ii, 210 (F): "Let's obey his humour a little
further"

Wiv., IV, iv, 26 (F): "let us two devise to bring him
thether"

Wiv., V, ii, 16 (F): "Lets away: follow me"

Wiv., V, v, 80 (F): "let us not forget"

Wiv., V, v, 255 (F): "let us every one go home"

Ado, III, i, 32 (F and Q₁): "go we neare her"

2H6, I, i, 199 (F): "Ioyne we together"

Tit., IV, ii, 132 (F and Q₁): "Then sit we downe and let
us all consult"

Wiv., II, ii, 276 (F): "come you to me at night"

Wiv., II, ii, 295 (F): "Come to me soone at night"

H5, III, vi, 126-144 (F): "Thus sayes my King: Say thou to
Harry of England...Tell him...
Bid him therefore consider his
ransome...To this adde defiance:
and tell him"

Wiv., V, i, 11 (F): "Bee you in the Parke about midnight...
and you shall see wonders"

Wiv., I, iii, 80 (F): "Goe, beare thou this Letter to
Mistris Page"

Pronoun stressed in antithesis:

3H6, V, v, 71 (F): "What? wilt thou not? Then Clarence do
it thou"

1H4, III, iii, 27 (F): "Doe thou amend thy Face, and Ile
amend thy Life"

1H4, II, iv, 32 (F): "doe thou stand in some by-roome,
while I question my puny Drawer"

Stereotype uses:

Wiv., II, ii, 136 (F): "Farethee well"

Wiv., III, ii, 85 (F): "fare you well"

Wiv., III, iv, 21 (F): "harke you hither"

Wiv., III, iv, 29 (F): "Hark ye"

Cor., V, ii, 77 (F): "looke thee, heere's water to quench it"

MM, IV, iii, 51 (F): "Looke you Sir"

2H4, II, ii, 117 (F): "looke you he writes"

(Q₁): "looke you how he writes"

WT, III, iii, 116 (F): "looke thee heere boy"

Note. The use of the Perfect imperative in be gone!, have done!
reveals the wish and the impatience of the speaker to see
accomplished something that has not yet taken place.

Wiv., III, iii, 19 (F): "Be gone, and come when you are
call'd"

Wiv., III, v, 56 (F): "Well, be gone: I will not misse her"

TGV, II, iv, 99 (F): "Have done, have done: here come's ^ey
gentleman"

The Infinitive.

185
The use of the pure infinitive was formerly much freer than today. Following the example of bid, Shakespeare uses the infinitive without the preposition after desire, entreat, persuade, pray, will (meaning 'wish'), intend, list, and also after force, enforce, constrain; command, charge; cause, though the form with to is preferred in most cases. Associated with let the following occur sporadically with the pure infinitive: beteem 'permit', endure 'allow', suffer, vouchsafe 'allow', likewise forbid 'let not' (perhaps also because of its similarity to bid). Go and come are often found without the preposition. Periphrastic gin 'begin' followed by the pure infinitive was very common in M.E. (E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 8). The same is true of help when the verb itself is in the infinitive. The pure infinitive occurs after teach and ought as early as M.E. (E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 16 and 6). Other sporadic cases are given in the examples. Both forms of the infinitive are found after (it is) best and after personal expressions like you were best (better) that derive from impersonal constructions.

These sporadic cases of the infinitive without the preposition may well be conditioned by poetic diction, which inclines towards archaic speech-forms, and by metre; the influence of synonymous verbs which are followed by the pure infinitive may also occasionally be a factor. The introduction of to after verbs like please and beseech was necessary because here the infinitive and imperative constructions could not always be distinguished. New English prose rhythm was certainly of importance for the spread of to. This emerges clearly from the different forms of the infinitive after the active and passive: "they saw him come" - "he was seen to come". Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 342-5; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 898-9.

Cym., III, i, 73 (F): "Which he, to seeke of me againe,
perforce,/ Behoves me keepe at

utterance" (elsewhere with to)

Hem., I, ii, 140-142 (F): "so loving to my Mother,/ That
he might not beteene the windes
of heaven/ Visit her face too
roughly"

(Q₂): "so loving to my mother,/ That
he might not beteeme the winds
of heaven/ Visite her face too
roughly" (the only example)

1H6, I, i, 67 (F): "These news would cause him once more
yeeld the Ghost"

H8, IV, ii, 78 (F): "Good Griffith,/ Cause the Musitians
play me that sad note"

H8, IV, ii, 128 (F): "Patience, is that Letter/ I caus'd
you write, yet sent away?"

(the only examples; elsewhere with to)

Tro., I, i, 26 (Q₁): "yea may chance burne your lippes"

(F): "you may chance to burne your lips"

Ant., IV, vi, 8-9 (F): "Go charge Agrippa,/ Plant those
that have revolted in the Vant"

(the only example)

Jn., III, i, 74 (F): "Heere is my Throne, bid kings come
bow to it"

(common; when followed by to, come is used periphrastically
meaning 'to come to pass', 'to come to be', cf. A. Schmidt,
Shakespeare-Lexicon under come)

Cor., IV, v, 63 (F): "necessitie commands me name my selfe"

Shr., V, ii, 96 (F): "I command her come to me"

(quite common; also found with to)

Cor., V, iii, 100 (F): "Constraines them weepe, and shake
with feare & sorow"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Lr., IV, v, 35 (F and Q₁): "I pray desire her call her
wisedome to her"

(several examples; elsewhere with to)

Shr., IV, iii, 75 (F): "Your betters have indur'd me say

my minde"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Tim., III, v, 36 (F): "If Wrongs be evilles, and inforce
us kill"

TGV, IV, iii, 16 (F): "my father would enforce me marry/
Vaine Thurio" (the only examples)

Tit., II, iii, 138 (F and Q₁): "intreat her heare me but a
word"

(quite common; also found with to)

R2, V, iii, 50 (Q₁): "The treason that my haste forbids me
shew"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Ven., 72 (1593): "Raine added to a river that is ranke,/
Perforce will force it overflow the banke"

Cym., II, iii, 22 (F): "Phoebus gins arise"

(common; also found with to. Begin always takes the
prepositional infinitive, cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-
Lexicon, under begin)

HM, I, ii, 82 (F): "let's goe learne the truth of it"

(very common; the modern construction with and is also
found in Shakespeare: AYL, II, iii, 31 (F): "would'st
thou have me go & beg my food")

Rom., IV, ii, 34 (F and Q₂): "will you go(e) with me into
my Closet,/ To helpe me sort
such needfull ornaments"

Tro., III, i, 163 (F and Q₁): "I must woe you,/ To helpe
unarme our Hector"

(more commonly with to)

MND, II, i, 138 (F): "How long within this wood intend you
stay?" (the only example; elsewhere

with to)

WT, IV, i, 26 (F): "What of her insues/ I list not prophesie"
(the only example; elsewhere with to)

JC, I, i, 3 (F): "you ought not walke...without the signe/
Of your Profession"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

1H6, IV, i, 132 (F): "Let me ~~pers~~swade you take a better
course"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Tro., V, ix, 8 (F): "let one be sent/ To pray Achilles see
us at our Tent"

Shr., III, i, 82 (F): "your father prayes you leave your
books"

2H6, II, iv, 81-82 (F): "I pray/ You use her well"

H8, I, iv, 74 (F): "pray'em take their pleasures"

(the only examples; elsewhere with to)

Tro., II, iii, 196-197 (F): "And never suffers matter of
the world,/ Enter his thoughts"

Tmp., III, i, 62-63 (F): "to suffer/ The flesh-flie blow
my mouth"

(the only examples; elsewhere with to)

MV, I, iii, 162 (F): "Whose owne hard dealings teaches
them suspect/ The thoughts of others"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Err., V, i, 282 (F): "Most mighty Duke, vouchsafe me speak
a word"

H5, II, iv, 90 (F): "Willing you over-looke this Pedigree"
(the only example; also found with to)

1H4, I, iii, 159 (Q₁): "Nay then I cannot blame his coosen
king,/ That wisht him on the barren
mountaines Starve"

(F): "Nay then I cannot blame his Cousin
King,/ That wish'd him on the barren
Mountaines starv'd"

1H6, II, v, 96 (F): "the rest, I wish thee gather"

Ado, III, i, 42 (F and Q₁): "To wish him wrastle with
affection"

AWW, II, i, 134 (F): "such thanks I give,/ As one neere
death to those that wish him live"

(the only examples in this sense; elsewhere with to)

Oth., II, iii, 190 (Q₁): "Worthy Montano, you were wont be civill"

(F): "Worthy Montano, you were wont to be
civill"

(the only example; elsewhere with to)

Shr., I, i, 78-79 (F): "it is best put finger in the eye"

TGV, I, i, 110 (F): "'twere best pound you"

But: TGV, I, ii, 134 (F): "If you respect them; best to take
them up"

Shr., V, i, 16 (F): "They're busie within, you were best
knocke lowder"

AYL, IV, i, 73 (F): "you were better speake first"

Tro., I, iii, 370 (F): "we were better parch in Affricke
Sunne"

(Q₁): "it were better parch in Afrique
Sunne"

TN, II, ii, 27 (F): "she were better love a dreame"

But: MM, V, i, 177 (F and Q₁): "I were best to cut my left
hand off"

MV, II, viii, 33 (F and Q₁): "Yo(u) were best to tell
Anthonio what you heare"

Lr., I, iv, 259-260 (F): "I do beseech you/ To understand
my purposes aright".

(Q₁): "I doe beseech you understand my
purposes aright"

(in the prose version understand may also be interpreted
as an imperative)

AYL, I, ii, 166 (F): "so please you give us leave"

(here give may be an imperative, but this is unlikely)

TGV, I, ii, 7 (F): "Please you repeat their names"

But: Shr., Ind., i, 82 (F): "So please your Lorshippe to
accept our dutie"

Note. In modal clauses of a consecutive character which are
preceded by so the pure infinitive can no longer be used
after as.

MM, I, iv, 17-18 (F): "can you so steed me,/ As bring me
to the sight of Isabella".

H5, V, i, 31 (F): "Will you be so good, scauld Knave, as
eate it?"

Nowadays as is often omitted before to in this type of

sentence. This was a feature of the older language, though as is found with the prepositional infinitive as early as Chaucer's Troilus and Criseyde, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 26.

MND, I, i, 74-75 (F): "Thrice blessed they that master so
their blood,/ To undergo such
maiden pilgrimage"

TN, II, ii, 10 (F): "And one thing more, that you ~~xxxxx~~ be
never so hardie to come againe in his
affaires"

MND, IV, i, 148-149 (F): "hatred is so farre from iealousie,/
To sleepe by hate, and feare no
enmity"

186
§ ~~187~~

The use of the prepositional infinitive is dependent on the requirements of the rhythm of the verse. In Shakespeare the preposition occasionally occurs after bid, feel, hear, mark, see, but in general the pure infinitive is the normal form, and this is now the rule for the active. After make, however, to is more common than the pure infinitive, which is now normal in the spoken language (examples under c)). Both forms are found after need ~~(not)~~ ^(cf. F. T. Visser, *Syntax*, §§ 1347-8.) (not). The pure infinitive is usual with dare 'venture', but to sometimes occurs after the Present tense; the Preterite dared still occurs occasionally with the prepositional infinitive in the literary language (examples under b)). Would have takes the infinitive both with and without to. The pure infinitive is preferred after had rather (examples under c)). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 342-5.

a)

R2, II, ii, 115 (F): "Whom conscience, and my kindred bids
to right"

(in accordance with modern usage)

The pure infinitive is also found after bid in the Passive:

Oth., I, iii, 15 (F): "So was I bid report here to the State"

TN, I, v, 315-317 (F): "Me thinkes I feelee this youths
perfections/ With an invisible, and
subtle stealth/ To creepe in at
mine eyes" (more commonly without to)

Err., V, i, 25 (F): "Who heard me to denie it or forswear it?"

TN, III, i, 120 (F): "I had rather heare you to solicit that"

2H6, II, i, 94 (F): "my selfe have heard a Voyce,/ To call
him so"

(the only examples in this sense after an object; much more frequently without to)

Rom., III, v, 160 (F and Q₂): "Heare me with patience, but
to speake a word"

Cf. TN, V, i, 363 (F): "heare me speake"

TGV, III, i, 136 (F): "I pray thee let me feelee thy cloake
upon me"

Son. CXXXIII, 1 (1609): "Beshrew that heart that makes my
heart to groane"

Tit., IV, i, 21 (F and Q₁): "that made me to feare"
(very common; less frequently without to)

Ado., IV, i, 160-162 (F and Q₁): "I have markt,/ A thousand
blushing apparitions,/ To
start into her face"

(the only example; also occurs once without to: Tit., III,
i, 95 (F): "Who markes the waxing tide,/ Grow wave by wave")

Shr., I, i, 179 (F): "I saw her corraill lips to move"

Son. LXIV, 9-10 (1609): "I have scene such interchange of
state...to decay"

Son. CXIX, 4 (1609): "I saw my selfe to win"

(the only examples; elsewhere with to)

b) Need in an affirmative clause:

1H4, III, iii, 17 (F): "I was as vertuously given, as a
Gentleman need to be"

2H4, IV, i, 114 (F): "What thing, in Honor, had my Father
lost,/ That need to be reviv'd, and
breath'd in me?" (the only examples)

Cym., III, iv, 13-14 (F): "thou need'st/ But keepe that
count'nance stil"

AWW, III, v, 96 (F): "You neede but pleade your honourable
priviledge" (the only examples)

Elsewhere only in a negative sense:

AWW, III, v, 27 (F): "I neede not to advise you further"

R2, III, iv, 17 (F and Q₁): "what I have(,) I need not to
repeat(e)"

AWW, V, ii, 11 (F): "you neede not to stop your nose"

2H4, III, ii, 125 (F and Q₁): "you need not to have prickt
me " (quite common)

Cor., I, i, 45 (F): "I neede not be barren of Accusations"

3H6, V, iv, 70 (F): "I need not adde more fuell to your fire"

TGV, I, iii, 17 (F): "Nor need'st thou much importune me to
that" (very common)

Cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 763.

Err., I, ii, 60 (F): "how dar'st thou trust/ So great a
charge from thine owne custodie"

Wiv., II, i, 25 (F): "that he dares In this manner assay me?"

Per., V, i, 43(Q₁): "I durst wager"

(The pure infinitive is usual but to occurs nine times)

2H6, V, i, 22 (F): "why, thou...Should...dare to bring thy
Force so neere the Court"

Son. XXVI, 13 (1609): "Then may I dare to boast how I doe
love thee"

Oth., IV, ii, 12 (F): "I durst (my Lord) to wager, she is
honest"

MM, II, ii, 91 (F): "Those many had not dar'd to doe that
evill"

Wiv., IV, iv, 59 (F): "he dares to tread"

H5, II, ii, 81 (F): "You must not dare (for shame) to talke
of mercy"

2H6, IV, i, 80 (F): "daring to affye a mighty Lord"

Cym., III, iii, 34-35 (F): "that not dares/ To stride a
limit"

AWW, III, vi, 96 (F): "he...dares better be damnd then to
doo't"

c) After would have the infinitive is found both with and
without to:

AWW, V, ii, 30 (F): "what would you have me to doe?"

TM, V, i, 49-50 (F): "I would not have you to thinke"

Oth., IV, ii, 237 (F): "And that you would have me to do^Q."

IV, II, iii, 8-9 (F): "I would not have my Father/ See me
talke with thee"

TGV, I, ii, 25 (F): "would'st thou have me cast my love on
him?"

MV, II, v, 50 (F): "I would have him helpe to waste/ His
borrowed purse"

Had rather is occasionally found with to, but more usually
without:

Oth., I, iii, 191 (F): "I had rather to adopt a Child, then
get it"

MV, I, ii, 55 (Q₁): "I had rather be married to a deaths
head"

(F): "I had rather to be married to a deaths
head"

III, II, iv, 56 (F): "I had rather give my body, then my soule"

AYL, II, iv, 11 (F): "I had rather beare with you, then
beare you"

Note 1. The combination of for with the prepositional infinitive is now archaic in written English but was still found in the 17th century. It first occurs in the 12th century (OED under for 11) and had a wide use in M.E., where it not only indicated aim and purpose but assumed all the functions of the prepositional infinitive (see E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, ~~3rd ed.~~, III, 57-62). In Shakespeare the use of for to, whether in its original meaning or instead of the weakened to, is very rare.

Tit., IV, iii, 51 (Q₁): "We will sollicite heaven and move
the Gods,/ To send downe Iustice
for to wreake our wrongs"

Ham., .I, ii, 175 (Q₂): "Weele teach you for to drinke ere
you depart"

(F): "Wee'l teach you to drinke deepe,
ere you depart"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 438.

Note 2. Before an initial vowel sound the vowel of to can be elided, as is occasionally evident from the spelling of the First Folio:

Cym., III, iii, 3 (F): "this gate/ Instructs you how t'adore
the heavens"

H8, V, i, 91 (F): "T'attend your Highnesse pleasure"

Oth., I, ii, 16 (F): "with all his might, to enforce it on"

R2, IV, i, 165 (F): "To insinuate"

H8, II, iv, 107 (F): "T'oppose your cunning"

Cor., III, i, 198 (F): "To unbuild the Citie"

Lr., II, ii, 81 (F): "t'unloose" (Q₁): "to inloose"

Further examples in G. König, Der Vers in Shakespeares Drama (~~Strasbourg, 1888~~), p. 48.

Note 3. The "split infinitive" is not found in Shakespeare, though it was already in use as early as the 13th century. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 977-982.

Note 4. The pro-infinitive: "I have said all I meant to", very common in modern colloquial speech, does not occur in Shakespeare, although it is found as early as the beginning of the 14th century. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1000.

187
§ 187

The prepositional infinitive as subject occurs most often in sentences with the copula be and in this function it is connected with the gerund. In the modern language it usually indicates a concrete, specific action (To go near the place would be inadvisable), whereas the gerund has a more abstract character and is therefore used rather to express a generally valid observation or experience. This can be seen very clearly from the use of the gerund as object: he prefers fishing to shooting (quite general), he likes hunting (dancing), but though I like hunting I should prefer to shoot today; I should like to dance tonight. (This view has been disputed by ^{H. Kurath and} G. O. Curme (A Grammar of the English Language, ^{Boston and New York, 1931-1933} p. 491). Visser suggests (English Studies, XXVI (1944-5), 27) that in earlier English the choice was conditioned by considerations of euphony and rhythm.) Cf. H. Sweet, MEGr, § 2326; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 347; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 901.

3H6, II, i, 85 (F): "To weepe, is to make lesse the depth
of greefe"

2H6, II, iv, 41 (F): "To thinke upon my Pompe, shall be my
Hell"

Tim., III, v, 39 (F): "To revenge is no Valour, but to
beare"

Oth., III, iv, 67 ^{and Q₁} (F): "To loose't, or give't away, were
such perdition, / As nothing else
could match"

2H6, III, ii, 147 (F): "to survey his dead and earthy Image:/
What were it but to make my sorrow
greater?"

Tim., V, i, 24-29 (F): "Promising, is the verie Ayre
o'th'Time...To Promise, is most
Courtly and fashionable"

H8, I, i, 131 (F): "to climbe steepe ~~hilles~~ hilles/
Requires slow pace at first"

Tit., III, i, 245 (F and Q₁): "To weepe with them that weepe(,)
doth ease some deale"

Oth., V, ii, 54 (F): "to deny each Article with Oath,/
 Cannot remove, nor choake the strong
 Conception/ That I do grone withall"
Luc., 1324 (1594): "To see sad sights, moves more then
 heare them told"

§ 188 When several infinitives are dependent on one verb (frequently ~~an~~ auxiliary) the second or subsequent infinitive can take to, even when the first infinitive has no preposition. This use of to, no longer allowed, reveals an attempt to distinguish the infinitive form clearly, which seems to be particularly necessary when the governing verb stands at some distance; sometimes the preposition may also be used because of metrical requirements. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 967-8.

Ham., I, v, 15-19 (F): "I could a Tale unfold, whose lightest word/
Would...Make thy two eyes like Starres, start from their Spheres,
Thy knotty and combined locks to part,
And each particular haire to stand an end"

Tim., IV, ii, 33-34 (F): "Who would be so mock'd with Glory,
or to live/ But in a Dreame of Friendship"

H5, II, iv, 102-104 (F): "And bids you, in the Bowels of the Lord,
/ Deliver up the Crowne, and to take mercie/ On the poore Soules"

JC, IV, iii, 72-74 (F): "I had rather Coine my Heart,/ And drop my blood for Drachmaes, then to wring/
From the hard hands of Peazants, their vile trash"

TN, V, i, 343-347 (F): "tell me ...Why you have given me such cleare light of favour,
/ Bad me come smiling, and crosse-garter'd to you,
/ To put on yellow stockings, and to frowne/
Upon sir Toby, and the lighter peopple"

Jn., IV, ii, 239-241 (F): "didst let thy heart consent,/ And consequently, thy rude hand to acte/
The deed"

The active infinitive is found frequently in Shakespeare in places where now, especially in the spoken language, the passive infinitive is more common: "what's to do?" (TN, III, iii, 18 (F)) = what is to be done? There are various reasons for the change. In the 16th century a sentence like he is to teach could mean: 1. He is there to teach, he has the obligation (duty) to teach; 2. He is there to teach (as object), he is to be taught; 3. He is teachable. The construction is thus ambiguous. In modern times its sphere of use has been considerably curtailed by the fact that have has come to be widely used as a means of expressing an obligation; he is to teach was, however, still very common for he has to teach (he must teach) in the 17th century (see § 623; examples under a)). In order to avoid the possibility of a misinterpretation of the second case the passive infinitive was introduced: he is to be taught, as this form shows quite clearly that the verbal concept of the infinitive is the object (examples under b)). The third meaning of the sentence, which in Shakespeare's time was rare and perhaps already somewhat archaic (examples under c)), can be paraphrased in various ways according to the content: he is fit (worthy) to be taught, he is teachable (the use of the Romance suffix "-able" became widespread at the cost of the old construction). The replacement of the one form by several others thus became a necessity if ambiguity was to be avoided. The need for a clearer mode of expression was especially felt after the inflexion of the infinitive (or gerund) declined in the M.E. period and to became merely a sign of the infinitive, of whose original meaning nothing more was felt. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 350-1; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1384.

a)

Tim., I, ii, 156 (F): "I am to thanke you for't"

TGV, III, i, 59 (F): "I am to breake with thee of some

affaires/ That touch me neere"

Other examples in § 623.

Modern usage:

Oth., V, ii, 56 (F): "Thou art to dye"

Wiv., IV, ii, 127 (F): "you are not to goe loose any
longer, you must be pinnion'd"

b)

Ant., II, vi, 60 (F): "That's the next to do"

Mac., V, vii, 28 (F): "And little is to do"

AYL., I, ii, 121 (F): "the best is yet to doe"

Jn., I, i, 259 (F): "were I to get againe,/ Madam I would
not wish a better father"

Tmp., III, ii, 106 (F): "that most deeply to consider, is/
The beautie of his daughter"

Son., CXXIX, 2-4 (1609): "lust/ Is periurd...Savage,
extreame, rude, cruell, not to trust"

MM., IV, i, 76 (F): "Our Corne's to reape, for yet our Tithes
to sow"

Ant., II, vii, 64 (F): "what's else to say?"

Later usage:

3H6., II, i, 159 (F): "in this troublous time, what's to be
done?"

WT., V, ii, 47 (F): "Then have you lost a Sight which was to
bee seene, cannot be spoken of"

1H6., V, iii, 78-79 (F): "She's beautifull; and therefore
to be Wooed:/ She is a Woman; and
therefore to be Wonne"

MM., I, ii, 180 (F): "hee's not to be found"

c)

JC., I, iii, 40 (F): "This disturbed Skie is not to walke in"
(= fit to walk under, see Abbott, § 405; cf. the modern
expression: "this is no weather to take a walk in")

Tmp., II, ii, 94-96 (F): "his forward voyce now is to speake
well of his friend; his backward
voice, is to utter foule speeches,
and to detract"

Err., IV, i, 47 (F): "And I too blame have held him heere
too long"

Lr., I, ii, 44 (F): "The Contents...Are too blame"

(Q₁): "the contents...are too blame"

(= blameable)

The frequency of the spelling too blame suggests that in this case the construction was obsolete and had therefore been given a new interpretation.

§ 190

A very free use of the infinitive is characteristic of older English, but this was later considerably reduced, since it gave rise to misunderstandings because of its ambiguity. In Shakespeare too it often creates difficulties of interpretation. Here the infinitive, whether or not it is accompanied by a complement, represents conditional and causal subordinate clauses whose exact nature can only be determined from the context. The question arises as to how the construction originated. Some traces of the development can be recognized. For instance, the following example shows how the infinitive clause could take on the force of a conditional subordinate clause: "Ile give you a pottle of burn'd sacke, to give me recourse to him" (Wiv., II, i, 223 (F)). To give here means for giving, and the subject of the gerund is to be found in the preceding you, so that the phrase can be rendered by the equivalent conditional clause, if you give me recourse to him. The purpose expressed in the infinitive clause which is given as the motive for the action of the main clause leads to the conditional character of the former. The causal sense of the infinitive is closely interwoven with its temporal use (he was surprised to see this = - when he saw this). Its older use emerges clearly from the following example: "I shall greeve you to report the rest" (R2, II, ii, 95 (F)) = - in (by) reporting the rest; the infinitive clause here contains the cause of the effect promised in the main clause. In some sentences of this type, whether of a temporal, conditional or causal character, the original locative meaning of the infinitive is still apparent: "To doe this deed,/ Promotion followes" (WT, I, ii, 356 (F)) 'promotion follows if this deed is accomplished'. These older infinitive constructions have now been replaced by gerunds with the corresponding prepositions (in, by, for) so as to ensure clear and precise expression. Usually the infinitive clause has the same subject as the main clause, but infinitives are also found whose subject lies in a preceding possessive pronoun; the latter can be quite

indefinite though personal (one), or it may coincide with the person of the speaker (examples under b)). Cf. M. Deutschbein, System der neuenglischen Syntax (Köthen, 1917), § 69; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 953-6.

a) Temporal-causal:

Luc., 1031 (1594): "Poore hand why quiverst thou at this decree?/ Honor thy selfe to rid me of this shame" (= in (by) ridding)

MV, IV, i, 140 (F): "Thou but offend'st thy Lungs to speake so loud" (= in (by) speaking)

Tmp., III, i, 37 (F): "O my Father,/ I have broke your hest to say so" (= in (by) saying so)

Jn., III, iv, 44 (F): "Thou art holy to belye me so" (= in (by) belying)

MND, II, i, 244 (F): "I follow thee, and make a heaven of hell,/ To die upon the hand I love so well" (= in dying)

LLL, IV, iii, 362 (F): "Let's once loose our oathes to finde our selves,/ Or else we loose our selves, to keepe our oathes" (= in (by) keeping our oaths)

Causal:

AYL, V, ii, 109 (F): "If this be so, why blame you me to love you?" (= for loving, because I love)

JC, IV, iii, 10 (F): "you your selfe,/ Are much condemn'd to have an itching Palme" (= for having, because you have)

Shr., III, ii, 27 (F): "I cannot blame thee now to weepe" (= for weeping)

Mac., V, ii, 23 (F): "Who then shall blame/ His pester'd Senses to recoyle, and start" (= because they recoil and start)

Cor., I, i, 263 (F): "he is growne/ Too proud to be so valiant" (= because he is so valiant)

Conditional:

Cym., III, vi, 68 (F): "you shall have better cheere/ Ere
you depart; and thankes to stay,
and eate it" (= if you stay and eat it)

TGV, III, i, 185 (F): "I flie not death, to flie his deadly
doome" (= by flying, if I fly)

WT, II, i, 99 (F): "Gentle my Lord,/ You scarce can right
me throughly, then, to say/ You did
mistake" (= if you say)

TN, II, ii, 6 (F): "you might have saved mee my paines, to
have taken it away your selfe"
(= by taking, if you had taken)

The infinitive clause comes in front:

MM, III, i, 42 (F): "To sue to live, I finde I seeke to die,/
And seeking death, finde life"
(= (in) suing to live)

Mac., IV, ii, 70 (F): "To fright you thus. Me thinkes I am
too savage" (= in frightening)

MV, II, ii, 23 (F and Q₁): "to be rul(')d by my conscience(,)
I should stay with the Iew(e)
my Maister" (= if I were ruled)

TGV, IV, iv, 149 (F): "To thinke upon her woes, I doe
protest/ That I have wept a hundred
severall times" (= (in) thinking)

b) The subject of the infinitive is different from that of
the main clause.

1) It lies in a possessive pronoun in the main clause:

Luc., 1616-7 (1594): "And my laments would be drawn out too
long,/ To tell them all with one
poore tired tong" (= if I told them)

2) The personal subject is indefinite:

Cym., I, i, 20 (F): "to seeke through the Regions of the
Earth/ For one, his like; there would
be something failing/ In him, that
should compare" (= if one were to seek)

TN, II, v, 152 (F): "to crush this a little, it would bow
to mee" (= if one crushed)

3) The speaker is the subject:

WT, I, ii, 356 (F): "To doe this deed,/ Promotion followes"
(= If I do)

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1239.

The accusative with the prepositional infinitive (I wish him to go) is used by Shakespeare after verbs of thinking, uttering of ideas, wishing and permitting. On the one hand its use in conversational speech has somewhat declined since Elizabethan times (examples under a)), but on the other hand it has largely replaced the double accusative, which was formerly used to a much greater extent than it is today (examples under b)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 646-8, 652, 654-5.

a)

Lr., IV, vii, 69 (F): "I thinke this Lady/ To be my childe
Cordelia"

AWT, IV, iii, 125 (F): "whom hee supposes to be a Friar"

R2, I, iii, 286 (Q₁): "imagine it/ To ly that way thou goest"

MM, III, ii, 145 (F): "the greater file of the subiect
held the Duke to be wise"

Ado, II, iii, 195 (F and Q₁): "I take him to be valiant"

Tmp., II, ii, 112 (F): "I tooke him to be kil'd with a
thunder strok"

WT, V, ii, 43 (F): "many other Evidences, proclayme her,
with all certaintie, to be the Kings
Daughter"

2H6, II, i, 94 (F): "many time and oft my selfe have heard
a Voyce,/ To call him so"

TN, I, v, 315 (F): "I feele this youths perfections/ With
an invisible, and subtle stealth/ To
creepe in at mine eyes"

WT, IV, iv, 549 (F): "we professe/ Our selves to be the
slaves of chance"

Son. CXIX, 4 (1609): "when I saw my selfe to win?"

AYL, V, iv, 172 (F): "This to be true,/ I do engage my life"

2H4, III, ii, 82 (F): "I will maintaine the Word with my
Sword, to bee a Souldier-like Word"

MM, III, ii, 165 (F): "let mee desire you to make your
answer before him"

Cym., III, v, 50 (F): "this/ She wish'd me to make knowne"

MV, III, iii, 25 (F): "the Duke will never grant this
forfeiture to hold"

b) Double accusative:

TGV, III, i, 25 (F): "when they have iudg'd me fast asleepe"

Tit., V, ii, 154 (F): "The Empresse Sonnes I take them,
Chiron, Demetrius"

Cor., II, i, 156 (F): "The Gods graunt them true"

TGV, II, vi, 29 (F): "Valentine Ile hold an Enemie"

Ham., III, i, 5 (F and Q₂): "he feeles himselfe distracted"

WT, III, ii, 158 (F): "Whom I proclaime a man of Truth"

AWW, I, i, 111 (F): "I know him a notorious Liar"

Cym., V, v, 178 (F): "his description/ Prov'd us unspeaking
sottes"

3H6, II, ii, 25 (F): "Which argued thee a most unloving Father"

3H6, V, vi, 12 (F): "The Theefe doth feare each bush an Officer"

AYL, I, i, 49 (F): "the courtesie of nations allowes you
my better, in that you are the first borne"

AYL, IV, iii, 49 (F): "Meaning me a beast"

Note. Formerly it was possible to join the goal towards which somebody was urged to the personal concept by to after verbs like desire, entreat, whereas in cases like those below an infinitive is now normal. If the infinitive replaces an object representing a verbal concept, then the modern construction of the accusative with the infinitive results. The development of this construction after verbs of wishing and thinking certainly owes much to the older construction.

LLL, V, ii, 145 (F and Q₁): "But shall we dance, if they
desire us too(')t?"

Lr., II, ii, 120 (F): "which for my part I will not be,
though I should win your displeasure
to entreat me too't"

§ 193 The perfect infinitive has long been used after the preterite to express the non-realization of a hope or the non-fulfilment of a wish; it is now used chiefly after verbs like intend, wish, hope; he intended to have written means 'he had the intention to write, but (for some reason or other) he did not write', whereas he intended to write does not necessarily involve the idea that he failed to carry out the plan. The construction is found as early as the 13th century and is quite common in Chaucer and Wyclif. It may have originated because the form he would have written is ambiguous on account of the alternative meanings of would (see the example under a)). If would is interpreted as a principal verb in the preterite subjunctive have becomes more closely connected with the participle, thus forming a perfect infinitive. If preterites related in meaning to would, like wished, hoped, intended, are substituted for it, then we arrive at the modern construction in which the idea of the non-realization of something expected or desired was originally connected with the subjunctive of the elliptical hypothetical sentence: he had written (if he had had an opportunity of doing so). There is also a simpler explanation of this construction. The pluperfect subjunctive was formerly used in a dependent clause to express the falseness of an assumption: "I thought your Honour had already beene at Shrewsbury" (1H4, IV, ii, 58 (F)); further examples under b). If in such cases the subordinate clause is expressed by an infinitive (I believed your honour to have been at Shrewsbury) the result is the perfect infinitive, which expresses non-realization in the same way as it does today. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 348-9.

a)

Ado, V, iv, 112 (F): "I did thinke to have beaten thee,
but in that thou art like to be my
kinsman, live unbruis'd"

MND, I, i, 112 (F): "I must confesse, that I have heard so
much,/ And with Demetrius thought to

have spoke thereof:/ But being
over-full of selfe-affaires,/ My
minde did lose it"

Oth., I, ii, 5 (F): "I lacke Iniquitie/ Sometime to do me
service. Nine, or ten times/ I had
thought t'have yerke'd him here under
the Ribbes"

WT, I, ii, 28 (F): "I had thought (Sir) to have held my
peace, untill/ You had drawne Oathes
from him, not to stay"

Ham., V, i, 268-269 (F): "I thought thy Bride-bed to have
deckt (sweet Maid)/ And not
t'have strew'd thy Grave"

(Q₂): "I thought thy bride-bed to have
deckt sweet maide,/ And not
have strew'd thy grave"

Ant., II, vi, 50 (F): "I did not thinke Sir, to have met
you heere"

MV, III, ii, 230 (F): "My purpose was not to have seene you
heere"

MND, IV, i, 156 (F and Q₁): "Our intent/ Was to be gon(e)
from Athens"

Wiv., V, v, 234 (F): "You would have married her most
shamefully"

(This can mean either 'the marriage would have taken place'
or 'you wanted to marry her'.)

H8, IV, ii, 152 (F): "If Heaven had pleas'd to have given
me longer life/ And able meanes, we
had not parted thus"

Ado, V, i, 115 (F and Q₁): "Wee had likt to have had our
two noses snapt off"

AWW, I, i, 34 (F): "hee was skilfull enough to have liv'd
stil, if knowledge could be set up
against mortallitie"

MV, V, i, 204 (F): "If you had pleas'd to have defended it/
With any termes of Zeale"

b)

2H4, V, iii, 40 (F): "I did not thinke M. Silence had bin
a man of this Mettle"

AYL, II, vii, 107 (F): "I thought that all things had bin
savage heere"

The construction of the nominative with the infinitive has various sources. It is derived from the accusative and the infinitive, which is the logical subject of an impersonal clause, because the old accusative case came to be regarded as a nominative as a consequence of the decline of the substantival inflexion, which made its case indistinguishable, as can be seen from the use of pronouns in the nominative (examples under a)). It occasionally appears as a means of abbreviating a sentence and of varying the construction (examples under b)). It also occurs when the psychological subject takes the place of the grammatical object (examples under c)). In these examples the use of the nominative with the infinitive is a linguistic development that has disappeared again with the increasing influence of the literary language. However it still survives in a use that seems to be similar to the case first mentioned in that a sentence like: "She give it Cassio?" (Oth., V, ii, 230 (F)) can be regarded as the logical subject of an impersonal sentence of the type it is monstrous to think. This sentence can be surmised from the context and from the tone and mood of the speaker. This construction is often used for emotional exclamations expressing surprise, astonished doubt, disagreement, or disapproval: I stand this?! ~~he~~ he fight him?! she accept him?! (examples under d)). Cf. H. Sweet, NEGr., § 2321; L. Kellner, Preface to Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine, E.E.T.S., (London, 1890), p. ~~206ff~~ lxviff.; O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (London, 1894), p. 206f.; E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 52f.; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 985.

a)

TGV, V, iv, 109 (F): "It is the lesser blot modesty findes,
Women to change their shapes, then
men their minds"

WT, V, i, 42 (F): "Which, that it shall,/ Is all as monstrous
to our humane reason,/ As my Antigonus
(F to breake his Grave"

AWW, II, i, 185 (F): "Thou this to hazard, needs must
intimate/ Skill infinite, or
monstrous desperate"

Tim., IV, iii, 266 (F): "I to beare this,/ That never know
but better, is some burthen"

b)

AYL, III, ii, 162 (F): "Heaven would that shee these gifts
should have,/ and I to live and
die her slave"

(= and that I were to live and die her slave)

Err., I, i, 33 (F): "A hevvier take could not have beene
impos'd,/ Then I to speake my griefes
unspeakable" (= than that I should speak)

c)

AYL, I, ii, 279 (F): "The Duke is humorous, what he is
indeede/ Mo^x suites you to conceive,
then I to speake of"

(= me to speak of; the psychological subject replaces
the grammatical one)

Cor., III, ii, 83 (F): "being bred in broyles,/ Hast not the
soft way, which thou do'st confesse/
Were fit for thee to use, as they
to clayme"

d)

Oth., V, ii, 152 (F): "My Husband say she was false?"

LLL, III, i, 191 (F): "What? I love, I sue, I seeke a wife,"

Rom., I, v, 1 (F): "Where's Potpan, that he helpes not to
take away? He shift a Trencher? he
scrape a Trencher?"

MM, II, ii, 5 (F): "All Sects, all Ages smack of this vice,
and he/ To die for't?"

MV, III, i, 37 (F and Q₁): "My owne flesh and blood to rebell"

LLL, III, i, 202 (F and Q₁): "And I to sigh for her, to
watch for her,/ To pray for
her, go to"

Mac., I, vii, 59 (F): Mac.: "If we should faile?"
Lady Mac.: "We faile?"

(It is not necessary to emend the second question-mark in this example.)

Oth., I, iii, 96-98 (F): "she, in spight of Nature...To
fall in Love, with what she fear'd
to looke on"

Cym., II, i, 37 (F): "A Stranger, and I not know on't?"

§ 194 The construction of for with the accusative and the infinitive goes back to Chaucer: "it is no maystrye for a lord/
To dampne a man withoute answeere of word" (The Legend of Good Women (Text G), 386). The original construction was of the form: "it is good us to be here" (Wyclif's Bible, first version, Matthew, XVII, 4). This became obsolete, and the dative us was linked to the predicative adjective by for or to, so that the sense of the sentence was somewhat altered. The new form is found as early as Mandeville's Travels (c. 1400), 83, 24: "Lord it is gode for us to ben here". This development was encouraged by similar sentences in which a dative with to is followed by an infinitive: "It is hard to thee, for to kyke agens the pricke" (Wyclif's Bible, first version, Acts, IX, 5). If in the sentence "it is good for us to be here", good is replaced by adjectives like possible, impossible, necessary, needful, easy, expedient, better, the result is the construction as found today (examples under a)). If for with the accusative and the infinitive comes at the beginning of the sentence the relationship between the dative and the predicate is greatly weakened, and the construction often becomes fully equivalent to a clause introduced by that. This stage had already been reached by Shakespeare's time (examples under b)). Because of its position at the beginning of the clause the preposition either loses its grammatical function completely or is felt only obscurely. The use of the construction later spread to cases where originally there was absolutely no dative relationship. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 906, 914.

a)

Ado., IV, i, 272 (F and Q₁): "it were as possible for me to
say, I loved nothing so wel(l)
as you"

H5, IV, i, 18 (F): "'Tis good for men to love their present
paines,/ Upon example"

Ant., IV, xv, 75-78 (F): "It were for me,/ To throw my
Scepter at the iniurious Gods,/"

To tell them that this World did
equall theirs,/ Till they had
stolne our Iewell"

Cym., II, i, 12 (F): "it is not for any standers by to
curtall his oathes"

b)

R2, II, ii, 124 (Q₁): "For us to levie power/ Proportionable
to the enemy is all impossible"

Cor., II, ii, 13-15 (F): "for Coriolanus neyther to care
whether they love, or hate him,
manifests the true knowledge he
has"

Cor., II, ii, 34-36 (F): "for their Tongues to be silent...
were a kinde of ingratefull Iniurie"

Cor., II, iii, 11-12 (F): "for the multitude to be
ingratefull, were to make a
Monster of the multitude"

Ham., III, ii, 317-319 (F): "for me to put him to his
Purgation, would perhaps
plundge him into farre more
Choller"

Cym., III, v, 5-7 (F): "for our selfe/ To shew lesse
Soveraignty then they, must needs/
Appeare un-Kinglike"

Participles

§ 195

The absolute participle (six frozen winters spent = when six frozen winters are spent) may possibly be an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute. In O.E. the corresponding form is the dative absolute. The examples discussed below seem to be founded directly or indirectly on the Latin model. In literature that does not come under Latin influence the construction is scarcely ever found and even in some translations from Latin it is conspicuously avoided: for example no instance occurs in Boethius, although there are examples in the original text. However the question of Latin influence has not yet been definitely answered, cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1150. In M.E. too, where it occurs more frequently, the construction is partly the result of the direct influence of foreign languages, especially French (see C. H. Ross, "The Absolute Participle in Middle and Modern English," PMLA, VIII (1893), p. 267). It does not seem to have been popular at any time. This is also borne out by the fact that, although it has survived in literature until modern times (Ross, pp. 280-2), where it is not so rare, it is nevertheless uncommon in the contemporary spoken language. It is quite clear from the use of the nominative pronoun in combination with the participle that when a noun is used in this construction it should also be regarded as nominative in case. The neutral case form that resulted from the decline of the inflexion appears quite unambiguously in this use as early as 1390 (F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI, (1944-5), 28).

The dependent clause represented by a noun and a past participle usually has a temporal character in Shakespeare (examples under a)). Sometimes a causal interpretation is also possible (examples under b)). Where, however, the action of the participial clause precedes that of the main clause in time, it can be interpreted as a condition of the validity of the statement expressed in the latter, and thus the participial construction can also represent a conditional

subordinate clause; sometimes it is possible to interpret the construction as both temporal and conditional simultaneously (examples under c)). An adjective or adverb can take the place of a participial form and sometimes a prepositional expression is found instead of the participle: her attendants absent - these people at our back (examples under d)). Cf. Abbott, §§ 376-7, 380; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 381-3; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1150-5.

a) Temporal:

R2, I, iii, 211 (F): "Six frozen Winters spent,/ Returne
with welcome home, from banishment"

TGV, IV, iv, 93 (F): "Your message done, hye home unto my
chamber"

TN, V, i, 324 (F): "My Lord, so please you, these things
further thought on,/ To thinke me as
well a sister, as a wife"

R2, III, iii, 115 (F): "Which on thy Royall partie graunted
once,/ His glittering Armes he will
command to Rust"

Err., V, i, 78 (F): "Sweet recreation barr'd, what doth
ensue/ But moodie and dull melancholly"

Tim., IV, iii, 127 (F): "thy fury spent,/ Confounded by
thy selfe"

R2, II, iii, 119-122 (F): "Will you permit, that I shall
stand condemn'd/ A wandring
Vagabond; my Rights and Royalties/
Pluckt from my armes perforce,
and given away/ To upstart
Unthrifts?"

Cor., III, i, 148 (F): "Purpose so barr'd, it followes,/
Nothing is done to purpose"

c) JC, I, iii, 152 (F): "That done, repayre to Pompeyes Theater"

AYL, IV, iii, 120 (F): "This seene, Orlando did appoech
the man,/ And found it was his
brother"

Tit., II, iii, 25-26 (F): "We may...(Our pastimes done)
possesse a Golden slumber"

R2, III, iv, 37 (F): "You thus imploy'd, I will goe root
away/ The noysome Weedes"

R3, I, i, 151 (F and Q₁): "Which done, God take King Edward
to his mercy"

AWW, II, i, 90 (F): "That done, laugh well at me"

Ant., II, vi, 35-38 (F): "I must/ Rid all the Sea of Pirats.
Then, to send/ Measures of Wheate
to Rome: this greed upon,/ To
part with unhackt edges"

b) Causal interpretation possible:

2H6, II, iv, 105 (F): "Madame, your Penance done,/ Throw
off this Sheet"

Err., V, i, 224 (F): "Our dinner done, and he not comming
thither,/ I went to seeke him"

Cym., II, iii, 64 (F): "towards himselfe, his goodnesse
fore-spent on us/ We must extend
our notice"

c) Conditional interpretation possible:

AWW, II, i, 204 (F): "the premises observ'd,/ Thy will by
my performance shall be serv'd"

VE, V, i, 230 (F): "Your Honor not o're-throwne by your
desires,/ I am friend to them, and you"

2H4, III, i, 80-82 (F): "There is a Historie in all mens
Lives...The which observ'd, a man
may prophecie"

H8, II, ii, 69 (F): "A gracious King, that pardons all
offences/ Malice no're meant"

Ant., III, xii, 12 (F): "which not granted/ He Lessens his
Requests"

Cym., IV, i, 21 (F): "all this done, spurne her home to
her Father"

d)

R2, I, iii, 259 (F): "Ioy absent, greefe is present for
that time"

JC, IV, iii, 156 (F): "With this she fell distract,/ And
(her Attendants absent) swallow'd fire"

AYL, III, i, 4 (F): "I should not seeke an absent argument/
Of my revenge, thou present"

R2, I, i, 177-179 (F): "The purest treasure...Is spotlesse
reputation: that away,/ Men are
but gilded loame, or painted clay"

Mac., IV, ii, 9-11 (F): "the poore Wren/ (The most
diminitive of Birds) will fight,/ Her yong ones in her Nest, against
the Owle"

R3, III, vii, 10 (F): "his owne Bastardie,/ As being got,
your Father then in France"

JC, IV, iii, 210-212 (F): "From which advantage shall we
cut him off/ If at Philippi we
do face him there,/ These
people at our backe"

Note 1. The noun that is followed by the past participle is sometimes preceded by a preposition. This is a construction that goes back to Old English. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1156.

2H6, III, ii, 224 (F): "after all this fearfull Homage done"

AWW, II, i, 6 (F): "'Tis our hope sir,/ After well entred
souldiers, to retorne/ And finde your
grace in health"

WT, V, ii, 16 (F): "as they had heard of a World ransom'd,
or one destroyed"

1H6, III, iii, 72 (F): "They set him free, without his
Ransome pay'd"

TGV, II, vi, 32 (F): "I cannot now prove constant to my
selfe,/ Without some treachery us'd
to Valentine"

WT, I, ii, 279-281 (F): "I would not be a stander-by, to
heare/ My Sovereigne Mistresse
clouded so, without/ My present
vengeance taken"

Note 2. Come with an expression of time in the future as its subject (come Easter), which still sometimes occurs in popular speech (it is found as early as the beginning of the

15th century), is not a participle but a Present subjunctive (cf. French viennent les Pâques); see OED under come. In Shakespeare this form is used only by the lower classes.

2H4, II, iv, 412 (F): "I have knowne thee these twentie
nine yeeres, come Pescod-time"

(spoken by the Hostess)

Rom., I, iii, 17 (F and Q₂): "come Lammas Eve at night
shal(l) she be fourteen(e)"

(spoken by the Nurse)

MM, III, ii, 214 (F): "his Childe is a yeere and a quarter
olde come Philip and Iacob"

(spoken by Mistress Overdone)

Some past participles of transitive verbs have an active meaning and can sometimes be used as attributive or predicative adjectives: well read (well read man), mistaken (he is mistaken), drunken (drunken rascal, drunken folly = 'folly of drunkenness'), drunk (he is drunk), learned (learned man), travelled (travelled man), untravelling, fair-spoken 'eloquent, courteous'; drawn (I am drawn = 'I have drawn (my sword)') is now archaic, see also the examples. Cf. E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 93; L. Kellner, Historical Outlines of English Syntax (London, (1892), § 408; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 364.

Tit., IV, i, 33 (F and Q₁): "thou art deeper read"

MV, II, ii, 205 (F and Q₁): "one well studied in a sad ostent"

H8, IV, ii, 52 (F): "Exceeding wise, faire spoken, and perswading"

Lr., IV, vi, 10 (F and Q₁): "Me think(es) y'ar(e) better spoken"

Tit., II, i, 58 (F): "Foule spoken Coward"

R3, I, iii, 348 (F and Q₁): "Clarence is well spoken"

Ado, III, iii, 45 (F): "them that are drunke"

Temp., II, ii, 183 (F): "a drunken Monster"

Cym., I, iv, 89 (F): "You are mistaken"

Cf. also:

Err., V, i, 298 (F): "with times deformed hand" (= deforming)

Cor., III, i, 292 (F): "deserved Children" (= deserving)

Ant., I, iii, 91 (F): "I am all forgotten" (= forgetful;

a pun may be intended here, see also

A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 444)

Tro., II, iii, 249 (F and Q₁): "surl(e)y borne"

(= of a surly bearing)

Per., IV, vi, 115 (Q₁): "For me be you thoughten, that I came with no ill intent"

Forms in "-ed". Adjectives with the meaning 'provided with, having' can be formed from nouns by adding the suffix ~~from~~ "-(e)d": commanded = 'having a command'. Such formations are now especially common in compounds like barefaced, baro-headed, high-minded; non-compounded forms of this type are less numerous: landed, moneyed. Although some of these may have been derived from O.E., these formations must also owe something to other verbal forms related in form and meaning, otherwise the suffix "-ed" would hardly have become so productive in New English. We must first consider those past participles which sometimes have an adjectival sense. If in forms like undistinguished, unnumbered the idea of something not being effected is coupled to the idea that this cannot be done at all, which is quite easy in some cases, then these words acquire the meaning indistinguishable, innumerable; thus there is here a direct connection between adjective and participle. The participle also takes on an adjectival character if it appears to be not so much the result of an action as the representation of a quality inherent in the subject (E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., III, 90): disordered = disorderly.

The close relationship of the adjectives in "-(e)d" with another group of participial forms is a much more important factor. The older language has a large number of verbs that derive from nouns and are formed with the prefix "be-", formerly very popular and productive; many of them are still found in present-day English, though they are rarely used in conversational speech: becloud, bedew, bechalk, becloak, bemantle, bedust, beflannel, beflower, be foam, besugar, bevenom (see OED under "be-"). In the verb thus formed the noun has an instrumental sense, while the prefix involves the idea 'to coat, cover (dirty, stain), surround, envelop'. There is therefore very little difference in meaning between the participles beclouded, bevenomed and clouded, venomed; both pairs approximate in meaning to the adjectives cloudy, venomous. If the prefix is dropped the forms coincide, and

this is not at all unusual with pretonic syllables in Elizabethan English (vantage - advantage, larum - alar(u)m). The prefix could easily be omitted because in many cases it had become meaningless. This is because a considerable number of verbs with the prefix "be-" coincide in idea completely or partially with the corresponding simple verbs: (be)calm, (be)dash, 'wet', (be)friend 'favour', (be)get 'procreate', (be)grime, (be)mad 'madden', (be)deck 'adorn', (be)dew, (be)dabble 'sprinkle', (be)dim 'darken', (be)lock 'enclose', (be)numb 'make torpid', (be)reave, (be)trim 'deck'; the following are also parallel equivalents: beloved - loved, betrothed - trothed, bemet - met (see A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon).

Cor., I, i, 266 (F): "I do wonder, his insolence can
brooke to be commanded under Cominius?"

(= 'to have a command, to be entrusted with a command')

Lr., III, iv, 31 (F): "Your lop'd, and window'd raggednesse"

(= 'the holes in the rag forming loop-holes and windows')

Tit., II, iv, 24 (F and Q₁): "thy Rosed lips" (= 'red')

R3, I, ii, 20 (F): "any creeping venom'd thing that lives"

(= 'venomous')

1H4, I, iii, 97 (F): "Those mouthed Wounds"

(= 'having mouths, open, gaping')

H5, II, iv, 26 (F): "shee is so idly King'd"

Lr., III, vi, 117 (Q₁): "He childed as I fathered"

(= 'provided with children', 'provided with a father')

Oth., III, iv, 195 (F₁): "To have him see me woman'd"

(= 'accompanied by a woman')

MM, III, i, 277 (F): "at the moated-Grange"

(= 'surrounded with a ditch')

Ant., III, x, 9 (F): "the Token'd Pestilence"

(= 'having tokens' = 'having spots denoting pestilence')

Son. CXV, 5 (1609): "time, whose milliond accidents/
Creepe in twixt vowes" (= 'innumerable')

R2, II, iv, 11 (F): "leane-look'd Prophets"

(= 'with lean looks, lean-looking')

Temp., V, i, 43 (F): "twixt the greene Sea, and the azur'd
vault" ('to azure' = 'to dye azure',
see OED)

MV, III, ii, 97 (F and Q₁): "Thus ornament is but the
guiled shore/ To a most
dangerous sea"

(= 'full of guile, deceptive, treacherous'; 'to guile'
= 'to beguile, to deceive'; see OED)

Tim., V, i, 152 (F): "to make their sorrowed render"
(= 'sorrowful'; 'to sorrow' = 'to grieve')

1H4, I, iii, 183 (F): "Revenge the geering and disdain'd
contempt/ Of this proud King"
(= 'disdainful')

Cym., II, iv, 6 (F): "In these fear'd hope"
(= 'hopes mixed with fear'; the misunderstanding of
this form has given rise to a number of conjectures)

Jn., III, iii, 52 (F): "in despite of brooded watchfull day"
(= 'brooding') ~~see A. Wright, Clarendon Press Edition,~~
~~p. 122)~~

Cor., I, iv, 12 (F): "To helpe our fielded Friends"
(= 'engaged to fight'; 'to field' = 'to fight', see OED)

Lr., II, i, 72 (F): "If I would stand against thee, would
the reposall/ Of any trust, vertue, or
worth in thee/ Make thy words faith'd?"

In the above cases a verbal interpretation is generally
unlikely, but nevertheless possible occasionally.

Lr., I, i, 207 (F and Q₁): "stranger'd with our o(a)th"
(= 'made a stranger', see Abbott, § 294)

Cor., V, ii, 89 (F): "My affaires/ Are Servanted to others"
(= 'made subservient')

Ant., IV, xiv, 72 (F): "Would'st thou be window'd in great
Rome" (= 'placed in a window')

Temp., I, ii, 97 (F): "He being thus Lorded" (= 'made a lord')

Lr., IV, vi, 278 (Q₁): "O Indistinguish space of womans wit"
(= 'indistinguishable')

2H4, Ind., 181 (F): "the blunt Monster, with uncounted heads"
(= 'innumerable')

JC, III, i, 63 (F): "The Skies are painted with unnumbered
sparkes" (= 'innumerable')

R3, I, iv, 27 (F): ~~"Innumerable"~~ "Inestimable Stones, unvailedd
Jewels" (= 'invaluable')

Cf. on the other hand:

Ham., I, iii, 19 (F): "unvallued persons" (= 'of no worth')

R2, II, i, 268 (F): "And unavoyded is the danger now"
(= 'unavoidable')

Cor., III, ii, 42 (F): "unsever'd Friends" (= 'inseparable')

H8, II, iv, 47 (F): "of an excellent/ And unmatched Wit,
and Iudgement" (= 'matchless')

Tro., I, iii, 16 (F and Q₁): "unbodied figure of the thought"
(= 'not having a corporeal shape')

Tro., V, ii, 148 (F and Q₁): ~~"Within my soule(,) there doth
conduce a fight/ Of this
strange nature,~~

"Within my soule, there doth conduce
a fight/ Of this strange nature, that
a thing inseperate,/ Divides more
wider then the skie and earth"
(= 'indivisible')

Cor., III, i, 60 (F): "nor ha's Coriolanus/ Deserv'd this
so dishonor'd Rub" (= 'dishonourable')

Son. XXXVII, 9 (1609): "then I am not lame, poore, nor
dispis'd" (= 'despicable')

H8, III, ii, 101 (F): "Our hard rul'd King"
(= 'hard to be governed')

MV, III, iv, 52 (F): "Bring them I pray thee with imagin'd
speed"

(= 'imaginable, with the speed of imagination')

Lr., I, iv, 263 (F): "Men so disorder'd" (= 'disorderly')

Note 1. The ending "-(e)d" shows its suffix character particularly clearly in cases where it is attached to a complete expression.

TGV, IV, iv, 196 (F): "Ile get me such a coulour'd Perrywig"
Err., III, ii, 187 (F): "there's no man is so vaine,/ That
would refuse so faire an offer'd
Chaine"

Jn., IV, ii, 27 (F): "For putting on so new a fashion'd robe"
Cf. A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1.

Note 2. The form agreed ("we are agreed") was originally based on a prepositional expression (M.E. agree = prep. a + gree (= Lat. gratum), as found in to take a-gree 'to take kindly' (for examples see OED under agree). Because of its close connection with the participle agreed ("we have agreed") it later coincided with this in form.

Ant., II, vi, 58 (F): "thus we are agreed"

(Other examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 25)

§ 198

The present participle is sometimes found as a substitute for, or as part of, a subordinate clause that apparently lacks a subject. In such cases the subject may be so far removed from the participle that belongs to it that the connection is not immediately evident (examples under a)), or it may be a pronoun that must be supplemented by another word, usually another pronoun (me, him, their, our), which usually precedes but can also follow it (examples under b)). There are also cases where the subject one is not expressed (examples under c)), as is now the case with considering (considering he is a friend of mine), supposing. The conjunctional use of seeing arose from this use of the participle with an unexpressed personal subject of a general character (~~see § 562~~). Since the neuter subject it was often omitted from constructions with being the latter assumed the character of a causal conjunction (~~see § 563~~). Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 382-3; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1062-8, 1072-4.

a)

R2, V, i, 59-61 (F): "thou shalt thinke,/ Though he divide
the Realme, and give thee halfe,/ It
is too little, helping him to all"
(= seeing that you helped him to all)

AWW, II, i, 192-193 (F): "not helping, death's my fee,/
But if I helpe, what doe you
promise me"
(= if I do not help)

Ven., 75-78 (1593): "Still is he sullen, still he lowres
and frets,/ Twixt crimson shame, and
anger ashie pale,/ Being red she loves
him best, and being white,/ Her best
is betterd with a more delight"

R3, V, iii, 94-96 (F): "But on thy side I may not be too
forward,/ Least being seene, thy
Brother...Be executed in his
Fathers sight"

b)

Lr., II, ii, 125-126 (F): "When he compact, and flattering
his displeasure/ Tript me behind:
being downe, insulted, rail'd"
(= I being down)

WT, III, ii, 164-166 (F): "though I with Death, and with/
Reward, did threaten and encourage
him,/ Not doing it, and being done"
(= he not doing it and it being
done, cf. Abbott, § 378)

AYL, I, i, 112-115 (F): "the Dukes daughter her Cosen so
loves her, being ever from their
Cradles bred together, that hee
would have followed her exile"
(= they being...bred together)

Ado, V, i, 22-23 (F and Q₁): "tasting it,/ Their counsaile
turnes to passion"
(= when they taste it)

JC, V, i, 80-81 (F): "Comming from Sardis, on our former
Ensigne,/ Two mighty Eagles fell"
(= when we came from Sardis)

Lr., II, ii, 143-144 (F): Kent: "Why Madam, if I were your
Fathers dog,/ You should
not use me so."

Regan: "Sir, being his Knave, I will."

(= you being his knave; the preceding Sir ensures that
there can be no doubt as to the subject of being)

Ham., I, v, 35-36 (F): "It's given out, that sleeping in
mine Orchard,/ A Serpent stung me"

Ham., I, v, 59-61 (F): "Sleeping within mine Orchard,...
Upon my secure hower thy Uncle stole"

TGV, V, ii, 39-40 (F): "he...guesd that it was she,/ But
being mask'd, he was not sure of it"

Per., V, iii, 9-11 (Q₁): "her better stars brought her to
Meteline; gainst whose shore
ryding, her Fortunes brought the

mayde aboard us"

Ven., 1089-1090 (1593): "The wind would blow it off, and
being gon,/ Play with his locks"

Oth., I, ii, 45-47 (F): "being not at your Lodging to be
found,/ The Senate hath sent about
three severall Quests,/ To search
you out"

Cor., V, vi, 1-3 (F): "Go tell the Lords a'th'City, I am
heere:/ Deliver them this Paper:
having read it,/ Bid them repayre
to th'Market place"

Per., I, iii, 19-21 (Q₁): "beeing at Antioch...Royall
Antiochus...tooke some displeasure
at him"

Cym., I, vi, 189-192 (F): "'tis Plate of rare device, and
Iewels/ Of rich, and exquisite
forme, their valewes great,/ And
I am something curious, being
strange/ To have them in safe
stowage"

c) ~~11~~

Jm., III, i, 273 (F): "The truth is then most done not
doing it" (= one not doing it =
when it is not done)

MND, V, i, 21-22 (F and Q₁): "in the night, imagining some
feare,/ How easie is a bush
suppos'd a Beare?" (cf. Abbott, §378)

2H6, III, i, 23-26 (F): "Me seemeth then, it is no Pollicie,/
Respecting what a rancorous minde
he beares...That he should come
about your Royall Person"

JC, II, i, 107-108 (F): "Which is a great way growing on
the South,/ Weighing the youthfull
Season of the yeare"

Rom., II, ii, 64 (F and Q₂): "the place death, considering
who thou art"

Cym., I, vi, 96-98 (F): "For Certainties/ Either are past
remedies; or timely knowing,/ The
remedy then borne"

Cym., III, vi, 91 (F): "Discourse is heavy, fasting"

§ 199

The participles enjoy the same freedom of grammatical relationship as adjectives. Qualities that belong to persons are transferred to things that are regarded as standing in a causal relationship with them. This often makes the expression more poetic but can also render its meaning less clear. This is especially true when the personal concept associated with the participle is not immediately clear. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 362-3; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 1043.

a)

MV, III, ii, 285 (F): "none can drive him from the envious
plea/ Of forfeiture, of iustice,
and his bond"

(= him who is envious (malicious) from the plea)

WT, I, i, 15 (F): "Wee will give you sleepe Drinkes"
(= drinks producing sleep)

AYL, II, iii, 39 (F): "The thriftie hire I saved under
your Father"

(= the hire which I, being thrifty, saved)

b)

H8, I, ii, 95 (F): "A trembling Contribution"

(= a contribution which makes the giver tremble)

H5, III, v, 63 (F): "we send,/ To know what willing
Ransome he will give"

(= what ransom he, being willing, will give)

R2, II, iii, 61 (F): "all my Treasurie/ Is yet but unfelt
thankes, which more enrich'd,/ Shall
be your love, and labours recompence"

(= as yet contains nothing but gratitude unfelt by you)

The Gerund

§ 200 The old form of the gerund with the prefix-like element "a" is found after be, lie, sit as an indication of a situation in which the subject finds itself; it is also used after go, come, fall, set, put, send, burst out (I was a-dreaming, lie a-bleeding, come a-wooing), examples under a). "A" is the proclitic form of the preposition an (weak form of on) standing before consonants, which in adverbs like aboard, atop is completely fused with the noun. The gerund was still found in this form in the literary language of the 18th century; it is still very common after be in Southern dialects and in vulgar speech, but has long been obsolete in the written language. Except in isolated phrases like to go a-begging, to set the clock a-going (cf. OED) the use of "a" is also archaic after the other verbs mentioned. The growing aversion since the middle of the 16th century towards the gerund with "a" after be coincides with the spread of the ^{continuous} progressive forms (I was dreaming), in which the participle is used (E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., II, 56), and seems to be the result of this (cf. §§ 622, 624).

So long as the preposition stands in front of the form in "-ing" in the sentences he was a saying, the necessary means were a providing, there can be no doubt about the grammar of the construction. If, however, it is omitted, then the form ending in "-ing" is interpreted as a present participle if it is in the position of a predicate, and it is not now differentiated externally from this in any way, but is naturally related to the subject. Whether the original basis of the sentence he was saying was a present participle or whether the construction was developed from he was a saying cannot be decided. The case is different, however, if, as in the second sentence (the necessary means were (a) providing), the action of the predicate cannot stem from the subject (examples under b)). For such a sentence to make sense the subject of the sentence must be the object of the action expressed by the form in "-ing"; in other words this must be

interpreted in a passive sense: the necessary means were ¹⁰⁵
being provided. This latter form is a new creation (see § ~~(22)~~),
 which has arisen from the need to remove the discrepancy
 between the mode of expression and the meaning of the
 sentence. It was a long time, however, before the new
 construction was accepted, and the old form can still be
 found occasionally in the literary language though it is now
 archaic and is scarcely ever found in conversational speech.
 The compound gerund is found as early as the first half of
 the 15th century, cf. F. T. Visser, English Studies, XXVI
 (1944-5), 28. To begin with it was accompanied by a preposition.
 It occurs only very infrequently to begin with and is also
 fairly rare in Shakespeare (examples under d)), cf. Karl
 Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 358-9. Here the older,
 simple form of the gerund still predominates, and this can
 have a passive meaning not only in the predicative use, as
 it still does today, but also in constructions like: for
fear of burning = for fear of being burnt, where the newer
 form is now preferred. The gerund is even found with a
 passive meaning in an attributive position: some unrecuring
wound = some incurable wound (examples under e)).

a) The gerund with "a" in an active meaning:

MV, II, v, 17 (F and Q₁): "There is some ill a bruining"

H8, III, ii, 357 (F): "when he thinkes...His Greatnesse is
 a ripening"

Rom., III, i, 194 (F and Q₂): "My bloud for your rude
 brawles doth lie a bleeding"

Ven., 366 (1593): "two silver doves that sit a billing"

Wiv., III, v, 131 (F): "her Husband is this morning gone a
 Birding"

Shr., III, i, 34 (F): "Lucentio that comes a wooing"

Son. XX, 10 (1609): "Till nature as she wrought thee fell
 a dotinge"

Luc., 452 (1594): "Whose grim aspect sets everie joint a
 shaking"

H8, V, iii, 104 (F): "When we first put this dangerous stone
 a rowling"

b) The gerund in a passive meaning after be:

Ham., III, ii, 93 (F): "the whil'st this Play is Playing"

c) Other cases of the gerund in a passive meaning:

TGV, I, iii, 78 (F): "Thus have I shund the fire, for
feare of burning"

JC, IV, iii, 150 (F): "How scap'd I killing, when I crost
you so?"

1H4, V, i, 64 (F): "even our Love durst not come neere your
sight/ For feare of swallowing"

Wiv., IV, i, 5 (F): "he is very couragious mad, about his
throwing into the water"

R3, IV, ii, 53 (F and Q₁): "I will take order for he
keeping close"

Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, p. 1418.

d) The compound gerund:

TGV, I, iii, 16 (F): "In having knowne no travaile in his
youth"

Tmp., III, i, 19 (F): "'Twill weepe for having wearied you"

Cym., II, iii, 136 (F): "hated/ For being prefer'd so well"

Oth., I, iii, 137 (F): "Of being taken by the Insolent Foe"

Ant., I, iv, 44 (F): "by being lack'd"

Per., I, ii, 22 (Q₁): "what may make him blush in being
knowne"

e) The passive gerund in the position of an attributive adjective:

Luc., 993 (1594): "his unrecalling crime"

Tit., III, i, 90 (F): "the Deare/ That hath receivde some
unrecuring wound"

MND, III, ii, 140 (F and Q₁): "Thy lip(pe)s, those kissing
cherries"

Shr., III, i, 18 (F): "I am no breeching scholler in the
schoolles"

LLL, I, i, 65 (F and Q₁): "having sworne too hard a
keeping o(a)th"

Tit., III, ii, 62 (F): "How would he...buz lamenting doings
in the ayer"

The original use of the gerund, which as an inflected infinitive could originally take only the preposition to, can still be very clearly recognized in cases where the form in "-ing" of a transitive verb is combined with to to indicate a purpose. This usage is no longer permissible.

Wiv., IV, ii, 126 (F): "behold what honest cloathes you
send forth to bleaching"

Wiv., III, iii, 139 (F): "as if it were going to bucking"

MV, II, ii, 124 (F): "put the Liveries to making"

Ado, II, iii, 239 (F and Q₁): "happy are they that heare
their detractions, and can
put them to mending"

§ 202 Although it is generally true today that the transitive form in "-ing" takes the object in the genitive when it is accompanied by a preposition and the article: for the stealing of sheep, whereas if there is no article the object is in the accusative: for stealing sheep (the first case is an example of a verbal noun, the second of a gerund), this rule was not rigidly observed in Shakespeare's time. Apart from the forms already mentioned two further types are also found: for the stealing sheep (this construction too still survives, though it is not very common and not generally accepted) and for stealing sheep (obsolete). There is a predilection for the gerund construction if the object of the clause is a personal pronoun. Cf. M. Deutschbein, System der neuenglischen Syntax, (~~Köthen, 1917~~), p. 152; F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 1120, 1123-4.

Cym., III, ii, 60 (F): "Loves Counsailor should fill the
bores of hearing,/ To'th'smothering
of the Sense"

Ham., II, ii, 9 (F and Q₂): "that thus hath put him/ So
much from th'understanding of
himselfe"

Ham., III, iii, 85 (F): "To take him in the purging of his
Soule"

JC, II, i, 63 (F): "Betweene the acting of a dreadfull
thing,/ And the first motion, all the
Interim is/ Like a Phantasma"

JC, III, i, 51 (F): "For the repealing of my banish'd
brother?"

Cym., III, i, 14 (F): "we will nothing pay/ For wearing our
owne Noses"

Cym., II, iii, 93 (F): "you lay out too much paines/ For
purchasing but trouble"

JC, I, ii, 289 (F): "for pulling Scarffes off Caesars Images"

2H4, II, iv, 372 (F and Q₁): "for suffering flesh to be(c)
eaten in thy house"

1H4, III, iii, 176 (F): "Charge an honest Woman with
picking thy Pocket?"

JC, IV, iii, 3 (F): "For taking Bribes"

Tit., III, ii, 69 (F): "pardon me for reprehending thee"

3H6, I, iv, 2 (F): "My Unckles both are slaine, in rescuing
me"

3H6, II, i, 88 (F): "Ile venge thy death,/ Or dye renowned
by attempting it"

H8, II, iv, 173-175 (F): "Who had beene hither sent on the
debating/ And Marriage 'twixt the
Duke of Orleance, and/ Our
Daughter Mary"

AWW, IV, iii, 5 (F): "on the reading it, he chang'd almost
into another man"

Ado, II, ii, 53-54 (F): "be cunning in the working this"

Jn., III, iv, 116 (F): "What have you lost by losing of
this day?"

2H6, IV, ii, 67-68 (F): "being burnt i'th hand for stealing
of Sheepe"

Ham., I, v, 175 (F): "by pronouncing of some doubtfull
Phrase"

1H4, II, i, 55-57 (F): "thou variest no more from picking
of Purses, then giving direction,
doth from labouring"

1H6, II, i, 70 (F): "About relieving of the Centinels"

R3, III, iv, 29 (F): "your Voice, for Crowning of the King"

2H4, I, ii, 213 (F and Q₁): "with...singing of Anthem(e)s"

Ant., II, i, 8 (F): "By loosing of our Prayers"

Note 1. Gerund constructions of the type there is no preventing
it were already very common in Shakespeare.

H8, I, iii, 43 (F): "there's no converting of 'em"

Ham., III, iii, 61 (F): "There is no shuffling, there the
Action lyes/ In his true Nature"

JC, V, v, 30 (F): "there is no tarrying heere"

Cf. also: 2H6, IV, viii, 62 (F): "heere is no staying"

Note 2. The gerund is often compounded with a noun. Cf. F. T.

Visser, Syntax, § 1047.

2H6, II, iv, 46 (F): "Was made a wonder, and a pointing stock"

Ham., III, ii, 406 (F): "'Tis now the verie witching time
of night"

Jn., II, i, 323 (F): "Dide in the dying slaughter of their
foes"

Cor., II, ii, 114 (F): "whose every motion/ Was tim'd with
dying Cryes"

Cym., III, i, 32 (F): "The fam'd Cassibulan...Made Luds-Towne
with reioycing-Fires bright"

§ 203 a) The subject of the gerund may take various forms:

- 1) It can be the Saxon genitive of a noun (examples under a)).
- 2) It can be a possessive pronoun (examples under b)).
- 3) It can be a Norman genitive following the gerund (example under c)).
- 4) It can be a noun in the neutral case in the singular or plural. Most examples in Shakespeare are of plural nouns, and since it was not the practice in his time to indicate the possessive by means of an apostrophe it cannot always be decided with certainty what heading they fall under, though the example from Troilus and Cressida is quite clear because the main verb is singular. Some modern editors show this uncertainty in their decision to insert or omit the apostrophe at certain places. (Examples under d)).

The origin of the last form is uncertain, though there are examples as early as the beginning of the 13th century. Cf. F. T. ~~Spitzer~~ Visser, Syntax, §§ 1090-6.

a)

Wiv., V, iii, 9 (F): "he will chafe at the Doctors marrying
my daughter"

Wiv., V, iii, 16 (F): "at the very instant of Falstaffes
and our meeting"

Cym., IV, ii, 182 (F): "yet still it's strange/ What Clotens
being heere to us portends"

Cym., V, v, 275 (F): "Lord Cloten/ Upon my Ladies missing,
came to me/ With his Sword drawne"

b)

Err., I, i, 48 (F): "my absence was not sixe moneths olde,/
Before her selfe...Had made provision
for her following me"

Oth., I, iii, 245 (F): "Most Gracious Duke,/ To my unfolding
lend your prosperous eare"

Cym., III, v, 46 (F): "She pray'd me to excuse her keeping
close"

Cym., IV, ii, 11 (F): "your being by me/ Cannot amend me"

c)

MV, V, i, 241 (F): "in the hearing of these manie friends/
I sweare to thee"

d)

Err., IV, iii, 90 (F): "a mad tale he told today at dinner,/`
Of his owne doores being shut against
his entrance"

R2, V, ii, 3 (F): "breake the story off,/ Of our two
Cousins comming into London"

1H4, I, iii, 49 (F and Q₁): "I then, all(-)smarting(,) with
my wounds being cold"

Tro., IV, v, 92 (F): "the Combatants being kin,/ Halfe
stints their strife"

Tmp., II, i, 133 (F): "Millaine and Naples have/ Mo widdowes
in them of this businesse making"

§ 204

The omission of the prepositional "a" before the gerund leads, when it is followed by a direct object, to a construction that later disappeared from the literary language. From he was a hearing of a song there developed he was hearing of a song, a type of sentence still common enough in the language of Shakespeare, which was later superseded by the ^{continuous} ~~progressive~~ form (he was hearing a song), which rapidly increased in popularity. Cf. Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 370-1.

Lr., II, i, 41 (F): "Here stood he in the dark, his sharpe
Sword out,/ Mumbling of wicked
charmes, coniuring the Moone"

(the old and new constructions are here found side by side)

§ 205 In Shakespeare the abstract noun often replaces the gerund or verbal noun of the same stem (nursery for nursing, carriage for carrying), so that the idea of action required by the sense of the sentence is not expressed directly by the word itself but can be inferred only from the relationship of the abstract noun to an agent subject that is either identical with the subject of the sentence or else implied in a possessive pronoun. In the following examples the present-day language would require the form in "-ing" in order to make the idea of action quite explicit. Cf. § 322.

Lr., I, i, 126 (F): "I lov'd her most, and thought to set
my rest/ On her kind nursery"

Mac., I, iii, 144 (F): "If Chance will have me King,/ Why
Chance may Crowne me,/ Without my
stirre"

Cyn., III, iv, 190 (F): "Least being mist, I be suspected
of/ Your carriage from the Court"

Tmp., II, i, 143 (F): "Had I plantation of this Isle"

H8, IV, i, 30 (F): "for not Appearance, and/ The Kings late
Scruple...she was divorc'd"

Err., I, ii, 4 (F): "This very day a Syracusian Marchant/
Is apprehended for a rivall here"

Tmp., V, i, 11 (F): "They cannot boudge till your release"
(= till your release = till you release them)

The phrase of his making means 'made by him' (see OED). An example of this type is found in Temp., II, i, 133 (F): "Millaine and Naples have/ Mo widdowes in them of this businesse making".

Sometimes the gerund of a transitive verb has no object. In such a case the gerund is to be interpreted in the passive sense, as, for example, in JC, I, ii, 296 (F): "worth the eating".

A gerund may be used as a conjunctional element to introduce a clause, as in 1H4, V, iv, 33 (F): "seeing thou fall'st on me so luckily,/ I will assay thee"; Err., IV, i, 27 (F): "Saving your merrie humor: here's the note".

The following examples show how forbear 'abstain from' and leave 'cease' may take either the gerund or the infinitive; but in Shakespeare cease is followed only by the infinitive.

TGV, I, i, 1 (F): "Cease to perswade"

1H6, I, iv, 81 (F): "His Sword did ne're leave striking in
the field"

Son. CXXXIX, 6 (1609): "Deare heart forbear to glance
thine eye aside"

TGV, II, vi, 17 (F): "I cannot leave to love"

TN, III, ii, 87 (F): "I can hardly forbear hurling things
at him"

(Further examples in A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon)

Congruence

§ 207 The subject and the predicative verb normally agree in person and number. The very frequent deviations from this rule in the older language are made possible by the various ways of interpreting the subject, especially when the latter consists of several elements. Other factors that must be considered are the position of the verb before or after the subject and the external influence on the verb, as regards number and person, of a subject immediately preceding or following it or of a word dependent on the subject. The strong tendency to construe according to the sense and the not uncommon formal assimilation of the predicative verb to the nearest subject are features that are characteristic of the spoken language. It is precisely the behaviour of subject and predicate in the matter of congruence that shows to what extent Shakespeare's syntax is that of the spoken language. Even the Second Folio of 1632 no longer tolerates the liberties of congruence that are found in the First Folio. The later edition is dominated by rigid rules regarding the agreement of subject and predicate. It demonstrates the fastidious correctness of the academic, who since that time has gradually come to dominate the language. Ben Jonson (The English Grammar (1640), Chap. V) allows very few exceptions: 1) "Nounes signifying a multitude, though they be of the Singular number, require a Verbe plurall." 2) "This exception is in other Nounes also very common; especially when the Verbe is joyned to an Adverbe, or Conjunction." 3) "In this exception of number, the Verbe sometime agreeth not with the governing Noun of the plurall number, as it should, but with the Noun governed: as Riches is a thing oft-times more hurtfull, then profitable to the owners. After which manner the Latines also speake: omnia pontus erat." Cf. C. A. Smith, "The chief difference between the first and second Folios of Shakespeare", Englische Studien, XXX⁽¹⁹⁰²⁾, 1-20, which has a list of the cases of incongruence that are corrected in the Second Folio.

§ 208 There is, here is, or a principal verb in the singular is often found as a predicate in front of a plural subject. The explanation of this is not usually connected with the idea expressed by the subject, though this is not impossible, but rather with the fact that sometimes the thought is expressed much more hastily than the speed with which the idea is verbalized, so that the speaker starts precipitately with the quite general formula there is, here is, or a singular principal verb, without being clear in his own mind about the form of the following subject, ~~cf. C. C. Moore Smith, Henry V, The Warwick Shakespeare, (London, 1896), p. 243.~~ As a result the ~~predicate~~ subject does not agree with the predicate (examples under a)). A singular predicate is especially common when it refers to a series of following singular subjects. Since the speaker often fails to realize their number immediately, he relates the predicate to the first of the subjects or to the one that chiefly occupies his thoughts (examples under b)). Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 84; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 335.

a)

MND, IV, ii, 16 (F): "there is two or three Lords & Ladies more married"

(Q₁): "there is two or three Lords and Ladies more married"

Tmp., I, ii, 478 (F): "there is no more such shapes as he"

Cor., IV, iii, 13-14 (F): "There hath beene in Rome straunge Insurrections"

WT, IV, iv, 103 (F): "Here's flowres for you"

Tmp., V, i, 216 (F): "here is more of us"

2H6, II, i, 68 (F): "Here comes the Townes-men, on Procession"

1H4, II, iv, 144 (F): "there lives not three good men unhang'd in England"

(Q₁): "there lives not three good men unhangde in England"

2H6, V, i, 60 (F): "Then what intends these Forces thou dost bring?"

Tmp., I, i, 19 (F): "what cares these roarers for the name
of King?"

MM, II, i, 22 (F): "What knowes the Lawes/ That theeves do
passe on theeves?"

Ham., III, iii, 14-15 (F): "That Spirit, upon whose spirit
depends and rests/ The lives of
many"

(Q₂): "That Spirit, upon whose weale
depends and rests/ The lives of
many"

TGV, II, iv, 72 (F): "far behinde his worth/ Comes all the
praises that I now bestow"

Tmp., IV, i, 264 (F): "At this houre/ Lies at my mercy all
mine enemies"

Cym., III, i, 36-37 (F): "there is no mo such Caesars"

1H6, III, ii, 123 (F): "Now where's the Bastards braves"

R2, I, iii, 260 (F): "What is sixe Winters"

(Q₂): "What is sixe winters"

b)

Rom., V, iii, 199 (F and Q₂): "Here is a Frier, and
Slaughter('d) Romeos man"

AYL, I, ii, 125 (F): "There comes an old man, and his three
sons"

MV, I, i, 57-58 (F): "Heere comes Bassanio,/ Your most noble
Kinsman,/ Gratiano, and Lorenzo"

(Q₁): "Here comes Bassanio your most noble
kinsman,/ Gratiano, and Lorenzo"

Tro., V, viii, 12 (F): "Here lyes thy heart, thy sinewes,
and thy bone"

(Q₁): "Here lies thy heart, thy sinnewes
and thy bone"

R3, IV, iv, 406 (F): "In her, consists my Happinesse, and
thine"

(Q₁): "In her consistes my happines and
thine"

Cym., I, i, 27 (F): "What's his name, and Birth?"

Rom., III, ii, 127 (F): "Where is my Father and my mother
Nurse?"

(Q₂): "Where is my father and my mother
Nurse?"

Tmp., V, i, 7 (F): "How fares the King, and's followers?"

§ 209 There are many cases where a singular predicate embraces two or more preceding singular subjects that can be regarded as a single idea or as belonging together. This construction is especially common with closely related abstract ideas (examples under a)). The homogeneousness of persons or concrete objects that represent similar ideas or are united in purpose and circumstances can also be expressed by a singular predicate (examples under b)). Sometimes, too, one subject can be interpreted as an attributive adjective to the other (examples under c)). In a few cases the conceptual unity of the subjects can be regarded as a condition of the validity of the predicate (examples under d)).

Although it is possible in many cases to condense the subjects into a single idea, there are other occasions when this possibility seems to be excluded (examples under e)). Part of the explanation of all these cases may lie in the tendency of the spoken language to neglect the matter of congruence in the circumstances mentioned. Cf. S. Spekker, Über die Kongruenz des Subjekts und des Prädikats in der Sprache Shakespeares, Diss. Jena (Bremen, 1881), pp. 44-8; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 94; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 337-8.

a)

R2, III, iii, 184-185 (F): "Sorrow, and grieffe of heart/
Makes him speake fondly"

(Q₁): "Sorrowe and greife of hart,/
Makes him speake fondly"

Jn., V, ii, 18-19 (F): "When honourable rescue, and defence/
Cries out upon the name of Salibury"

Jn., IV, ii, 247 (F): "Hostilitie, and civill tumult reignes"

Mac., II, iii, 99 (F): "All is but Toyes: Renowne and Grace
is dead"

WT, II, ii, 43 (F): "your honor, and your goodnesse is so
evident"

Ado, IV, i, 247-248 (F): "you know my inwardnesse and love/
Is very much unto the Prince and
Claudio"

(Q₁): "you know my inwardnesse and love/
Is very much unto the prince and
Claudio"

3H6, IV, v, 18 (F): "the time and case, requireth hast"

b)

AYL, V, i, 66 (F): "Our Moster and Mistresse seeks you"

Shr., III, ii, 248 (F): "though Bride & Bridegroom wants/
For to supply the places at the
table"

Jn., III, iii, 13 (F): "When gold and silver becks me to
come on"

Lr., III, iv, 150 (F): "Our flesh and blood, my Lord, is
growne so vilde"

(Q₁): "Our flesh and bloud is growne so
vild my Lord"

H5, III, ii, 9-11 (F): "and Sword and Shield, in bloody
Field, doth winne immortall fame"

Jn., IV, i, 120 (F): "That mercie, which fierce fire, and
Iron extends"

Oth., I, iii, 80-81 (F): "The verie head, and front of my

offending, / Hath this extent"

(Q₁): "The very head and front of my offending, / Hath this extent"

Cym., II, iv, 57-58 (F): "my hand, / And Ring is yours"

c)

Cor., IV, v, 80-82 (F): "The Cruelty and Envy of the people
...hath devour'd the rest"

(May be interpreted as the envious cruelty of the people)

~~cf. A. Wright, Coriolanus, Clarendon Press Edition, p. 224~~

H5, I, ii, 118-119 (F): "The Blood and Courage that
renowned them, / Runs in your Veines"

(= courageous blood, cf. S. Spekker, Über die Kongruenz
des Subjekts und des Prädikats in der Sprache Shakespeares,
~~Diss. Jena (Bremen, 1881)~~, p. 43)

d)

Ven., 988 (1593): "Despaire, and hope, makes thee ridiculous"

Err., III, i, 26 (F): "Small cheere and great welcome,
makes a merrie feast"

Oth., III, iii, 172 (F): "Poore, and Content, is rich"
 e) (Q₁): "Poore and content, is rich"

Err., I, ii, 76 (F): "My Mistris and her sister staies for
 you"

Mac., III, ii, 37 (F): "Thou know'st, that Banquo and his
 Fleans lives"

MV, III, iv, 34-35 (F): "The which my love and some
 necessity/ Now layes upon you"

(Q₁): "the which my love and some
 necessity/ now layes upon you"

MV, II, ix, 83 (F and Q₁): "Hanging and wiving goes by
 destinie"

TN, III, i, 143 (F): "when wit and youth is come to harvest"

TN, II, v, 174 (F): "daylight and champion discovers not
 more"

MM, I, iii, 10 (F): "Where youth, and cost, witlesse
 bravery keepes"

Per., II, i, 2-3 (Q₁): "Wind, Raine, and Thunder, remember
 earthly man/ Is but a substaunce
 that must yeeld to you"

Ham., IV, iii, 25 (F): "Your fat King, and your leane Begger
 is but variable service"

(Q₂): "your fat King and your leane begger
 is but variable service"

1H6, III, i, 115-116 (F): "You see what Mischiefe, and what
 Murther too,/ Hath beene enacted
 through your enmitie"

AWW, II, iii, 176-177 (F): "What great creation, and what
 dole of honour/ Flies where you
 bid it"

R2, II, ii, 115 (F and Q₁): "Whom conscience, and my
 kin(d)red bids to right"

R2, II, i, 12-13 (F): "The setting Sun, and Musicke is the
 close/ As the last taste of sweetes,
 is sweetest last"

(Q₁): "The setting Sunne, and Musicke at
 the close,/ As the last taste of

sweetes is sweetest last"

3H6, IV, ii, 3 (F): "But see where Somerset and Clarence
comes"

2H6, IV, i, 101-102 (F): "Reproach and Beggerie,/ Is crept
into the Pallace of our King"

R2, II, i, 258 (F and Q₁): "Repro(a)ch and dissolution
hangeth over him"

Jn., IV, iii, 144-145 (F): "The life, the right, and truth
of all this Realme/ Is fled to
heaven"

WT, II, i, 168-170 (F): "the matter,/ The losse, the gaine,
the ord'ring on't,/ Is all properly
ours"

H5, V, ii, 44-46 (F): "her fallow Leas,/ The Darnell, Hemlock,
and ranke Femetary,/ Doth root upon"

3H6, V, ii, 8-9 (F): "My blood, my want of strength, my
sicke heart shewes,/ That I must yeeld
my body to the Earth"

WT, I, ii, 252-254 (F): "his negligence, his folly, feare...
Sometime puts forth in your affaires"

MND, V, i, 162 (F): "This loame, this rough-cast, and this
stone doth shew"

(Q₁): "This lome, this roughcast, and this
stone doth showe"

Tim., II, ii, 176 (F): "What heart, head, sword, force,
meanes, but is L. Timons"

Tim., IV, iii, 4-5 (F): "Whose procreation, residence, and
birth,/ Scarse is dividant"

WT, IV, iv, 700-701 (F): "Every Lanes end, every Shop, Church,
Session, Hanging, yeelds a
carefull man worke"

R2, II, i, 38-39 (F): "Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,/
Consuming meanes soone preyes upon
it selfe"

(Q₁): "Light vanitie insatiate cormorant,/
Consuming meanes soone praies upon
it selfe"

Rom., III, iii, 33-35 (F): "More Validitie,/ More Honourable
state, more Courtship lives/ In
carrion Flies"

(Q₂): "More validitie,/ More honourable
state, more courtship lives/ In
carrion flies"

Tro., IV, iv, 120-121 (F): "The lustre in your eye, heaven
in your cheekes,/ Pleades your
faire visage"

(Q₁): "The lustre in your eye, heaven
in your cheekes,/ Pleades your
faire usage"

3H6, II, v, 47-51 (F): "the Shepherds homely Curds,/ His
cold thinne drinke out of his Leather
Bottle,/ His wonted sleepe...Is
farre beyond a Princes Delicates"

R3, I, iii, 112 (F and Q₁): "Thy hono(u)r, state, and seate(,)
is due to me"

Tmp., V, i, 104-105 (F): "All torment, trouble, wonder, and
amazement/ Inhabits heere"

3H6, II, v, 54 (F): "When Care, Mistrust, and Treason waits
on him"

Ham., II, ii, 66-67 (F): "his Sicknesse, Age, and Impotence/
Was falsely borne in hand"

(Q₁): "his sicknesse, age, and impotence,/
Was falsely borne in hand"

(Q₂): "his sicknes, age, and impotence/
Was falsly borne in hand"

1H4, III, ii, 107-109 (F): "whose high Deedes,/ Whose hot
Incursions, and great Name in
Armes,/ Holds from all Souldiers
chiefe Maioritie"

(Q₁): "Whose high deeds,/ Whose hot
incursions, and great name in
armes,/ Holds from al souldiors
chief maioritie"

Oth., II, iii, 302-303 (F): "the Time, the Place, & the

(Q): "Condition of this Country stands"
Jn., I, i, 248 (F): "Legitimation, name, and all is gone"

2H6, V, i, 52-53 (F): "Lands, Goods, Horse, Armor, any thing
I have/ Is his to use, so Somerset
may die"

Tro., I, iii, 179-184 (F and Q₁): "All our abilities(,)
g(u)ifts, natures(,)
shapes,/ Several(l)s and
general(l)s of grace
exact,/ Atchi(e)v(e)ments,
plots, orders, preventions,/
Excitements to the field,
or speech for truce,/
Successe or losse, what
is or is not, serves/ As
stuffe for these two"

Note. A singular predicate is also found when the two subjects are joined by both...and. This is quite contrary to modern usage. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 94.

Lr., III, iv, 158 (F): "both fire, and food is ready"

(Q₁): "both food and fire is readie"

Err., IV, i, 46 (F): "Both winde and tide stayes for this
Gentleman"

Err., IV, iv, 95 (F): "both Man and Master is possest"

R2, II, ii, 112-113 (F): "whom both my oath/ And dutie bids
defend"

(Q₁): "whom both my oath/ And duety bids
defend"

In modern English it is very common for collective ideas in the singular to be linked to a plural predicate if the chief concern is with the persons (or things) that make up the whole. Shakespeare's usage is very free in this respect. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 77, 79; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 336.

JC, II, ii, 93 (F): "the Senate have concluded/ To give
this day, a Crowne to mighty Caesar"

Cor., IV, ii, 2 (F): "The Nobility are vexed"

H8, V, iv, 71 (F): "what a Multitude are heere?"

Jn., V, iii, 9-11 (F): "the great supply/ That was expected
by the Dolphin heere,/ Are wrack'd
three nights ago"

R3, I, iv, 188 (Q₁): "Where are the evidence that doe accuse
me?" (= body of witnesses)

(F): "Where is the Evidence that doth accuse
me?"

JC, IV, ii, 27-28 (F): Brutus: "Comes his Army on?"

Lucilius: "They meane this night in
Sardis to be quarter'd"

3H6, I, ii, 64 (F): "The Armie of the Queene meane to
besiege us"

MND, II, i, 55 (F): "the whole quire hold their hips, and
loffe"

(Q₁): "the whole Quire hould their hippes,
and loffe"

1H6, III, ii, 125 (F): "such a valiant Company are fled"

JC, IV, iii, 207-209 (F): "The Enemy...Come on refresht"

Cor., III, i, 58 (F): "The People are abus'd"

WT, II, i, 108-109 (F): "I am not prone to weeping (as our
sex/ Commonly are)"

§ 211

Constructions that accord with the meaning are very common in Shakespeare, and the following types are especially striking: 1) A noun linked to a plural by with (Don Alphonso with other gentlemen) is followed by a plural predicate (examples under a)); this construction is still found today. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 95. 2) Since a (certain) sort (kind) of men is simply a less concrete expression for men of a (certain) sort (kind), such phrases are often followed by a plural predicate, as happens quite frequently today. Shakespeare occasionally deals with ideas of quantity, like parcel, with of and a plural (parcel of wooers) in the same way. (Examples under b)). 3) An expression of measurement in the plural is often followed by a singular predicate, since the speaker has in mind the sum of the units of measurement (examples under c)). 4) If a genitive plural formed with of is dependent on a singular idea (the venom of such looks), then it is often followed by a plural predicate. The plural can also consist of two singulars linked by and. (Examples under d)). Cf. S. Spekker, Über die Kongruenz des Subjekts und des Prädikats in der Sprache Shakespeares, Diss. Jena (Bremen, 1881), pp. 29-30, 50-1; Abbott, § 412; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 81.

a)

3H6, I, ii, 49-50 (F): "The Queene,/ With all the Northerne
Earles and Lords,/ Intend here to
besiege you in your Castle"

TGV, I, iii, 39-41 (F): "Don Alphonso,/ With other Gentlemen
of good esteeme/ Are iournying, to
salute the Emperor"

1H4, II, iv, 92-93 (F) ~~and Q₁~~: ~~"old(a)~~

: "olde Sir Iohn with halfe a dozen
more, are at the doore"

(Q₁): "old sir Iohn with halfe a douzen
more ~~xxxxx~~ are at the doore"

~~Ant., V, iv, 7~~

Ant., III, x, 2-3 (F): "Thantoniad, the Egyptian Admirall,/ With all their sixty flye, and turne
the Rudder"

Ant., I, ii, 186-188 (F): "The death of Fulvia, with more
urgent touches/ Do strongly
speake to us"

1H6, III, ii, 129 (F): "there young Henry with his Nobles
lye"

2H6, III, ii, 240-241 (F): "The trayt'rous Warwick, with
the men of Bury,/ Set all upon me"

3H6, II, i, 168-171 (F): "the proud insulting Queene,/ With
Clifford, and the haught~~xxxxxxxxxxxx~~,
Northumberland,/ And of their
Feather, many moe proud Birds,/

Have wrought the easie-melting King"

JC, IV, iii, 153-154 (F): "yong Octavius with Mark Antony/
Have made themselves so strong"

b)

MV, I, i, 88-89 (F and Q₁): "There are a sort of men(,) whose
visages/ Do(e) creame and
mantle like a standing pond"

MV, I, ii, 119 (F and Q₁): "I am glad this parcell of
wooers are so reasonable"

AWW, II, iii, 58-59 (F): "this youthfull parcell/ Of Noble
Batchellors, stand at my bestowing"

c)

1H4, II, ii, 26-27 (F): "Eight yards of uneven ground, is
threescore & ten miles afoot with me"

(Q₁): "eight yeardes of uneven ground is
threescore and ten myles a foote
with mee"

1H4, V, iv, 91-92 (F): "now two paces of the vilest Earth/
Is roome enough"

(Q₁): "now two paces of the vilest earth/
Is roome inough"

JC, I, iii, 154-155 (F): "three parts of him/ Is ours alreadie"

Tim., III, iv, 97 (F): "Five thousand drops payes that"

WT, I, ii, 1 (F): "Nine Changes of the Watry-Starre hath
been/ The Shepheards Note"

d.)

WT, II, iii, 19-20 (F): "The very thought of my Revenges
that way/ Recoyle upon me"

H5, V, ii, 18-19 (F): "The venome of such Lookes we fairely
hope/ Have lost their qualitie"

Lr., III, vi, 4 (F): "All the powre of his wits, have given
way to his impatience"

(Q₁): "All the power of his wits have given
way to impatience"

Jn., III, i, 295-296 (F): "The perill of our curses light
on thee/ So heavy, as thou shalt
not shake them off"

R3, III, v, 54-55 (F): "Which now the loving haste of these
our friends,/ Something against our
meanings, have prevented"

(Q₁): "Which now the longing haste of these
our friends,/ Somewhat against our
meaning have prevented"

Jn., IV, ii, 219-220 (F): "How oft the sight of meanes to
do ill deeds,/ Make deeds ill done?"

Tmp., II, i, 229 (F): "The setting of thine eye, and cheeke
proclaime/ A matter from thee"

WT, IV, ii, 26-28 (F): "whose losse of his most precious
Queene & Children, are even now to
be a-fresh lamented"

Ham., I, ii, 37-38 (F): "more then the scope/ Of these
dilated Articles allow"

(Q₂): "more then the scope/ Of these
delated articles allowe"

JC, V, i, 33 (F): "The posture of your blowes are yet unknowne"

LLL, IV, iii, 344-345 (F and Q₁): "the voyce of all the
God(de)s,/ Make heaven
drowsie"

Cym., I, iv, 19-21 (F): "the approbation of those that
weepe...are wonderfully to extend him"

Ant., I, iii, 47-48 (F): "Equality of two Domesticke powers,/
Breed scrupulous faction"

AYL, IV, iii, 50-51 (F): "If the scorne of your broght eie/
Have power to raise such love in
mine"

TN, II, v, 93-94 (F): "the spirit of humors intimate reading
aloud to him"

Ham., III, ii, 206-207 (F): "The violence of other Greefe
or Ioy,/ Their owne enactors
with themselves destroy"

(Q₂): "The violence of eyther, griefe,
or ioy,/ Their owne enactures
with themselves destroy"

The reverse phenomenon is also found:

Err., V, i, 69-70 (F): "The venome clamours of a iealous
woman,/ Poisons more deadly then a
mad dogges tooth"

MND, III, ii, 97 (F): "All fancy sicke she is, and pale of
cheere,/ With sighes of love, that
costs the fresh bloud deare"

(Q₁): "All fancy sicke she is and pale of
cheere,/ With sighes of love, that
costs the fresh blood deare"

LLL, V, ii, 750 (F): "The extreme parts of time, extremelie
formes"

(Q₁): "The extreame partes of time extreamly
formes"

Note 1. In the following example the change of number of the
predicate in the dependent clause may be caused by the author's
thinking of an idea that is synonymous with the subject:

Tit., III, ii, 84-85 (F): "thy sight is young,/ And thou
shalt read, when mine begin to
dazell" (mine = mine eyes)

The following example is constructed very freely according to
the sense:

TGV, IV, iv, 33-34 (F): "how many Masters would doe this
for his Servant?"

The idea is either: no master would do this for his servant

(hence his instead of their) or what master would do this for his servant?

Note 2. In the following example all things can be interpreted as a pronoun in the sense of everything; this would provide a satisfactory explanation of the singular predicate:

Shr., II, i, 357 (F): "Pewter and brasse, and all things
that belongs/ To house or
house-keeping"

Cf. also:

R3, III, iv, 4-5 (F): Buckingham: "Is all things ready for
the Royall time?"

Derby: "It is, and wants but nomination."

(Q₁): Buckingham: "Are all things fitting
for that royall time?"

Derby: "It is, and wants but nomination."

Ado, V, iv, 7 (Q₁): "I am glad that all things sorts so well"

(F): "I am glad that all things sort so well"

§ 212

The number of the predicate can be influenced by a noun immediately preceding it that is the subject of a phrase incorporated in the main clause (example under a)). Similarly the form of the predicate may be determined by a noun attached to the subject as an attributive comparison (examples under b)).

a)

2H6, IV, viii, 65-67 (F): "no want of resolution in mee,
but onely my Followers base and
ignominious treasons, makes me
betake mee to my heeles"

b)

Jn., II, i, 216-217 (F): "those sleeping stones,/ That as a
waste doth girdle you about"

Jn., II, i, 249-250 (F): "then our Armes, like to a muzled
Beare,/ Save in aspect, hath all
offence seal'd up"

~~(see however § 156)~~

Note. An apposition accompanying the subject can sometimes determine the person and number of the predicate.

MND, III, ii, 60 (F): "you the murderer looks as bright as
cleare,/ As yonder Venus in her
glimmering spheare"

(Q₁): "you, the murtherer, looke as bright,
as cleere,/ As yonder Venus, in her
glimmering spheare"

MND, V, i, 387-388 (F and Q₁): "the graves, all gaping wide,/ Every one lets forth his
spright"

§ 2/3 The way in which the person of the predicative verb (or its formal part) is dependent on the subject closest to it is shown by cases in which it is related to two subjects of different person linked by and, whether it precedes them, follows them, or encloses them. Here the person of the subject standing nearest to the predicate may decide the person of the verb concerned, which can usually be recognized only from its accompanying pronouns. Cf. S. Spekker, Über die Kongruenz des Subjekts und des Prädikats in der Sprache Shakespeares, Diss. Jena (Bremen, 1881), ⁵⁵p. 54-5; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 112.

a) The person and number of one of the subjects is transferred to the predicate in its immediate proximity:

AYL, I, iii, 99 (F): "thou and I am one"

Jn., IV, ii, 50-51 (F): "for the which, my selfe and them/
Bend their best studies"

1H4, I, ii, 126-127 (F): "How agrees the Divell and thee
about thy Soule"

(Q₁): "howe agrees the Divell and thee
about thy soule"

MV, II, ii, 107 (F and Q₁): "how doost thou and thy Master
agree"

2H6, I, i, 88-90 (F): "Or hath mine Unckle Beauford, and my
selfe,/ With all the Learned Counsell
of the Realme,/ Studied so long"

MV, III, ii, 168-169 (F): "My selfe, and what is mine, to
you and yours/ Is now converted"

(Q₁): "My selfe, and what is mine, to
you and yours/ is now converted"

Ado, IV, ii, 4 (F and Q₁): "that am I, and my partner"

b) Cases corresponding to normal usage:

JC, I, ii, 158 (F): "you and I, have heard our Fathers say"

AWW, I, ii, 25-26 (F): "when thy father, and my selfe, in
friendship/ First tride our
souldiership"

Ant., III, xiii, 175 (F): "I, and my Sword, will earne our
Chronicle"

Ado., III, i, 4-6 (F): "tell her I and Ursula,/ Walke in the Orchard, and our whole discourse/ Is all of her"

(Q₁): "tell her I and Ursley,/ Walke in the orchard, and our whole discourse/ Is all of her"

1H6, III, i, 100-101 (F): "Wee and our Wives and Children all will fight,/ And have our bodyes slaughtred by thy foes"

Rom., I, v, 33 (F): "you and I are past our dancing daies"

(Q₂): "you and I are past our dancing dayes"

Tim., V, iv, 5-7 (F): "my selfe and such/ As slept within the shadow of your power/ Have wander'd with our traverst Armes"

Err., I, i, 84-86 (F): "my wife and I,/ Fixing our eyes on whom our care was fixt,/ Fastned our selves at eyther end the mast"

AWW, I, iii, 20 (F): "Isbell the womam and w will doe as we may"

Ado., V, i, 195 (F): "and Q₁): "he(e) and I shal(l) meet(e)"

JC, I, ii, 257-258 (F): "you, and I,/ And honest Caska, we have the Falling sicknesse"

LLL, IV, iii, 208-209 (F): "He, he, and you: and you my Liedge, and I,/ Are picke-purses in Love, and we deserve to die"

(Q₁): "Hee, hee, and you: and you my Leege, and I,/ Are pick-purses in Love, and we deserve to die"

3H6, V, vii, 16-17 (F): "for thee, thine Unckles, and my selfe,/ Have in our Armors watcht the Winters night"

Note. If an affirmative clause is co-ordinated with a negative phrase that has the same predicate or with a subject in a different person, and the two are incorporated together, then the predicate is usually governed by the first subject (examples under a)), but occasionally it is determined by the second

subject, if this immediately precedes it (example under b)).

a)

TN, I, v, 304 (F): "My Master, not my selfe, lackes recompence"

TN, III, iv, 91-92 (F): "Iove, not I, is the doer of this"

b)

MM, II, ii, 80 (F): "It is the Law, not I, condemne your
brother"

§ 214

The person of the predicate in a relative clause fluctuates greatly. If the relative pronoun follows a pronoun in the 1st or 2nd person, or a vocative, then according to the strictly logical rule, which was later followed - especially by Pope, the predicate should be in the same person; there is, however, a strong tendency to allow the use of the 3rd person (examples under a)). This uncertainty is clearly demonstrated by the compromise constructions in which the predicate is in one person while the pronoun is in the other. If the relative clause is a necessary complement to a predicative pronoun in the 3rd person then the predicate should also be in the 3rd person but occasionally it agrees with the subject of the main clause (examples under b)). This is justified if the relative clause following a predicative noun is not connected with the meaning of this but instead defines the subject; but even here there is no consistency (examples under c)). There can scarcely be any doubt that the 2nd person in "s" (affects from affect'st, see § ⁸⁶152), which in this form coincides with the 3rd person, has contributed to some extent to these variations in use and is responsible for the frequent substitution of the 3rd person. Cf. F. T. Visser, Syntax, §§ 114-124.

a)

WT, II, iii, 53-54 (F): "heare me, who professes/ My selfe
your loyall Servant"

(a compromise between who professes himself and who profess myself)

R3, I, ii, 251 (F): "On me, that halts, and am mishapen thus?"

(Q₁): "On me that halt, and am unshapen thus"

3H6, II, v, 79 (F): "Thou that so stoutly hath resisted me"

WT, IV, iv, 429-430 (F): "Thou a Scepters heire,/ That thus
affects a sheepe-hooke?"

Shr., IV, i, 104 (F): "Thou it seemes, that cals for company
to countenance her"

Ham., III, iii, 68-69 (F): "Oh limed soule, that struggling
to be free,/ Art more ingag'd"

(Q₁): "O limed soule, that struggling
to be free,/ Art more ingaged"

Cor., I, iv, 52-54 (F): "Oh Noble Fellow!/ Who sensibly
out-dares his sencelesse Sword,/ And when it bowes, stand'st up"

Oth., IV, ii, 90-92 (F): "You Mistris,/ That have the office
opposite to Saint Peter,/ And

(Q₁): "you mistrise,/ That have the office opposite to S. Peter, And keepes the gates in hell"
R3, I, iii, 55 (F): "To thee, that hast nor Honesty, nor Grace"

(Q₁): "To thee that hast nor honesty nor grace"

2H6, I, i, 19-20 (F): "O Lord, that lends me life,/ Lend me
a heart repleate with thankfulnesse"

LLL, V, ii, 66 (F and Q₁): "to make me proud(e) that iests"

Son. VIII, 7 (1609): "They do but sweetly chide thee, who
confounds/ In singlenesse the part
that thou should'st beare"

Per., I, i, 41 (Q₁): "Antiochus, I thanke thee, who hath
taught,/ My frayle mortalitie to know
it selfe"

Tro., II, ii, 104-106 (F): "Virgins, and Boyes; mid-age &
wrinkled old,/ Soft infancie,
that nothing can but cry,/ Adde
to my clamour"

(Q₁): "Virgins, and boyes, mid-age,
and wrinckled elders,/ Soft
infancie, that nothing canst
but crie,/ Adde to my clamours"

b)

MND, II, i, 34-37 (F and Q₁): "Are you not hee,/ That frights
the maidens of the Villag(e)ree,/ Skim milke, and sometimes
labour in the querne,/ And
bootlesse make the breathlesse
huswife cherne"

(frights agrees with he; skim, labour, make agree with
you) ~~Of. W. A. Wright, A Midsummer Night's Dream,~~
~~Clarendon Press Edition, p. 84)~~

JC, III, i, 30 (F): "Caska, you are the first that reares
your hand"

Per., IV, iii, 49-50 (Q₁): "Yere like one that supersticiously,
Doe sweare too'th Gods that
winter kills the flies"

Shr., IV, ii, 16-18 (F): "I am not Lisio,/ Nor a Musitian
as I seeme to bee,/ But one that
scorne to live in this disguise"

JC, III, ii, 221-223 (F): "I am...a plaine blunt man/ That
love my Friend"

Tit., IV, ii, 176 (F and Q₁): "it is you that puts us to
our shifts"

Cym., V, v, 215-216 (F): "it is I/ That all th'abhorred
things o'th'earth amend"

c)

Jn., V, vi, 8 (F): "Thou art my friend, that know'st my
tongue so well"

(The relative clause is here the complement of thou:
hence the use of the 2nd person in the predicate)

JC, IV, iii, 13 (F): "You know that you are Brutus that
speakes this"

(The sense of the sentence is: "You (that speak this)
know you are Brutus")

§ 215. Although many cases of incongruence between subject and predicate can be explained as the result of various interpretations as to meaning and of external influences, there are nevertheless a considerable number of cases in which a plural subject is associated with a verbal form in "s" as the predicate where it is impossible to discern a singular in the latter. The "s"-forms are especially common in the First Folio; hence, when it was difficult to explain them, editors rejected the language of the author and regarded them as misprints. However the First Folio cannot be regarded as the only evidence in this matter. Many of the examples given below are taken from the Quartos that appeared during Shakespeare's lifetime. The cases quoted are all such that one is forced to regard the "s"-form as a plural. It must not be overlooked that it is often confirmed by the rhyme. Since it is found in the letters of Queen Elizabeth I (stiks, preferis, paynts, permitts all occur as plurals) it cannot be regarded as characteristic only of vulgar speech. Cf. W. von Staden, Entwicklung der Präsens-Indikativ-Endungen im Englischen von 1500 bis Shakespeare, Diss. (Rostock, 1903), p. 109. It disappeared from literary English about 1640. Cf. J. Knecht, Die Kongruenz zwischen Subjekt und Prädikat und die 3. Plur. Präs. auf -s im elisabethanischen Englisch, Anglistische Forschungen, 33 (Heidelberg, 1911), p. 146. There is therefore no valid reason for not recognizing the existence of the plural "s"-form in the language of Shakespeare.

Plural forms in "s" are found in the Northumbrian dialect of O.E., and they became more common in Northern England during the M.E. period, whereas the plural form in "th" declined. Thus the "s"-ending became generally accepted as an independent form of the plural as well as an inflexion of the 2nd and 3rd persons singular. For an explanation of the phenomenon in Early New English it is not absolutely necessary to postulate a connection with Northern English. The process of form-association that took place here was also a possibility in the South. Just as, because of the extensive freedom in

the congruence between subject and predicate, a singular verb is very often related to a plural, usually compound, subject (Banquo and his Fleance lives, there comes an old man and his three sons, here comes the townsmen, see §§ 208-9), so, because of the lack of an inflexion in the 1st person singular and all persons of the plural, the "s"-forms of the 2nd and 3rd persons could be extended to these. Once he (thou) torments and they torments were allowed the close connection of thou and you meant that it was only a small step to you torments and we (I) torments. The popular speech of the South has also followed this development, so that the "s"-ending is now a characteristic of vulgar speech throughout England. Cf. C. A. Smith, "Shakespeare's Present Indicative s-Endings with Plural Subjects," PMLA, XI, 4 (1896), 362-376; H. Kurath and G. O. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Vol. II, p. 240 and Vol. III, p. 53; F. T. Visser, Syntax, § 83; Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, II, 177-8, 188-190, 193.

a) In rhyme:

Son. XLI, 1-3 (1609): "Those pretty wrongs that liberty
commits...Thy beautie, and thy yeares
full well befits"

Ven., 1127-1128 (1593): "She lifts the coffer-lids that
close his eyes,/ Where lo, two
lamps burnt out in darknesse lies"

Mac., II, i, 60-61 (F): "Whiles I threat, he lives:/ Words
to the heat of deedes too cold
breath gives"

Luc., 492 (1594): "I know what thornes the growing rose
defends" (rhyme: comprehends)

MND, V, i, 378 (F and Q₁): "Now the hungry Lyons ro(a)res"
(rhyme: snores)

Luc., 552 (1594): "his unhallowed hast her words delays"
(rhyme: playes)

b) Other cases:

MV, I, iii, 162 (F): "Whose owne hard dealings teaches them
suspect/ The thoughts of others"

(Q₁): "Whose owne hard dealings teaches them
suspect/ the thoughts of others"

Ven., 632 (1593): "To which loves eyes paies tributarie gazes"

Tit., II, i, 26 (F): "thy yeres wants wit, thy wit wants
edge"

(Q₁): "thy yeares wants wit, thy wits wants
edge"

LLL, V, ii, 309 (F): "as Roes runnes ore Land"

(Q₁): "as Roes runs ore land"

Ado, I, ii, 7 (F and Q₁): "As the events stamp(e)s them"

Tro., III, ii, 181-183 (F): "when their rimes,/ Full of
protest...Wants similes"

(Q₁): "when their rimes,/ Full of
protest...Wants simele's"

MV, III, ii, 18-19 (F): "these naughtie times/ Puts bars
betweene the owners and their rights"

(Q₁): "these naughty times/ puts barres
betweene the owners and their rights"

§ 216 Similarly, plural forms in "th" are occasionally found (hath, doth for have, do; thy wounds doth bleed). They were quite common not long before Shakespeare, especially to emphasize modality of reality. It is most unlikely that these are dialect forms surviving from Middle English, since as early as Chaucer the old plural ending "eth" had been replaced by the corresponding subjunctive form. Cf. C. A. Smith, "Shakespeare's Present Indicative s-Endings with Plural Subjects," p. 370; W. von Staden, p. 109.

Cor., IV, vi, 50 (F): "three examples of the like, hath
beene/ Within my Age"

Wiv., I, i, 14 (F): "All his successors (gone before him)
hath don't"

Tro., V, iii, 82 (F): "Looke how thy wounds doth bleede at
many vents"

(Q₁): "Looke how thy wounds do bleed at
many vents"

§ 2/7 Concepts shared by a number of persons frequently occur in the plural in the older language. This peculiarity is still found today (in all our lives) but not nearly so often as formerly. Its use declined considerably as early as the second half of the 17th century.

Cor., III, i, 65 (F): "My Nobler friends, I crave their pardons"

Jn., IV, ii, 64 (F): "Which for our goods, we do no further aske"

R2, IV, i, 315 (F): "Whither you will, so I were from your sights"

R3, III, vii, 40 (Q₁): "This generall applause and loving shoute,/ Argues your wisedomes and your love to Richard"

(F): "This generall applause, and chearefull showt,/ Argues your wisdom, and your love to Richard"

Cym., II, iv, 24 (F): "Their discipline,/ (Now wing-led with their courages)"

Tim., III, v, 92 (F): "Call me to your remembrances"

Select Bibliography

Texts

Shakespeare (facsimiles):

The First Folio of Shakespeare, ed. by Charlton Hinman,
The Norton Facsimile (New York, 1968)

Much Ado About Nothing (First Quarto), photographic
reproduction of the copy in the Huntington Library

Love's Labour's Lost (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg
(Oxford, 1957)

A Midsummer Night's Dream (First Quarto), ed. by J. W.
Ebsworth (1880)

The Merchant of Venice (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (1939)

Richard II (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg and Charlton
Hinman (Oxford, 1966)

Henry IV Part 1 (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg and
Charlton Hinman (Oxford, 1966)

Henry IV Part 2 (First Quarto), ed. by H. A. Evans (n.d.)

Richard III (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (Oxford, 1959)

Troilus and Cressida (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (1952)

Titus Andronicus (First Quarto), ed. by J. Q. Adams (New York
and London, 1936)

Romeo and Juliet (Second Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (1949)

Hamlet (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (London, 1951 and
Oxford, 1965)

Hamlet (Second Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg and Charlton Hinman
(London, 1940 and Oxford, 1964)

King Lear (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (London, 1939 and
Oxford, 1964)

Othello (First Quarto), photographic reproduction of the copy
in the Bodleian Library

Pericles (First Quarto), ed. by W. W. Greg (1940)

Venus and Adonis (1593), Scholar Press Facsimile (Menston, 1968)

Lucrece (1594), Scholar Press Facsimile (Menston, 1968)

Sonnets and A Lover's Complaint (1609), Scholar Press Facsimile
(Menston, 1968)

The Passionate Pilgrim (1612), ed. by H. E. Rollins (New York and London, 1940)

Editions of Shakespeare:

Works, ed. by W. G. Clark and W. A. Wright, The Globe Edition (Cambridge and London, 1864)

Measure for Measure, ed. by Ernst Leisi (Heidelberg, 1964)

Other contemporary or earlier authors:

Francis Bacon, Works, ed. by J. Spedding, R. L. Ellis, and D. D. Heath, 14 vols. (1857-74)

William Caxton, Blanchardyn and Eglantine, ed. by L. Kellner, E.E.T.S. (Oxford, 1890)

Geoffrey Chaucer, Works, ed. by F. N. Robinson, 2nd ed. (1957)

Richard Hooker, Of the Lawes of Ecclesiasticall Politie ([1594]-1597), Scholar Press Facsimile (Menston, 1969)

William Lithgow, The Totall Discourse of The Rare Adventures and Painefull Perigrinations (1632), reprinted (Glasgow, 1904)

John Lyly, Works, ed. by R. W. Bond, 3 vols. (Oxford, 1902)

Christopher Marlowe, Works, ed. by C. F. Tucker Brooke (Oxford, 1910)

The Holy Bible...with the Apocryphal Books, in the earliest English versions made from the Latin Vulgate by John Wycliffe and his followers, ed. by J. Forshall and F. Madden, 4 vols. (Oxford, 1850)

The Authorised Version of the English Bible (1611), ed. by W. A. Wright, 5 vols. (Cambridge, 1909)

Mandeville's Travels, ed. by M. C. Seymour (Oxford, 1967)

Sir Gawain and the Green Knight, ed. by J. R. R. Tolkien and E. V. Gordon, 2nd ed. (Oxford, 1967)

Three Middle English Sermons from the Worcester Chapter Manuscript F. 10, ed. by D. M. Grisdale, Leeds School of English Language: Texts and Monographs No. 5 (Kendal, 1939)

Dictionaries and Concordances

- The Oxford Dictionary of English Etymology, ed. by C. T. Onions
with G. W. S. Friedrichsen and R. W. Burchfield (Oxford, 1966)
- J. Bartlett, A complete concordance or verbal index to words,
phrases and passages in the dramatic works of Shakespeare
with a supplementary concordance to the poems (1894)
- J. Bosworth and T. N. Toller, An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary
(Oxford, 1898)
- J. Jamieson, An Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish
Language, new ed., ed. by J. Longmuir and D. Donaldson,
Vol. IV (Paisley, 1882)
- Samuel Johnson, A Dictionary of the English Language, 2 vols.
(1755)
- E. Mätzner, Wörterbuch zu den altenglischen Sprachproben,
2 vols. (Berlin, 1878-1885)
- F. K. Robinson, Whitby Glossary, English Dialect Society (1876)
- A. Schmidt, Shakespeare-Lexicon, 3rd ed., revised and
enlarged by G. Sarrazin, 2 vols. (Berlin and London, 1902)
- W. W. Skeat, An Etymological Dictionary of the English
Language (Oxford, 1897)
- M. Spevack, A complete and systematic concordance to the works
of Shakespeare, 6 vols. (Hildesheim, 1968-1970)

Comprehensive Grammars

- E. A. Abbott, A Shakespearian Grammar, 3rd ed. (1870)
- Karl Brunner, Die englische Sprache, 2nd ed., 2 vols.
(Tübingen, 1960-1962)
- M. Deutschbein, System der neuenglischen Syntax (Köthen, 1917)
- W. Franz, Die Sprache Shakespeares in Vers und Prosa (Halle, 1939)
- O. Jespersen, Essentials of English Grammar (1933)
- O. Jespersen, A Modern English Grammar, 7 vols. (Heidelberg, Copenhagen, and London, 1909-1949)
- Ben Jonson, The English Grammar (1640), in Works, VIII, ed. by C. H. Herford and P. and E. Simpson (Oxford, 1947), 463-553
- L. Kellner, Historical Outlines of English Syntax (1892)
- G. Krüger, Syntax der englischen Sprache, 2nd ed. (Dresden and Leipzig, 1914-1917)
- H. Kurath and G. O. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Vols. II and III (Boston and New York, 1931-1935)
- E. Mätzner, Englische Grammatik, 3rd ed., 3 vols. (Berlin, 1880-1885)
- E. Sievers, Angelsächsische Grammatik, 3rd ed. (Halle, 1898)
- H. Sweet, A New English Grammar, 2 vols. (Oxford, 1890-1898)
- F. T. Visser, An historical Syntax of the English Language, Vols. I, II, III (i) (Leiden, 1963-1969)
- J. Wright, The English Dialect Grammar (Oxford, 1905)

Other linguistical works

- E. Ausbüttel, Das persönliche Geschlecht unpersönlicher Substantiva im Mittelenglischen, Studien zur englischen Philologie, XIX (Halle, 1904)
- R. C. Bambas, "Verb Forms in -s and -th in Early Modern English Prose," Journal of English and Germanic Philology, XLVI (1947), 183-187
- L. L. Bonaparte, "On the dialects of Monmouthshire, Herefordshire, Worcestershire, Gloucestershire, Berkshire, Oxfordshire, South Warwickshire, Northamptonshire, Buckinghamshire, Hertfordshire, Middlesex, and Surrey, with a new classification of the English dialects," Transactions of the Philological Society, 1875-6 (1877), 570-581
- H. Bradley, The Making of English (1904)
- L. Claus, Die einfache Form des Conjunctiv bei Shakespeare (n.p., 1878?)
- B. A. P. van Dam and C. Stoffel, William Shakespeare's Prosody and Text (Leiden, 1900)
- T. L. O. Davies, Bible English (1875)
- H. Dietze, Das umschreibende 'do' in der neuenglischen Prosa, Diss. (Jena, 1895)
- E. J. Dobson, English Pronunciation 1500-1700, 2nd ed., 2 vols. (Oxford, 1968)
- G. Dubislav, Beiträge zur historischen Syntax des Englischen, Programm (Charlottenburg, 1909)
- E. Einkenkel, "Das englische Indefinitum," Anglia, XXVI (1903), 461-520
- E. Ekwall, Shakespeare's Vocabulary: Its Etymological Elements (Upsala, 1903)
- R. Flatter, "Bühnensprachliche und andere Eigenheiten der Diktion Shakespeares," Wiener Beiträge zur englischen Philologie, LXII (1955), 42-52
- W. Franz, "Die Dialektsprache bei Charles Dickens," Englische Studien, XII (1889), 197-244
- W. van der Gaaf, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English, Anglistische

- Forschungen, 14 (Heidelberg, 1904)
- O. Jespersen, Growth and Structure of the English Language (Leipzig, 1905)
- O. Jespersen, Progress in Language (1894)
- J. Knecht, Die Kongruenz zwischen Subjekt und Prädikat und die 3. P. Plur. Präs. auf -s im elisabethanischen Englisch, Anglistische Forschungen, 33 (Heidelberg, 1911)
- H. Kökeritz, Shakespeare's Pronunciation (New Haven, 1953)
- G. König, Der Vers in Shakespeares Dramen, Quellen und Forschungen (Straßburg, 1888)
- Celia Millward, "Pronominal Case in Shakespearean imperatives," Language, XLII (1966), 10-17
- L. Pound, The Comparison of Adjectives in English in the XV and XVI Century, Anglistische Forschungen, 7 (Heidelberg, 1901)
- C. H. Ross, "The Absolute Participle in Middle and Modern English," PMLA, VIII, 3 (1893), 245-302
- C. A. Smith, "The Chief Difference between the First and Second Folios of Shakespeare," Englische Studien, XXX (1902), 1-20
- C. A. Smith, "Shakespeare's Present Indicative s-Endings with Plural Subjects: a Study in the Grammar of the First Folio," PMLA, XI, 4 (1896), 363-376
- S. Spekker, Über die Kongruenz des Subjekts und des Prädikats in der Sprache Shakespeares, Diss. Jena (Bremen, 1881)
- H. Spies, Studien zur Geschichte des englischen Pronomens im 15. und 16. Jahrhundert, Studien zur englischen Philologie, I (Halle, 1897)
- W. von Staden, Entwicklung der Praesens Indikativ-Endungen im Englischen unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der 3. Pers. Sing. von ungefähr 1500 bis auf Shakespeare, Diss. (Rostock, 1903)
- G. Stern, Über das persönliche Geschlecht unpersönlicher Substantiva bei Shakespeare, Diss. Leipzig (Dresden, 1881)
- C. Stoffel, "'Must' in Modern English," Englische Studien, XXVIII (1900); 294-309
- K. F. Sundén, A category of predication change in English

(Upsala, 1916)

A. E. H. Swaen, "To shrink, to sing, to drink etc.," Anglia,
XVII (1895), 486-514

B. ten Brink, Chaucers Sprache und Verskunst (Leipzig, 1920)

W. Victor, Shakespeare's Pronunciation (Marburg, 1906)

F. T. Visser, rev. of W. Franz, Die Sprache Shakespeares in
Vers und Prosa (Halle, 1939), English Studies, XXVI
(1944-5), 13-30